Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL00-00

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

TROUBLE SHOOTING SECTION

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL00-10

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

Contents

TRBL01-10	1. Overview of TRBL
TRBL02-10	2. Isolation of Failed Part
TRBL02-10	2.1 Analyze by SIM Log
TRBL02-50	2.2 Failure Reported by Customer
TRBL02-60	2.2.1 SIM Has Been Reported
TRBL02-70	2.2.2 SSB Has Been Reported
TRBL02-80	2.2.3 OS Cannot Recover the Storage System Failure (MIH, Job ABEND)
TRBL02-100	2.2.4 OS Has Detected Storage System Failure (ICC, CC = 3)
TRBL02-120	2.2.5 Alarm Lamp on the Panel Turns On
TRBL02-180	2.2.6 Failure When Turning On the Power
TRBL02-190	2.2.7 The Power Cannot Be Turned Off
TRBL02-210	2.2.8 SSVP Alarm Lamp Starts Blinking or Turns On
TRBL02-220	2.2.9 MESSAGE Lamp Starts Blinking
TRBL02-230	2.2.10 CACHE Failure (Both Sides) Occurred
TRBL02-240	2.3 Failure During Operation by Service Personnel
TRBL02-240	2.3.1 Action When LUN Management Setting on SVP Change
	Configuration Failed
TRBL02-250	2.3.2 Recovery Procedure for Failure During HDD/DKU
	Installation/Uninstallation
TRBL02-250	2.3.2.1 Installation Failure of HDD/DKU
TRBL02-310	2.3.2.2 LED of SSW Turns On after Installing HDD/DKU
TRBL02-320	2.3.3 Recovery Procedure for Failure During CHA/DKA Replacement
TRBL02-380	2.3.4 Recovery Procedure for Failure During MPB Replacement
TRBL02-390	2.3.5 Recovery Procedure When Status in Changing Is Not Released
TRBL02-410	2.3.6 Recovery Procedure When LDEV Formatting Failed
TRBL02-420	2.3.7 Recovery Procedure When Recovering SM Is Impossible
TRBL02-430	2.3.8 Recovery Procedure When Concurrent Execution of CACHE
TDD1 00 440	Installation/De-Installation and DCR Available Size Setting Failed
TRBL02-440	2.3.9 Recovery Procedure When Changing IP Address Failed
TRBL02-480	2.3.10 Recovery Procedure for Mistake in Settings When Installing CACHE
TRBL02-510	2.3.11 Micro-program Version Mismatching
TRBL02-520	2.3.12 Action When Mode Setting of System Option Failed
TRBL02-530	2.3.13 Recovery Procedure for Failure During DKA Installation
TRBL02-540	2.4 Multiple Parts Have Failed

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL00-20

	. Recovery from Common Platform Failure
TRBL03-01-10	3.1 Recovery Procedure When SFP Module Failure Is Detected (SIM = 21A8XX, 21AAXX)
TRBL03-02-10	3.2 Action When Audit Log FTP Transfer Failure Is Detected (SIM = 7C0300)
TRBL03-03-10	3.3 Action When LDEV FORMATTING Failed (SIM = 4100XX)
TRBL03-04-10	3.4 Recovery Procedure for Detected Invalid SIM Data (SIM = 7C0500)
TRBL03-05-10	3.5 Recovery Procedure for DMA Blockade (SIM = CF83XY)
TRBL03-06-10	3.6 Recovery when power off or SAS PORT failure occurred (SIM = CF12XX, AC52XX, AC53XX)
TRBL03-07-10	3.7 Recovery Procedure for DKC Blockade (SIM = 30A100)
TRBL03-08-10	3.8 Action When Time Synchronization Failed (SIM = 7FFA00)
TRBL03-09-10	3.9 Recovery Procedure for LDEV Blockade due to Microcode Error (SIM = 3A0XYY)
TRBL03-10-10	3.10 Recovery Procedure for Abnormal End of DumpTool (SIM = 7C0400)
TRBL03-11-10	3.11 Recovery Procedure When FMD No Charging Occurred (SIM = 50EXXX)
TRBL03-12-10	3.12 Recovery procedure of SIM occurrence during battery charge (SIM = FE00XX)
TRBL03-13-10	3.13 Action when Cache Write Through by battery factor is detected (SIM = FE01XX, FE02XX)
TRBL03-14-10	3.14 Isolation and Recovery Procedure for Common SAS Failure (SIM = DF6XXX, DF7XXX, DF8XXX, DF9XXX)
TRBL03-15-10	3.15 Recovery Procedure for LAN Error/DKC Processor Failure/SVP Failure (SIM = 1400X0, 1500X0, 73XX00)
TRBL03-16-10	3.16 Recovery Procedure for CACHE Replacement Failure (SIM = 3993XX, FFE40X, FFF90X)
TRBL03-17-10	3.17 Recovery Procedure for CACHE Failure (Both Sides) (SIM = FFF50X)
TRBL03-18-10	3.18 Recovery Procedure for Mounted Memory Capacity Inconsistency (SIM = FFE30X, SIM = FFE800)
TRBL03-19-10	3.19 Isolation Procedure for CACHE Failure (SIM = FFF0XX, FFF1XX, FFF2XX, FFE2XX)
TRBL03-20-10	3.20 Recovery Procedure for LDEV Blockade (SIM = EF9XXX, DFAXXX, DFBXXX)
TRBL03-21-10	3.21 Recovery Procedure When CM Patrol Check Error Occurs (SIM = FFCC0X)
TRBL03-22-10	3.22 Environment Monitors PS Status Disagreement Error (SIM = BFB2XX)
TRBL03-23-10	3.23 PS Warning Error (SIM = BF40XX, BF41XX, BF42XX, BF43XX, AF5XXX, BF6XXX, AF6XXX)
TRBL03-24-10	3.24 Recovery Procedure When Duplex SVP Setting Failed (SIM = BFE3A2)
TRBL03-25-10	3.25 Recovery Procedure When CHK3 Threshold Over Occurred (SIM = 3072XY)
TRBL03-26-10	3.26 Cable Connection Error (SIM = BFADXX)
TRBL03-27-10	3.27 Recovery Procedure for CHA/DKA Type Warning (SIM = 3C9500)

Hitachi Proprietary DKC810I Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd. Rev.0 / Mar.2014 TRBL00-30 3.28 Recovery procedure when Battery Charge Empty is detected TRBL03-28-10 (SIM = AFD10X)3.29 At the Time of Voltage Alarm Detection (SIM = BF201X) TRBL03-29-10 3.30 At the Time of External Temperature Discrepancy Detection TRBL03-30-10 (SIM = BFA2XX)3.31 At the Time of External Temperature WARN (+ or -) Detection TRBL03-31-10 (SIM = BF11XX, BF12XX)3.32 At the Time of External Temperature ALARM Detection (SIM = BF10XX) TRBL03-32-10 3.33 At the Time of Internal Temperature WARN Detection (SIM = BF15XX) TRBL03-33-10 3.34 At the Time of Internal Temperature ALARM Detection TRBL03-34-10 (SIM = BF13XX, BF14XX)3.35 Isolation Procedure for Failed Part in CACHE Volatilization TRBL03-35-10 (SIM = FFCE0X, FFCFYX, 610002)3.36 Recovery Procedure for Forcible Volatile Mode (SIM = FFFEXX) TRBL03-36-10 3.37 Receiving WCHK1 Dump (SIM = 3080XX) TRBL03-37-10 3.38 Isolation and Recovery Procedure for Drive Link Rate Error TRBL03-38-10 (SIM = DFCXXX, DFDXXX)3.39 Recovery Procedure for Mismatch of SSVPMN Micro Program Version TRBL03-39-10 (SIM = BF9BXX)3.40 Recovery Procedure for DCR Pre-Staging ABNORMAL END TRBL03-40-10 (SIM RC = 4821-X0)3.41 Recovery Procedure for Drive Failure TRBL03-41-10 3.41.1 In the case of Normal Termination (SIM = 452XXX, 462XXX) TRBL03-41-30 TRBL03-41-40 3.41.2 In the case of Termination with a Warning (SIM = 455XXX, 465XXX)3.41.3 In the case of Cancellation (SIM = 454XXX, 464XXX) TRBL03-41-50 3.41.4 In the case of Abnormal Termination (SIM = 453XXX, 463XXX) TRBL03-41-60 3.41.5 Correction Access Status TRBL03-41-130 TRBL03-41-140 3.41.6 Parity Group Blockade TRBL03-41-150 3.41.7 Preventive Maintenance 3.42 Recovery Procedure for Pinned Track TRBL03-42-10 3.43 Recovery Procedure for SVP Failure TRBL03-43-10 3.43.1 SVP Power Trouble Shooting TRBL03-43-10 3.43.2 When Connection to SVP (Remote Computer) Cannot Be Made TRBL03-43-40 3.43.2.1 SVP OS Recovery procedure TRBL03-43-60 TRBL03-43-90 3.43.3 About Other SVP Troubles TRBL03-44-10 3.44 Web Console Failure Recovery TRBL03-44-10 3.44.1 Web Console Trouble Shooting 3.44.2 When Web Console Failure Is Detected TRBL03-44-20 TRBL03-45-10 3.45 Recovery when SAS cable connection error occurs (SIM = EFFEXX) 3.46 Recovery Procedure for MODCON connection/unconnected TRBL03-46-10 (SIM = BFB6XX, BFB7XX)3.47 Connection Failure of MODCON Cables (SIM = BFB5A4) TRBL03-47-10

Rev.0 / Mar.2014 Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

TRBL00-40

TRBL04-10 TRBL04-10 TRBL04-110	 4. Recovery from Mainframe Platform Failure 4.1 Recovery Procedure for Mainframe Pinned Track 4.2 Recovery Procedure When WDCP Information Is Lost (SIM = FFDE01, FFDE02, FFDE03)
TRBL05-10	5. Recovery from Open Platform Failure
TRBL05-10	5.1 Recovery Procedure for a Failure on Host Fibre Channel Interface
TRBL05-10	5.1.1 Outline
TRBL05-10	5.1.1.1 Possible Failures and causes of them
TRBL05-20	5.1.1.2 Matters must be or desirable to be checked
TRBL05-30	5.1.2 Recovery Procedure When Device Is Not Recognized
TRBL05-60	5.1.3 Procedure for Checking Storage System Port Status
TRBL05-70	5.1.4 Procedure for Checking Normalcy of the Processor
TRBL05-80	5.1.5 Procedure for Checking LUN Status Information
TRBL05-90	5.1.6 Isolation Procedure for Fibre Channel Failure
TRBL05-130	5.2 Recovery Procedure for Open Volume Pinned Track
TRBL05-130	5.2.1 Pinned Tracks
TRBL05-140	5.2.2 Error Types
TRBL05-150	5.2.2.1 ECC/LRC Error
TRBL05-170	5.2.2.2 Write Error
TRBL05-180	5.2.2.3 External VOL Write Error
TRBL05-180	5.2.2.4 External VOL Read Error
TRBL05-190	5.2.3 Procedure for Erasing Pinned Track
TRBL05-220	5.2.3.1 HP-UX Procedure
TRBL05-380	5.2.3.2 Procedure on Windows
TRBL05-650	5.2.3.3 Procedure on Solaris
TRBL05-840	5.2.3.4 Procedure on AIX, VMWare ESX, Linux
TRBL05-1000	
TRBL05-1010	5.2.3.6 ECC/LRC Error Recovery Processing of DP pool-VOL
TRBL05-1050	5.2.3.7 Recovery from External VOL Write Error
TRBL05-1070	5.2.3.8 Recovery from External VOL Read Error
TRBL05-1090	, 3
	System
TRBL05-1120	5.3 Procedure for Getting Dump and Recovering CHA in the case of CHA Protocol Control LSI Failure
TRBL05-1120	5.3.1 Outline
TRBL05-1130	5.3.2 Method to Get Dump and Recover CHA in the case of Protocol
	Control LSI Failure
TRBL05-1140	5.4. Recovery Procedure for AL_PA Conflict (SIM = 2190XY)

Rev.0 / Mar.2014 Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd. TRBL00-50

TRBL06-10	6. Recovery from ShadowImage for Mainframe/ShadowImage/ FlashCopy (R) V2/FlashCopy (R) SE Failure
TRBL06-10	6.1 Recovery Procedure for Pinned Track
TRBL06-20	6.2 Recovery Procedure for ShadowImage for Mainframe/ShadowImage/
	Mainframe Fibre DM Suspended Pair (SIM = 47DXYY, 7FF102, 47E700)
TRBL06-60	6.3 Recovery Procedure for FlashCopy (R) V2/FlashCopy (R) SE
TDD 1 00 400	Option Failure (SIM = 4B2XYY, 4B4XYY, 7FF105, 47E500)
TRBL06-100	6.3.1 Recovery Procedure for a Failure When FlashCopy (R) V2/
	FlashCopy (R) SE Cooperated with TrueCopy for Mainframe (SIM = 4B2XYY, 47E500)
TRBL06-110	6.4 Output of Online Path Information (SSB EC= 2084)
TRBL06-110	6.4.1 Output Information
TRBL06-130	6.4.2 To Continue the Operation
TRBL06-140	6.5 Initialization Procedure for Shadowlmage
TRBL07-10	7. Recovery from TrueCopy for Mainframe/TrueCopy Failure
TRBL07-10	7.1 Recovery Procedure for TrueCopy for Mainframe Failure
TRBL07-20	7.2 Recovery Procedure for TrueCopy Failure
TRBL07-210	7.3 Recovery Procedure for TrueCopy for Mainframe/TrueCopy Pinned Track
TRBL07-240	7.4 Recovery Action for Path Status Error
TRBL07-270	7.5 Recovery Procedure for Related to BCM Operation Error
TRBL08-10	8. Forced Outage and Restart of DKC/DKU
TRBL08-20	8.1 Forced Outage and Restarting Procedure for Non-Volatile DKC/DKU (Procedure-A)
TRBL08-40	8.2 Forced Outage and Restarting Procedure for Non-Volatile DKC/DKU (Procedure-B)
TRBL08-100	8.3 Forced Outage and Restarting Procedure for Volatile DKC/DKU (Procedure-A)
TRBL08-130	8.4 Forced Outage and Restarting Procedure for Volatile DKC/DKU
1112200 100	(Procedure-B)
TDDI 00 10	O. Doggvery from LID Failure
TRBL09-10 TRBL09-10	Recovery from UR Failure 1.1 Recovery Procedure for UR Failure
TRBL09-80	9.2 Procedure for Recovering UR Pair
TRBL09-100	9.3 Force Delete Pair Operation
TRBL09-120	9.4 Force Delete JNL Group Operation
TRBL09-130	9.5 Procedure for UR Pinned Track Recovery and Journal Volume
	Replacement

Rev.0 / Mar.2014 Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd. TRBL00-60

TRBL10-10	10. Recovery from Thin Image Failure
TRBL10-10	10.1 Recovery Procedure for Thin Image Failure due to SM Volatilization (SIM = 47EC00)
TRBL10-20	10.2 Recovery Procedure for Thin Image Failure (SIM = 4B3XYY, 7FF104)
TRBL10-40	10.3 Recovery Procedure for Pool Failure (SIM = 601XXX, 602XXX)
TRBL10-50	10.4 Recovery Procedure for Pool Failure (SIM = 603000)
TRBL10-60	10.5 Recovery Procedure for Thin Image pool-VOL ECC/LRC Error
TRBL10-70	10.6 Recovery Procedure for Thin Image Failure (SIM = 670000)
TRBL10-80	10.7 Recovery Procedure for Thin Image pool-VOL Failure
TRBL11-10	11. Recovery from Volume Migration Failure
TRBL11-20	11.1 Recovery Procedure for Volume Migration Failure
TRBL11-60	11.2 Output of Online Path Information (SSB EC = 2084)
TRBL11-60	11.2.1 Output information
TRBL11-80	11.2.2 To Continue the Operation
TRBL12-10	12. Recovery from Mainframe Fibre Data Migration Failure (SIM = 21D4XX, EFD400, 47DXYY, 47E700)
TRBL13-10	13. Recovery from Dynamic Provisioning or Dynamic Tiering Failure
TRBL13-10	13.1 Recovery Procedure for pool-VOL Blockade (When Two (Three in RAID6) or More Are Blocked in the RAID Gr the pool-VOL Belongs)
TRBL13-30	13.2 Recovery Procedure When DP-VOL Deletion of Dynamic Provisioning or Dynamic Tiering Failed (Storage Navigator Error Code = 3205 8966)
TRBL13-40	13.3 Recovery Procedure for Pool Failure (SIM = 623XXX)
TRBL13-60	13.4 Recovery Procedure for Pool Failure (SIM = 624000)
TRBL13-70	13.5 Recovery Procedure for Pool Failure (SIM = 625000)
TRBL13-80	13.6 Recovery Procedure for pool-VOL Blockade (SIM = 627XXX)
TRBL13-90	13.7 The release procedure for the Protection attribute of Data Retention Utility (SIM = 628000)
TRBL13-100	13.8 Deleting Procedure for Pool at the time of pool-VOL Blockade (When External Volume the pool-VOL Belongs Is Removed)
TRBL13-110	13.9 Initialization Procedure for Pool
TRBL13-130	13.10 Recovery Procedure for Dynamic Provisioning or Dynamic Tiering by Turning Off the Power and Volatilizing PS ON

Rev.0 / Mar.2014	Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.
TRBL00-70	

TRBL14-10	14. External Storage Maintenance
TRBL14-10	14.1 Maintenance of External Storage
TRBL14-10	14.1.1 Considerations When Performing Maintenance Work on External Storage
TRBL14-30	14.1.2 Maintenance (Isolation) Procedure for a Failure on External Storage (SIM = 21D0XY, 21D2XY, EFD000, EF5XXX, FF5XXX)
TRBL14-40	14.1.3 Procedure for Operating Storage Navigator
TRBL14-50	14.2 Recovery Procedure for External Device Failure
TRBL14-50	14.2.1 Recovery Procedure for Path Failure While Device is Blocked (SIM = 21D0-XY, EFD000)
TRBL14-70	14.2.2 Recovery Procedure for Path Single Failure (SIM = 21D0-XY)
TRBL14-90	14.2.3 Recovery Procedure for External Storage system Path Response Time Out Threshold Over (SIM = 21D2-XY)
TRBL14-100	14.2.4 Action When External Device and External Volume Are Not Recognized
TRBL14-120	14.2.5 Recovery Procedure When Delete LU of Universal Volume Manager Failed (Storage Navigator Error Code = 0605 8966)
TRBL14-140	14.3 Elimination Procedure for Pinned Data on External Storage
TRBL14-160	14.4 Procedure for Operating External Device LBA Conversion Tool
TRBL14-280	14.5 Considerations When Performing Data Recovery on External Volume
TRBL14-290	14.6 Appendix
TRBL15-10	15. Recovery from SNMP Failure
TRBL15-10	15.1 SNMP Ping Test Trouble Shooting
TRBL15-20	15.2 When Trap Cannot Be Received While Ping Reaches Manager PC Prepared by Customer
TRBL15-30	15.3 SNMP Trap Information
TRBL16-10	16. MP Blockade Reset Function
TRBL17-10	17. Failure recovery of Encryption License Key
TRBL17-10	17.1 Recovery procedure when acquisition failure from key management server (SIM = 661000)
TRBL17-20	17.2 Recovery procedure for Encryption key threshold warning and depletion (SIM = 660100, 660200)
TRBL17-30	17.3 Recovery procedure of DKA failure when restoring Encryption Keys

Hitachi Proprietary

Rev.0 / Jul.2014

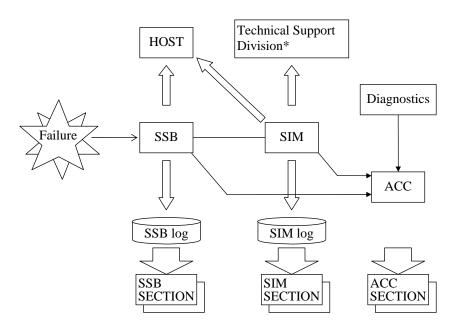
Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

т	R	R		n	n	-8	n
	1	ט	_	v	v	-0	v

TRBL18-10	18. Recovery from global-active device functions Failure
TRBL18-10	18.1 Recovery Procedure for global-active device functions Failure
TRBL18-20	18.1.1 Recovery procedure at failure suspension of a GAD pair
	(SIM = DDXYZZ)
TRBL18-50	18.1.2 Recovery procedure at LDEV block in the GAD pair
	(SIM = 3A0XYY/DFAXXX/DFBXXX/EF9XXX)
TRBL18-70	18.1.3 Procedure to recover data from backup data at LDEV failure in the
	GAD environment
TRBL18-80	18.1.4 Recovery procedure of the pinned track in the GAD environment
TRBL18-100	18.1.5 Recovery procedure at Quorum Disk failure (SIM = DEF0XX)
TRBL18-130	18.1.6 Recover path failure between a GAD pair in the GAD environment
TRBL18-160	18.2 Recovery procedure when a failure occurred while creating/
	resynchronizing a GAD pair

1. Overview of TRBL

The figure below shows the flowchart of creating and reporting the SIM and SSB after the DKC microprogram has detected a failure. It also shows the section of maintenance manual which should be referred to.



Perform the maintenance work based on SIM and ACC in DKC810I.

Since the storage system starts its maintenance work based on the SIM and ACC, if a failure occurs check the ACC first and start trouble shooting.

For the failure which does not produce the ACC, isolate the failed part depending on its phenomenon.

*: Technical Support Division: Responsible section of maintenance service and technical support.

NOTE: You should execute recovery operations for install/de-install failures, exchanging failures, etc. at time zone with a little business influence.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

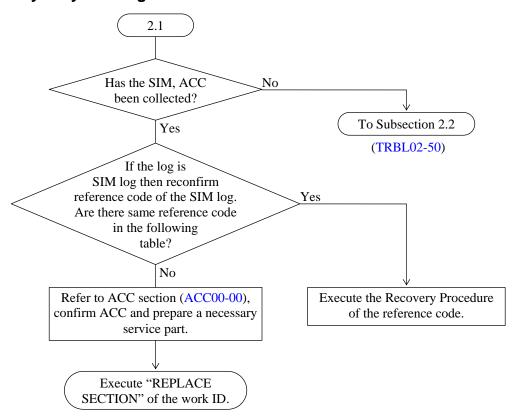
TRBL02-10

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

2. Isolation of Failed Part

[1] Analyze the SIM log	TRBL02-10
[2] Failure Reported by Customer	TRBL02-50
[3] Failure During Operation by Service Personnel	TRBL02-240
[4] Multiple Parts Have Failed	TRBL02-540

2.1 Analyze by SIM Log



Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

_02-20	
Reference Code	Recovery Procedure
BFC010	2.2.5 Alarm Lamp on the Panel Turns On (TRBL02-120)
21A8XX	3.1 Recovery Procedure When SFP Module Failure Is Detected (TRBL03-01-10)
7C0300	3.2 Action When Audit Log FTP Transfer Failure Is Detected (TRBL03-02-10)
410001, 410002	3.3 Action When LDEV FORMATTING Failed (TRBL03-03-10)
7C0500	3.4 Recovery Procedure for Detected Invalid SIM Data (TRBL03-04-10)
CF83XY	3.5 Recovery Procedure for DMA Blockade (TRBL03-05-10)
CF12XX, AC52XX, AC53XX	3.6 Recovery when power off or SAS PORT failure occurred (TRBL03-06-10)
30A100	3.7 Recovery Procedure for DKC Blockade (TRBL03-07-10)
7FFA00	3.8 Action When Time Synchronization Failed (TRBL03-08-10)
3A0XYY	3.9 Recovery Procedure for LDEV Blockade due to Microcode Error (TRBL03-09-10)
7C0400	3.10 Recovery Procedure for Abnormal End of DumpTool (TRBL03-10-10)
50EXXX	3.11 Recovery Procedure When FMD No Charging Occurred (TRBL03-11-10)
FE00XX	3.12 Recovery procedure of SIM occurrence during battery charge (TRBL03-12-10)
FE01XX, FE02XX	3.13 Action when Cache Write Through by battery factor is detected (TRBL03-13-10)
DF6XXX, DF7XXX, DF8XXX, DF9XXX	3.14 Isolation and Recovery Procedure for Common SAS Failure (TRBL03-14-10)
1400X0, 1500X0, 73XXYY	3.15 Recovery Procedure for LAN Error/DKC Processor Failure/SVP Failure (TRBL03-15-10)
3993XX, FFE40X, FFF90X	3.16 Recovery Procedure for CACHE Replacement Failure (TRBL03-16-10)
FFF50X	3.17 Recovery Procedure for CACHE Failure (Both Sides) (TRBL03-17-10)
FFE30X, FFE800	3.18 Recovery Procedure for Mounted Memory Capacity Inconsistency (TRBL03-18-10)
FFF0XX, FFF1XX, FFF2XX, FFE2XX	3.19 Isolation Procedure for CACHE Failure (TRBL03-19-10)
DFAXXX, DFBXXX, EF9XXX	3.20 Recovery Procedure for LDEV Blockade (TRBL03-20-10)
FFCC0X	3.21 Recovery Procedure When CM Patrol Check Error Occurs (TRBL03-21-10)
BFB2XX	3.22 Environment Monitors PS Status Disagreement Error (TRBL03-22-10)
BF40XX, BF41XX, BF42XX, BF43XX, AF5XXX, BF6XXX, AF6XXX	3.23 PS Warning Error (TRBL03-23-10)
BFE3A2	3.24 Recovery Procedure When Duplex SVP Setting Failed (TRBL03-24-10)
3072XY	3.25 Recovery Procedure When CHK3 Threshold Over Occurred (TRBL03-25-10)
BFADXX	3.26 Cable Connection Error (TRBL03-26-10)
3C9500	3.27 Recovery Procedure for CHA/DKA Type Warning (TRBL03-27-10)
AFD10X	3.28 Recovery procedure when Battery Charge Empty is detected (TRBL03-28-10)

(To be continued)

(Continued from the preceding page)

Reference Code	Recovery Procedure
BF201X	3.29 At the Time of Voltage Alarm Detection (TRBL03-29-10)
BFA2XX	3.30 At the Time of External Temperature Discrepancy Detection (TRBL03-30-10)
BF11XX, BF12XX	3.31 At the Time of External Temperature WARN (+ or -) Detection (TRBL03-31-10)
BF10XX	3.32 At the Time of External Temperature ALARM Detection (TRBL03-32-10)
BF15XX	3.33 At the Time of Internal Temperature WARN Detection (TRBL03-33-10)
BF13XX, BF14XX	3.34 At the Time of Internal Temperature ALARM Detection (TRBL03-34-10)
FFCE0X, FFCFYX, 610002	3.35 Isolation Procedure for Failed Part in CACHE Volatilization (TRBL03-35-10)
FFFEXX	3.36 Recovery Procedure for Forcible Volatile Mode (TRBL03-36-10)
3080XX	3.37 Receiving WCHK1 Dump (TRBL03-37-10)
DFCXXX, DFDXXX	3.38 Isolation and Recovery Procedure for Drive Link Rate Error (TRBL03-38-10)
BF9BXX	3.39 Recovery Procedure for Mismatch of SSVPMN Micro Program Version (TRBL03-39-10)
4821XX	3.40 Recovery Procedure for DCR Pre-Staging ABNORMAL END (TRBL03-40-10)
452XXX, 462XXX, 455XXX, 465XXX, 454XXX, 464XXX, EFCXXX	3.41 Recovery Procedure for Drive Failure (TRBL03-41-10)
EFFEXX	3.45 Recovery when SAS cable connection error occurs (TRBL03-45-10)
BFB6XX, BFB7XX	3.46 Recovery Procedure for MODCON connection/unconnected (TRBL03-46-10)
BFB5A4	3.47 Connection Failure of MODCON Cables (TRBL03-47-10)
FFDE01, FFDE02, FFDE03	4.2 Recovery Procedure When WDCP Information Is Lost (TRBL04-110)
2190XY	5.4. Recovery Procedure for AL_PA Conflict (TRBL05-1140)
47DXYY, 47E700, 4B0XYY, 47E600, 4B2XYY, 47E500, 4B4XYY	6. Recovery from ShadowImage for Mainframe/ShadowImage/FlashCopy (R) V2/FlashCopy (R) SE Failure (TRBL06-10)
D4XYYY, DBXYYY, D48YYY, D4EYYY, DBEYYY, D4DYYY, DBDYYY, 2180XY, 2182XY	7. Recovery from TrueCopy for Mainframe/TrueCopy Failure (TRBL07-10)
DD0XYY, DD1XYY, DD2XYY, DD3XYY, DEE0XX, DEF0XX	18. Recovery from global-active device functions Failure (TRBL18-10)

(To be continued)

(Continued from the preceding page)

Reference Code	Recovery Procedure
47EC00	10. Recovery from Thin Image Failure (TRBL10-10)
4B3XYY, 7FF104	10.2 Recovery Procedure for Thin Image Failure (TRBL10-20)
601XXX, 602XXXX	10.3 Recovery Procedure for Pool Failure (TRBL10-40)
603000	10.4 Recovery Procedure for Pool Failure (TRBL10-50)
670000	10.6 Recovery Procedure for Thin Image Failure (TRBL10-70)
47FYXX	11. Recovery from Volume Migration Failure (TRBL11-10)
21D4XX, EFD400	12. Recovery from Mainframe Fibre Data Migration Failure (TRBL12-10)
623XXX	13.3 Recovery Procedure for Pool Failure (TRBL13-40)
624000	13.4 Recovery Procedure for Pool Failure (TRBL13-50)
625000	13.5 Recovery Procedure for Pool Failure (TRBL13-60)
627XXX	13.6 Recovery Procedure for pool-VOL Blockade (TRBL13-70)
628000	13.7 The release procedure for the Protection attribute of Data Retention Utility (TRBL13-80)
21D0XY, 21D2XY, EFD000	14. External Storage Maintenance (TRBL14-10)
660100, 660200, 661000	17. Failure recovery of Encryption License Key (TRBL17-10)
EF5XXY	Collect Dump/Log and T.S.D. call
505XYY, 508XYY	Collect Dump/Log/FMD Dump and T.S.D. call

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL02-50

2.2 Failure Reported by Customer

Isolate the failed part depending on the following phenomenon.

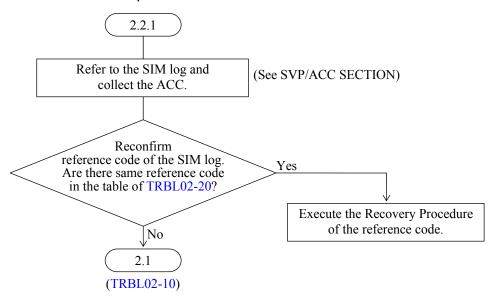
[1] SIM Has Been Reported	TRBL02-60
[2] SSB Has Been Reported	TRBL02-70
[3] OS Cannot Recover the Storage System Failure (MIH, Job ABEND)	TRBL02-80
[4] OS Has Detected Storage System Failure (ICC, CC = 3)	TRBL02-100
[5] Alarm Lamp on the Panel Turns On	TRBL02-120
[6] Failure When Turning On the Power	TRBL02-180
[7] The Power Cannot Be Turned Off	TRBL02-190
[8] SSVP Alarm Lamp Starts Blinking or Turns On	TRBL02-210
[9] MESSAGE Lamp Starts Blinking	TRBL02-220
[10] CACHE Failure (Both Sides) Occurred	TRBL02-230

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL02-60

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

2.2.1 SIM Has Been Reported

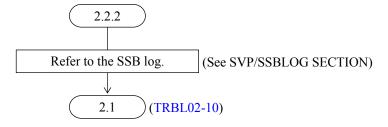


Rev.0 / Mar.2014

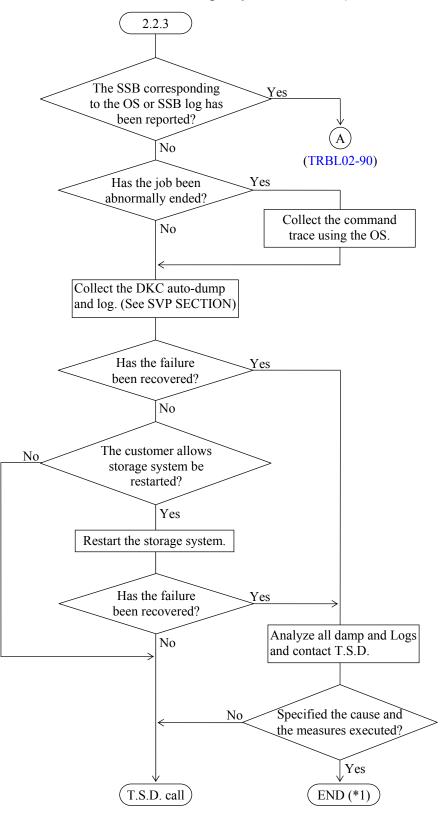
TRBL02-70

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

2.2.2 SSB Has Been Reported

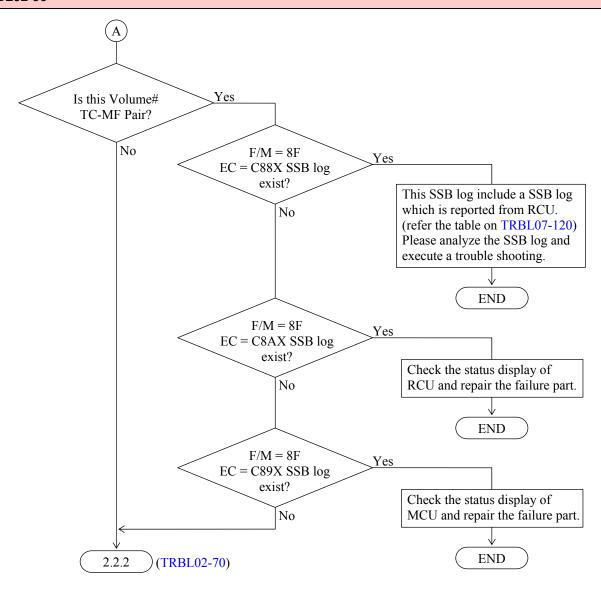


2.2.3 OS Cannot Recover the Storage System Failure (MIH, Job ABEND)

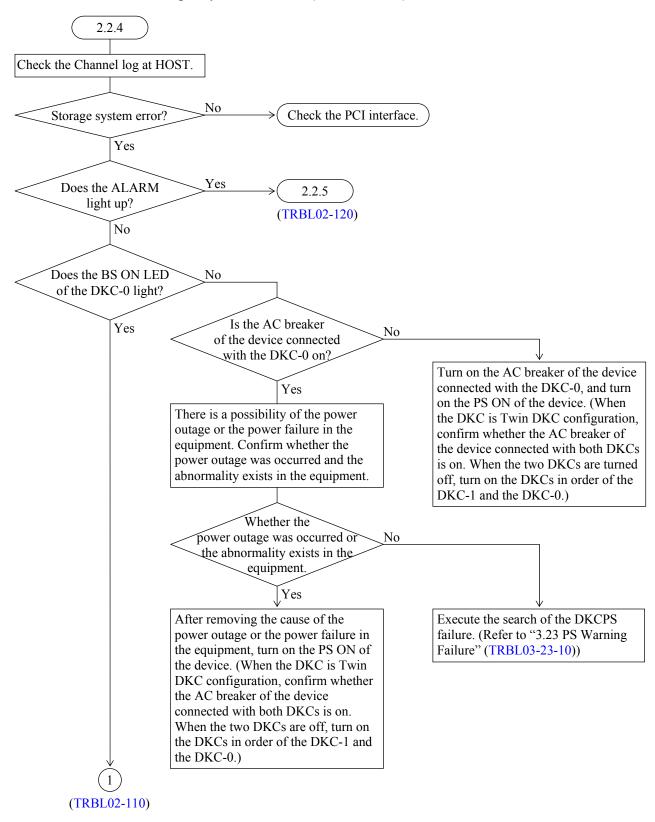


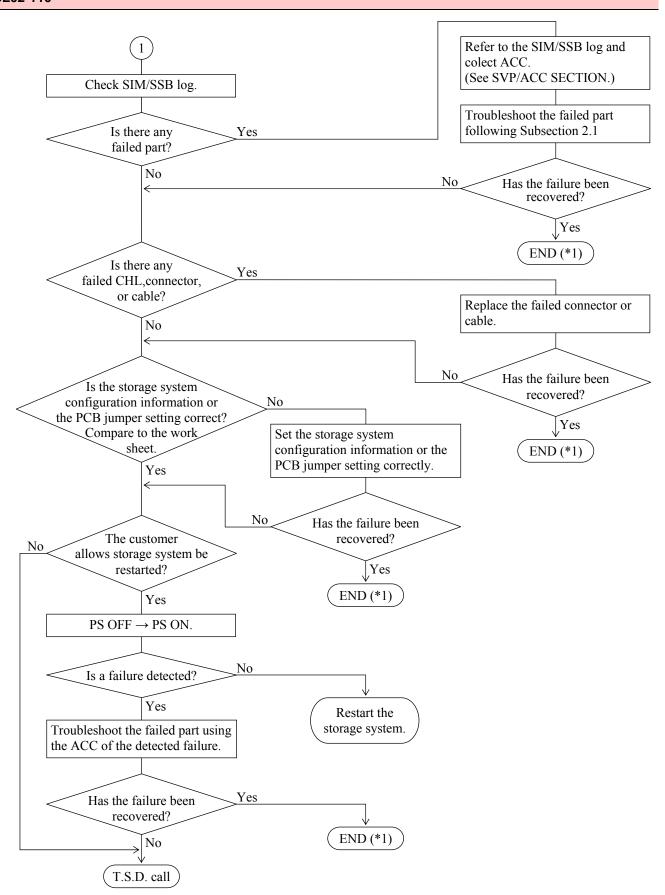
*1: If you finished the Maintenance, delete the log and SIM complete. (Refer to SVP02-08-10)

TRBL02-90



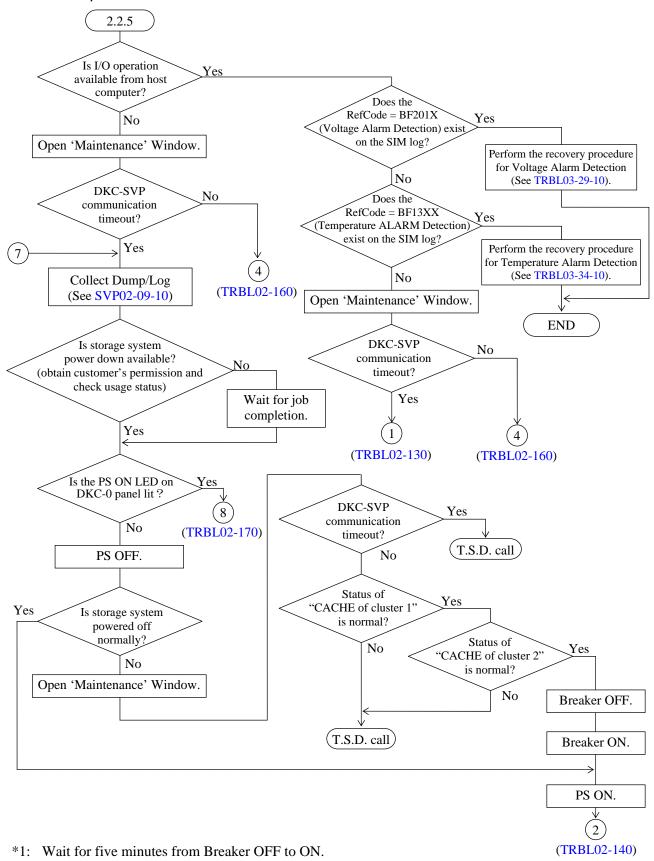
2.2.4 OS Has Detected Storage System Failure (ICC, CC = 3)

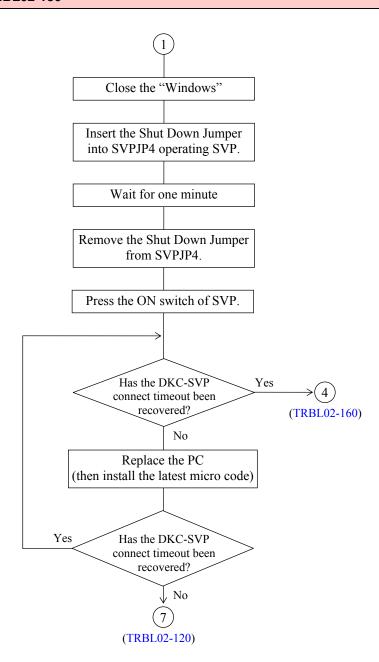


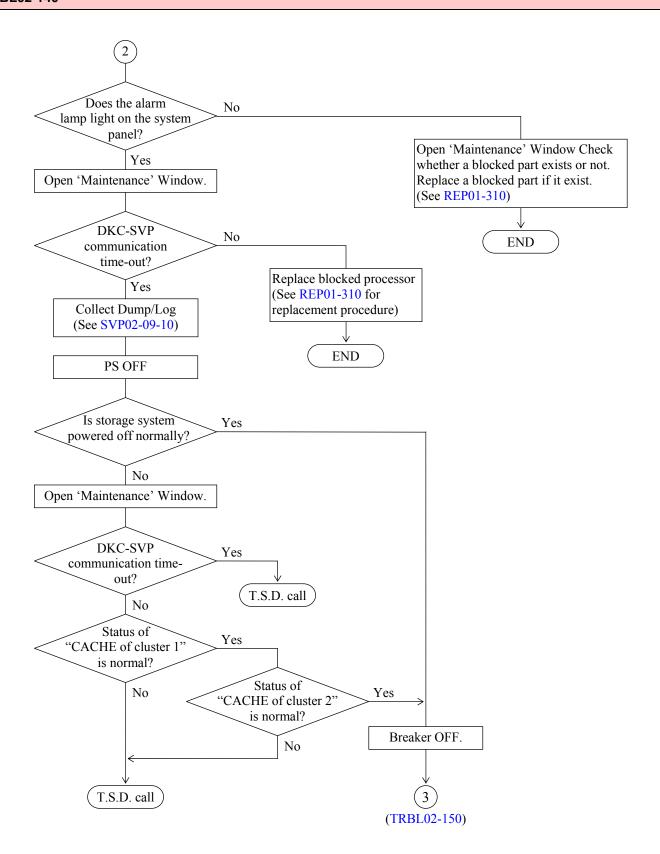


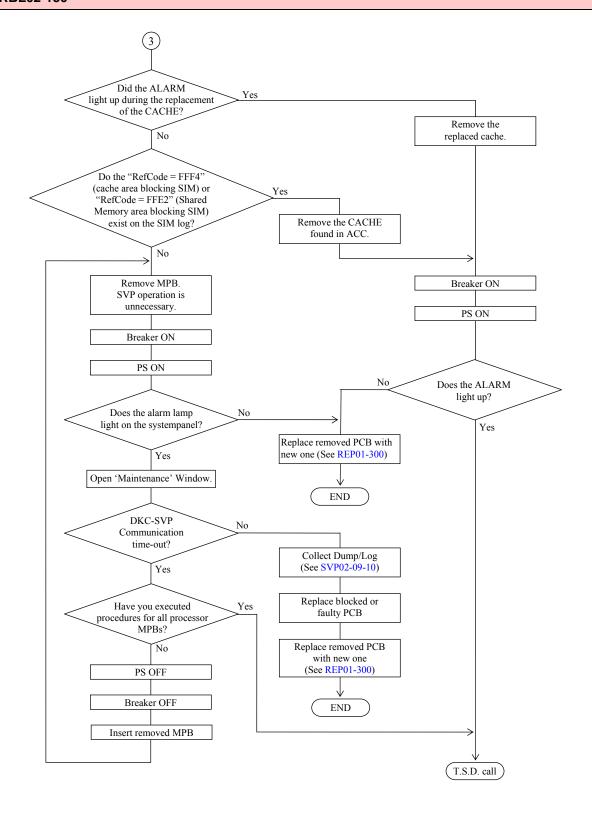
*1: If you finished the Maintenance, delete the log and SIM complete. (Refer to SVP02-08-10)

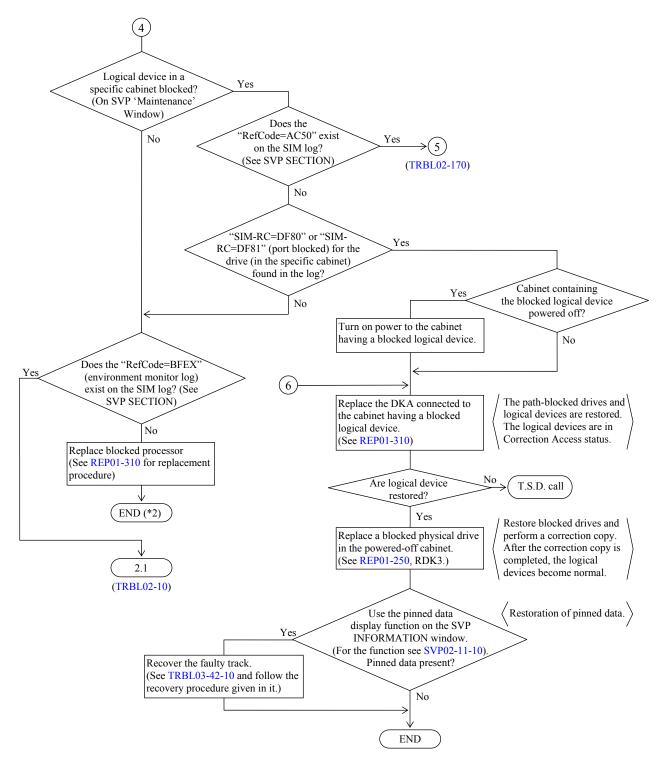
2.2.5 Alarm Lamp on the Panel Turns On









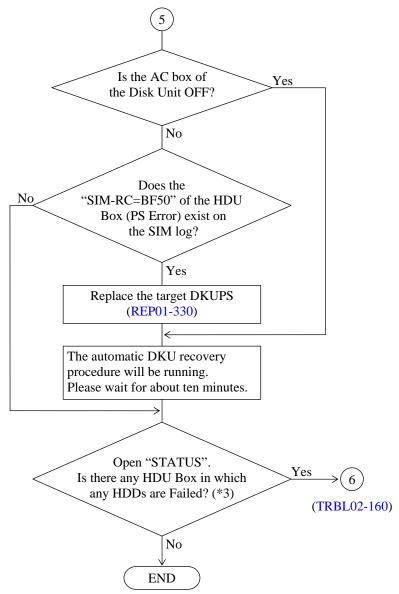


*2: If you finished the Maintenance, delete the log and SIM complete. (Refer to SVP02-08-10)

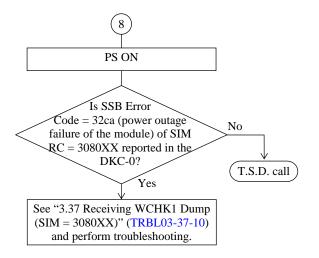
Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL02-170

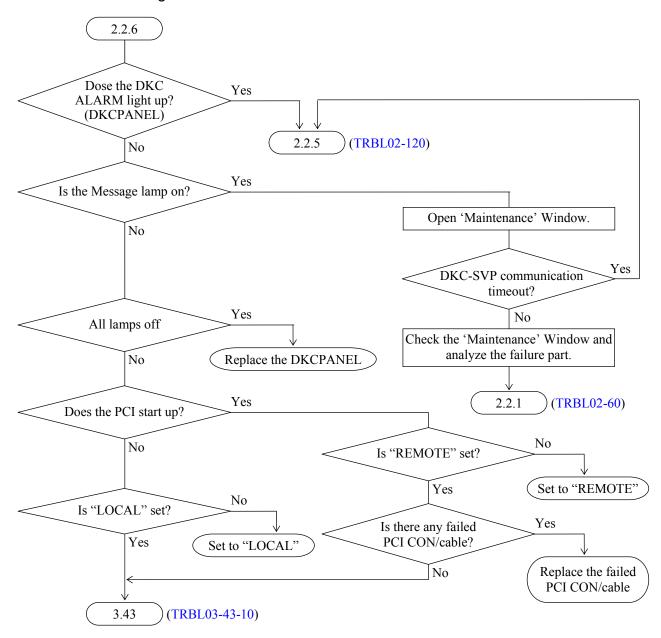
Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.



*3: The automatic DKU recovery procedure is not effective for some cases. Eg. very short period power down.

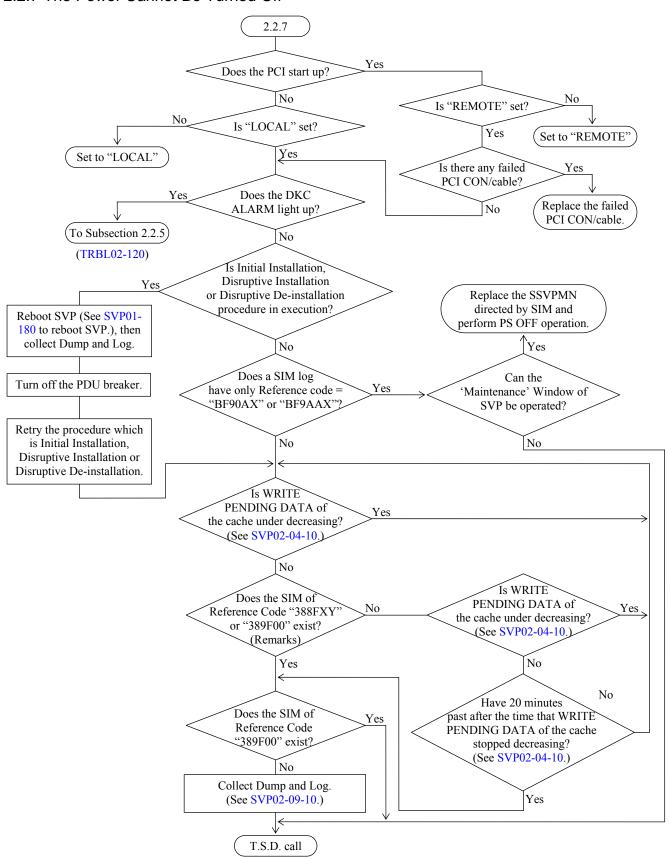


2.2.6 Failure When Turning On the Power



If you finished the Maintenance, delete the log and SIM complete. (Refer to SVP02-08-10)

2.2.7 The Power Cannot Be Turned Off



Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL02-200

NOTE:

• There is a case that it takes more than 10 minutes to report SIM of Reference Code "388F00" or "389F00", and that especially it takes about 1 hour in case that emergency destage does not complete.

- There is a case that p/s off procedure is normally finished, even after SIM of Reference Code "388F00" or "389F00" is reported.
- If DKC810I is powered off when external storage mapped by DKC810I is PS OFF or power failure, there is a possibility that DKC810I cannot be turned off. (Because Write Pending data of the external storage mapped by DKC810I remains in Cache of DKC810I) SIM = 388F00 is reported. In this case, execute "Disconnect storage system" operation of UVM after starting up the external storage and power off DKC810I. And execute the power off procedure of external storage.

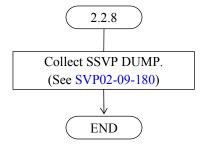
Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL02-210

2.2.8 SSVP Alarm Lamp Starts Blinking or Turns On

Collect SSVP DUMP.

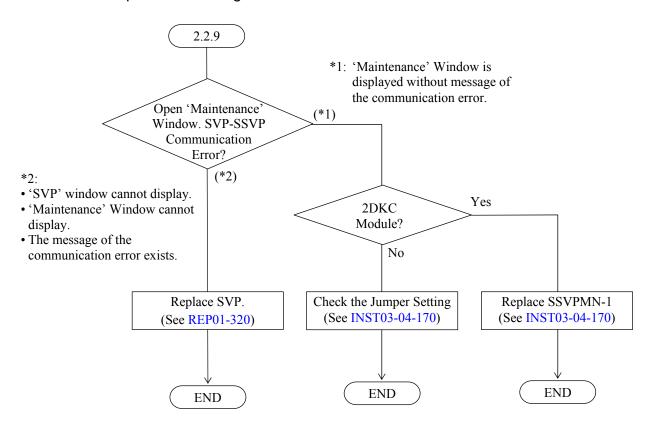
When the SVP High Reliability Kit has been installed and an SVP fail over (SIM=7FF3XX) is detected, at first, take actions to resolve the failure (SIM=7FF3XX).



Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL02-220

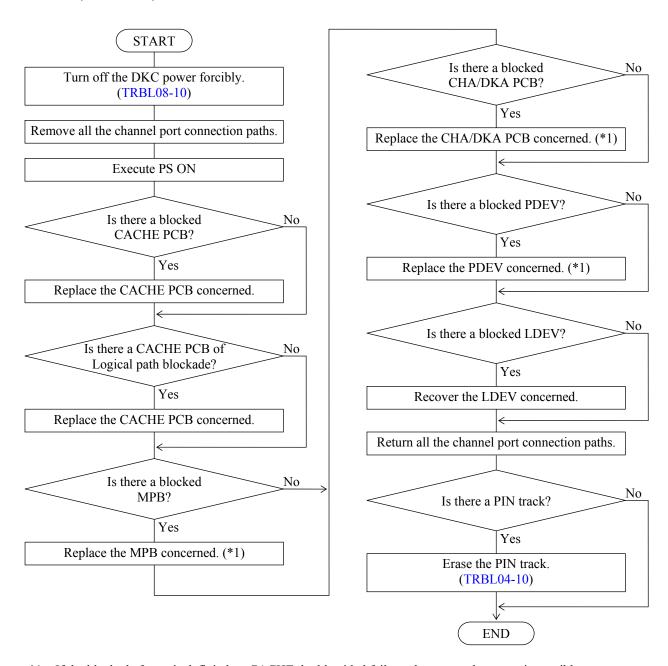
2.2.9 MESSAGE Lamp Starts Blinking



2.2.10 CACHE Failure (Both Sides) Occurred

If a failure occurs in the normal side of the CACHE while one side of the CACHE or SM is blocked, you will not be able to access a part or all of the data on the CACHE. This status is called a CACHE double-sided failure, and the following SIM may be reported incidentally. If you cannot recover the device in the recovery procedure corresponding to each SIM, recover it according to the following processing flow.

[SIM which may be reported at the time of a CACHE double-sided failure] RC = 3073XX, 3080XX, 32XXYY, 34XXYY, CF82XX, CF83XX, CFB0XX, FF4XYY, DF8XXX, DF9XXX, EFYXXX



^{*1:} If the blockade factor is definitely a CACHE double-sided failure, dummy replacement is possible.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

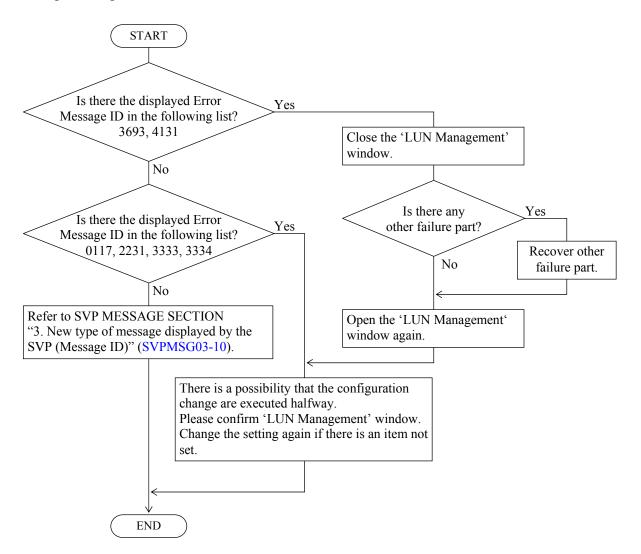
TRBL02-240

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

2.3 Failure During Operation by Service Personnel

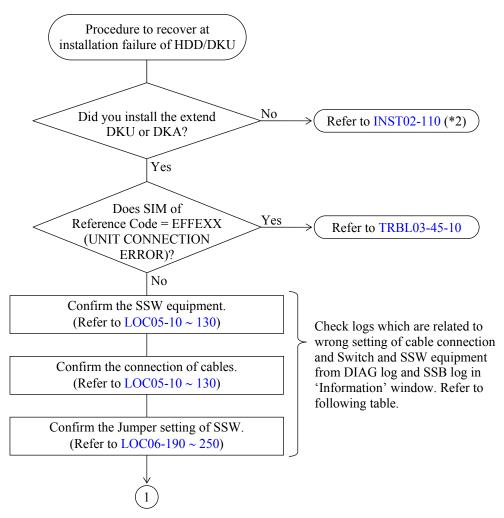
2.3.1 Action When LUN Management Setting on SVP Change Configuration Failed

This section describes about troubleshooting of the error recovery for LUN Management on SVP Change Configuration.



2.3.2 Recovery Procedure for Failure During HDD/DKU Installation/Uninstallation

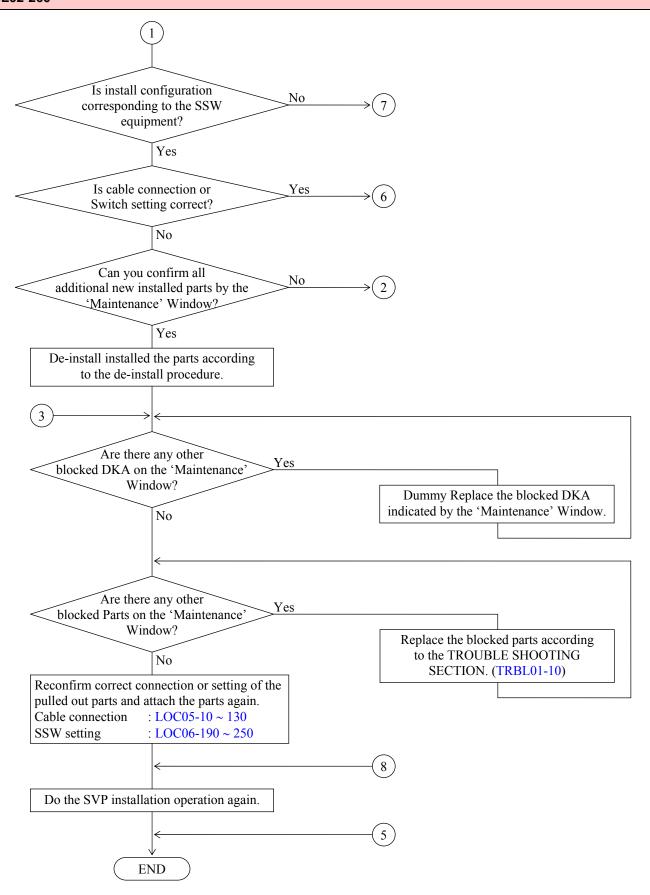
2.3.2.1 Installation Failure of HDD/DKU



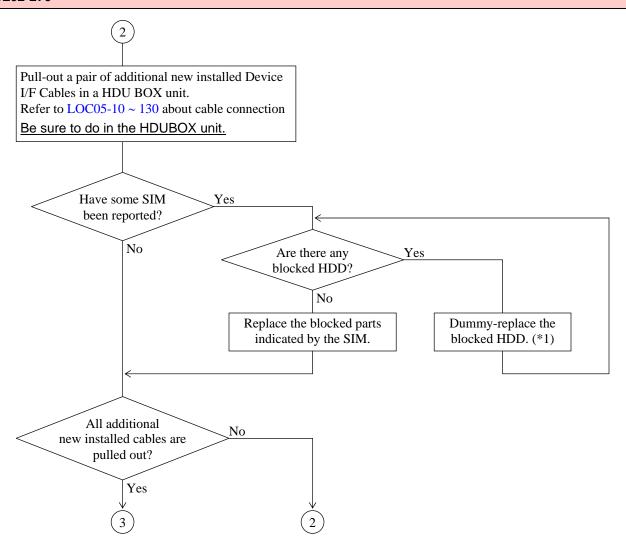
Diag Log Error Code	Meaning (See DIAG06-130 ~ 260)	
Ax AB (x = 0, 1, 5, 6)	Wrong Phy ID	(*1)
Ax AC (x = 0, 1, 5, 6)	SAS Address Data disagreement.	(*1, *2)
Ax AD (x = 0, 1, 5, 6)	SAS Address Data disagreement	(*1, *2)
Ax AE $(x = 0, 1, 5, 6)$	SAS Address Data disagreement	(*1, *2)

- *1: There is a possibility of wrong setting of Switch on SSW or ALPA on DKU BOX indicated by DiagLog.
- *2: There is a possibility of wrong SAS cable connection indicated by DiagLog.

TRBL02-260

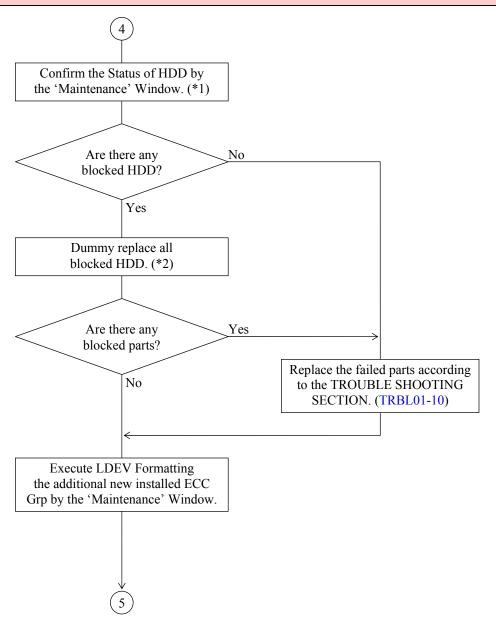


TRBL02-270

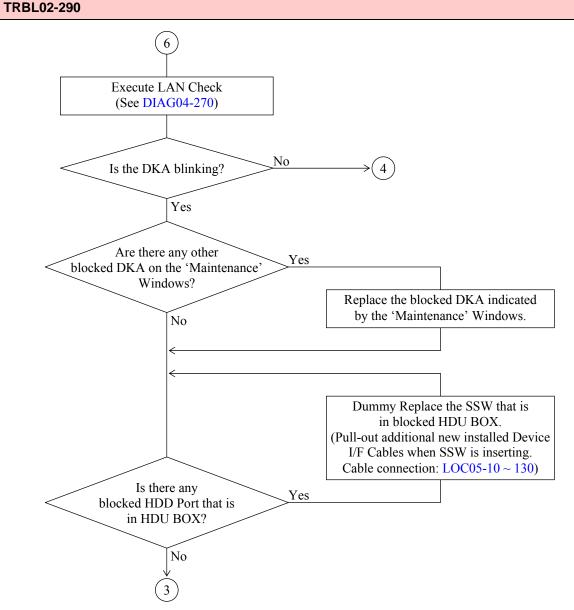


*1: Before insert the HDD, please confirm the HDD type name. (Refer to THEORY03-25-40)

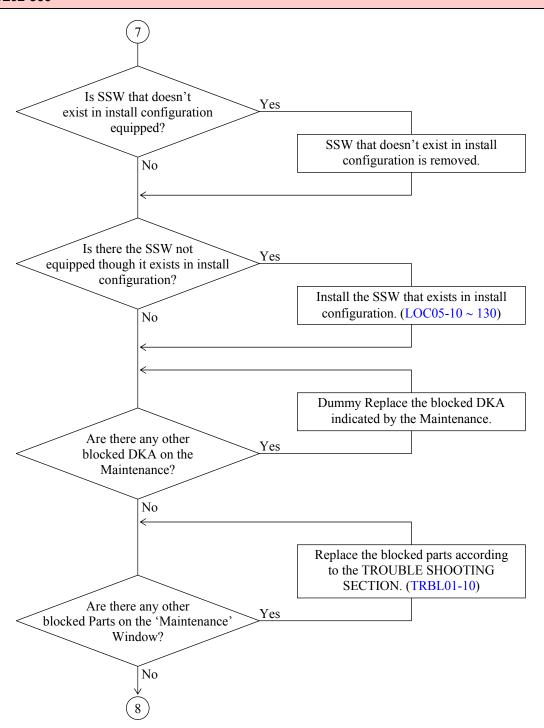
TRBL02-280



- *1: Confirm whether HDD is mounted according to the 'Maintenance' Window.
- *2: When dummy replacing fails 3 times, please replace with new HDD.



TRBL02-300



Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL02-310

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

2.3.2.2 LED of SSW Turns On after Installing HDD/DKU

Red LED of SSW may light when DKA is re-installed after the MP failure had been occurred during de-installation of DKA.

In that case, please dummy-replace that SSW.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL02-320

2.3.3 Recovery Procedure for Failure During CHA/DKA Replacement

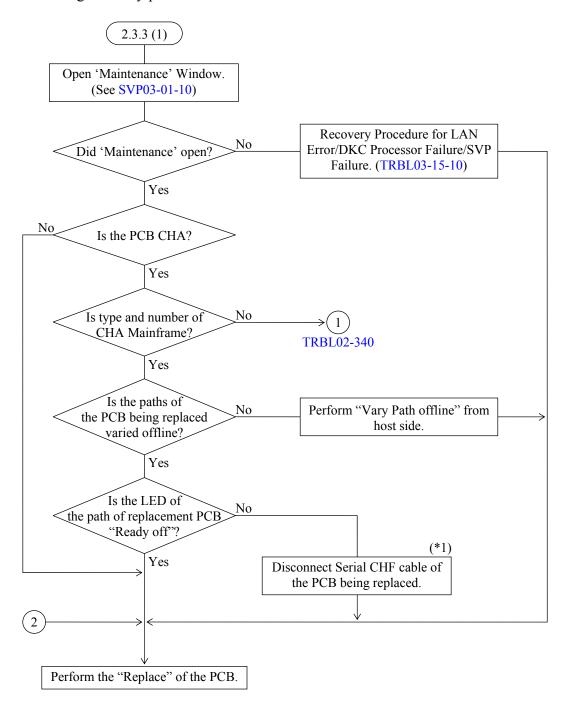
Perform the appropriate recovery procedure according to case (1), (2), (3) or (4).

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

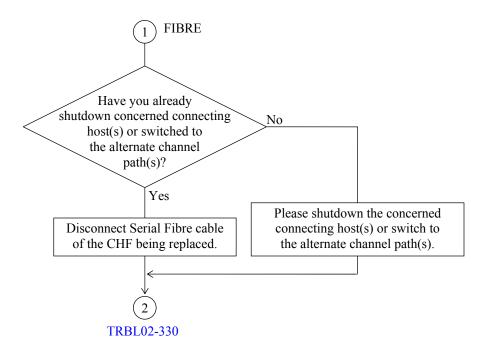
TRBL02-330

(1) Blocking error occurrence

If the error message is displayed when CHA/DKA is being blocked (when the message "The CHA is being blocked..." or "The DKA is being blocked..." is being displayed), perform the following recovery procedures.



Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

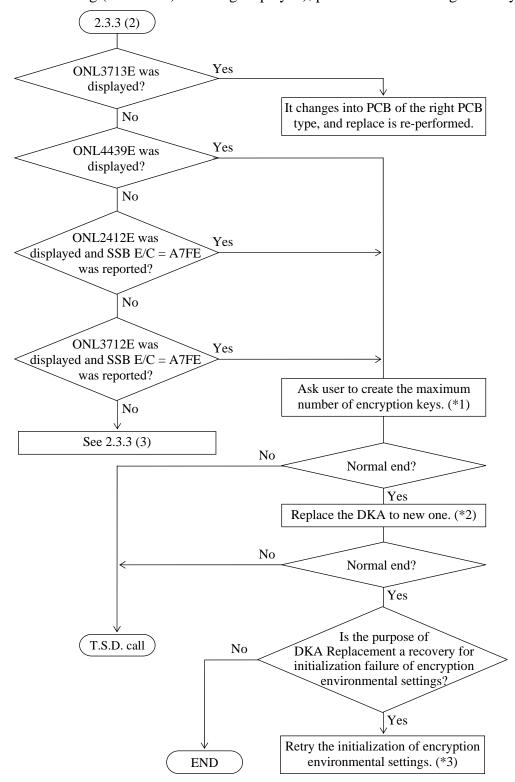


*1: After this operating, error message may be displayed at host side.

TRBL02-350

(2) Restoring error occurrence

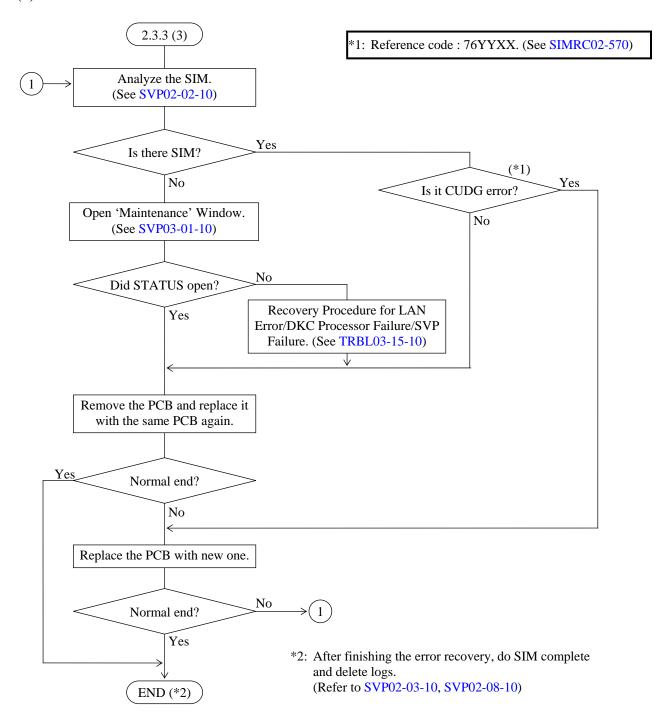
If the error message is displayed when CHA/DKA is being restored ("Restoring (CHA-nnn)" or "Restoring (DKA-nnn)" is being displayed), perform the following recovery procedures.



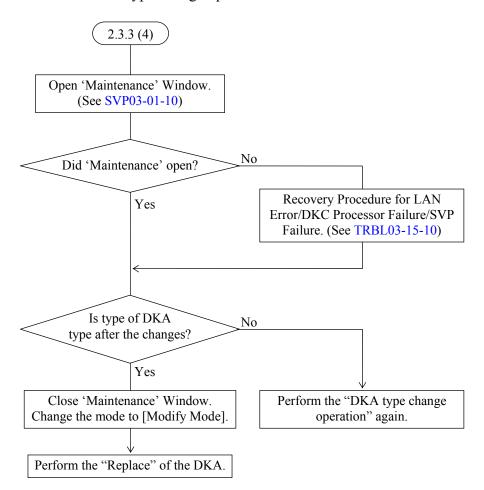
- *1: When creating encryption key on the Key Management Server, it may take approximately 60 minutes.
- *2: When the DKA replacement was failed with using new part, it is not necessary for you to replace the DKA to new one again.
- *3: When you continue to use without initialization, Sparing may fail.

TRBL02-360

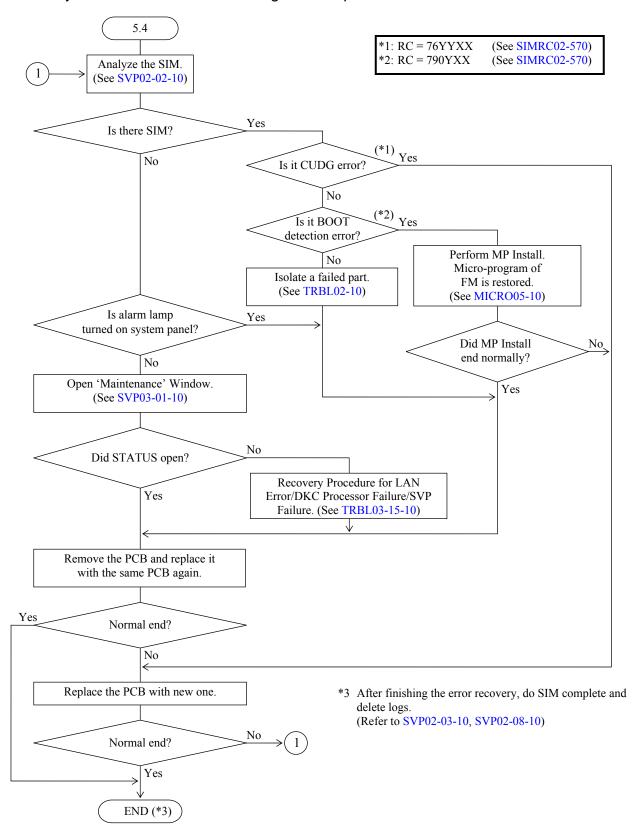
(3) Other cases



(4) Case of the DKA type change operation



2.3.4 Recovery Procedure for Failure During MPB Replacement



Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL02-390

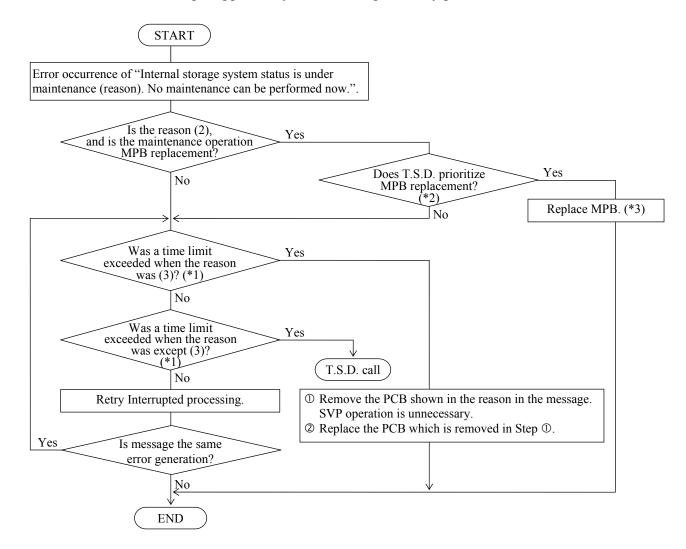
Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

2.3.5 Recovery Procedure When Status in Changing Is Not Released

The SVP protects maintenance operation while the DKC is changing its status. If the SVP detects such condition before executing maintenance process, the message (SVP0734W) as "Internal storage system status is under maintenance (reason). No maintenance can be performed now." or the message (SVP0615W) as "Internal storage system status is under maintenance (reason). No maintenance can be performed now. Do you want to stop this process?" is displayed. The reason is one of the following messages.

- (1) LDEV format in progress.
- (2) Copy in progress.
- (3) MPB-XXX (or CHA-XXX or DKA-XXX) status is changing XXX: location number
- (4) Cluster-X (or Cluster-1 & Cluster-2) status is changing X: Cluster number
- (5) Configuration is changing
- (6) Extent shredding is in progress
- (7) Maintenance job in progress

If one of the above messages appears, try the following recovery procedure.



Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL02-400

*1: The time limit value of the reason is shown below.

- (1) It takes about 2 hours per 16 LDEV for LDEV format.
- (2) It takes about 12 hours per drive for copy.
- (3) It takes about 10 minutes for MPB/CHA/DKA.
- (4) It takes about 4 hours for CACHE/SM (depending on cache size/SM size) in maximum.
- (5) It takes about 3 minutes for Configuration change in maximum.
- (6) It takes about 6 hours per 16 LDEV for Shredding (depending on the number of LDEV format execution).
- (7) During maintenance job, if LDEV High-Speed Format is in process, refer to THEORY03-05-20.

If LDEV High-Speed Format is not executed, it takes about 1 hour.

- *2: Contact T.S.D. and confirm the prioritized operation.
- *3: Replace MPB according to the following procedure.

NOTE: If Correction Copy is running, check the progress.

If it almost completes, wait until it completes, and then replace MPB.

(1) From the 'Maintenance' Window, interrupt the copy processing.

NOTE: A blocked HDD may be detected again, and the copy processing could run again. In such a case, interrupt the copy processing again.

- (2) Replace MPB.
- (3) Re-execute the interrupted copy processing according to the following.
 - Dynamic Sparing : In the 'Maintenance' Window, select HDD and select [Others]-[Spare Disk].
 - Correction Copy: In the 'Maintenance' Window, select HDD and

select [Others]-[Correction Copy].

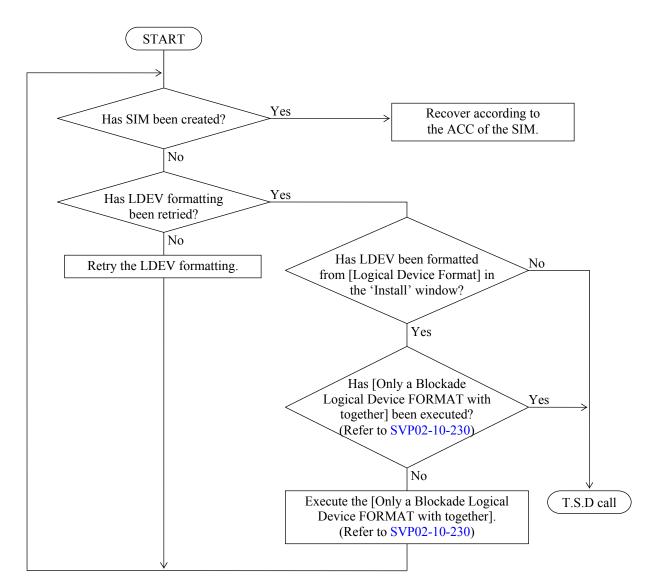
- Copy Back : Replace the blocked HDD.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL02-410

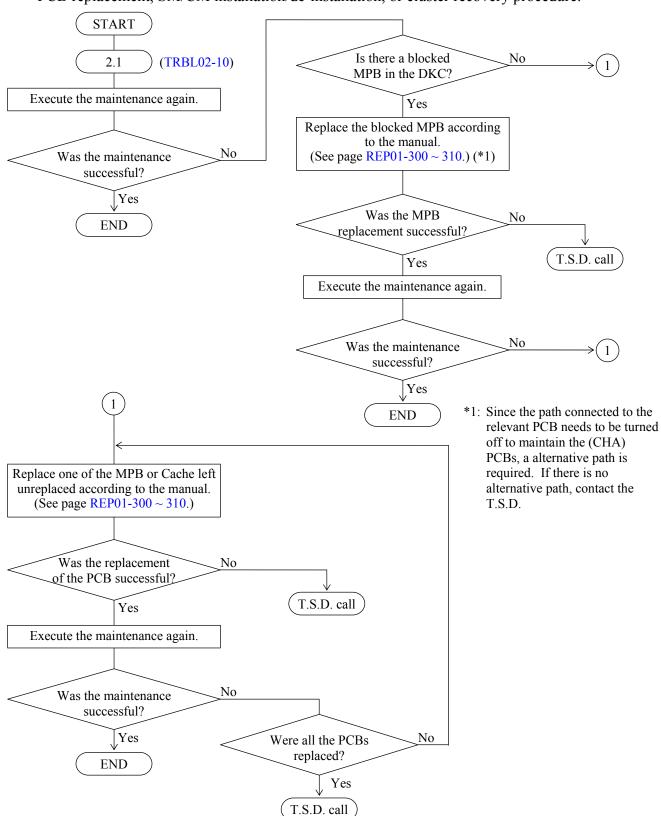
2.3.6 Recovery Procedure When LDEV Formatting Failed

When "Formatting logical devices rejected by DKC." or "Formatting the logical device is failed." is displayed at the end of the LDEV formatting and when "Blocked" is displayed for the LDEV formatted by "Logical Device Status", make a recovery according to the following procedure.



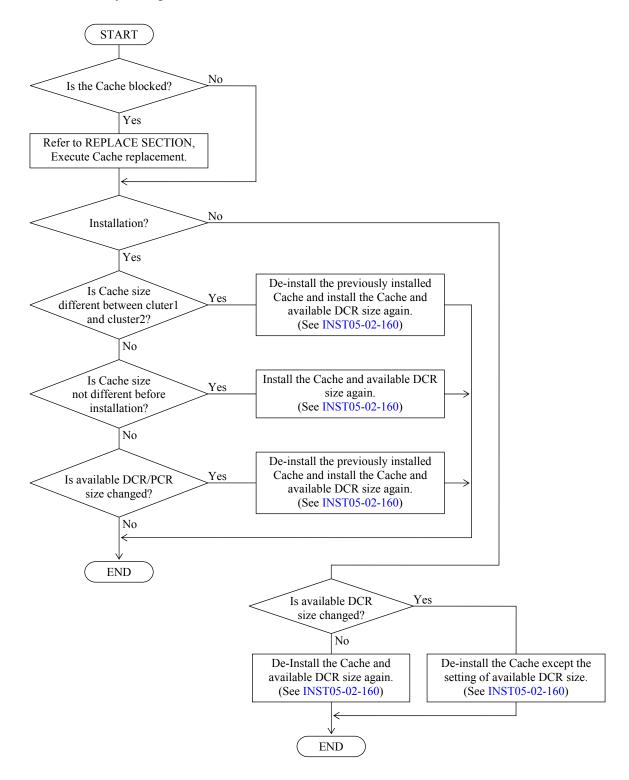
2.3.7 Recovery Procedure When Recovering SM Is Impossible

The following flowchart shows the recovery procedure when SM cannot be recovered during Cache PCB replacement, SM/CM installation/de-installation, or cluster recovery procedure.

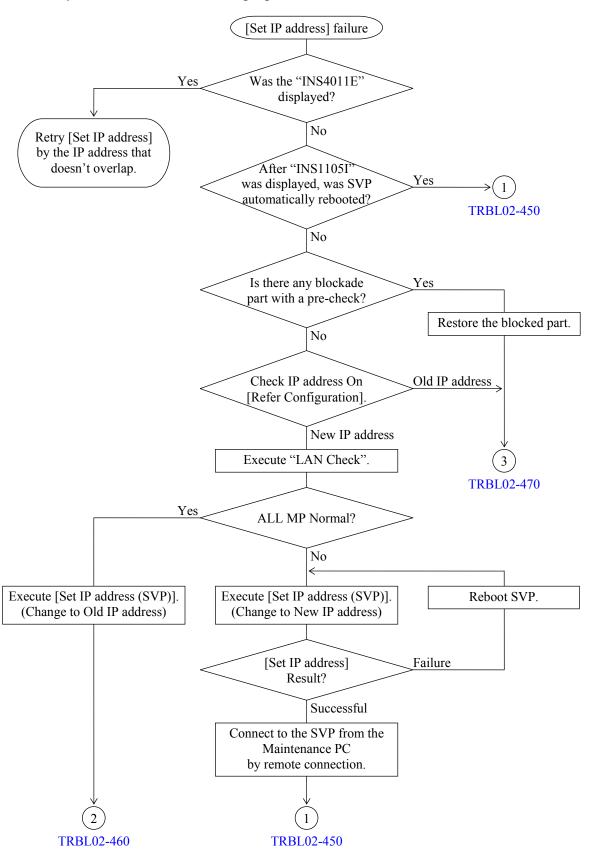


2.3.8 Recovery Procedure When Concurrent Execution of CACHE Installation/De-Installation and DCR Available Size Setting Failed

The recovery procedure when installation/de-installation Cache and DCR available size simultaneously is impossible.

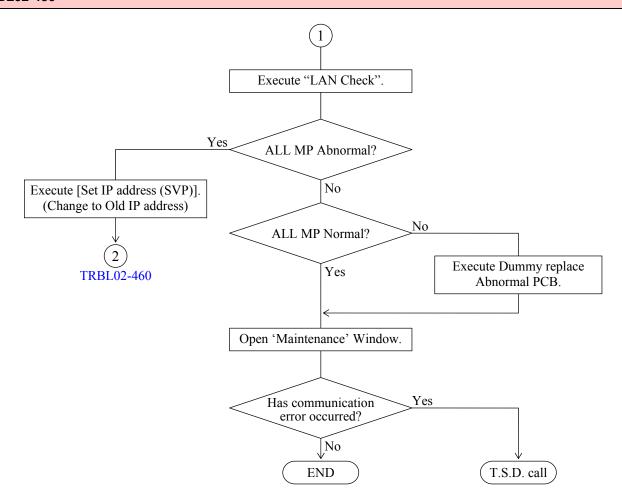


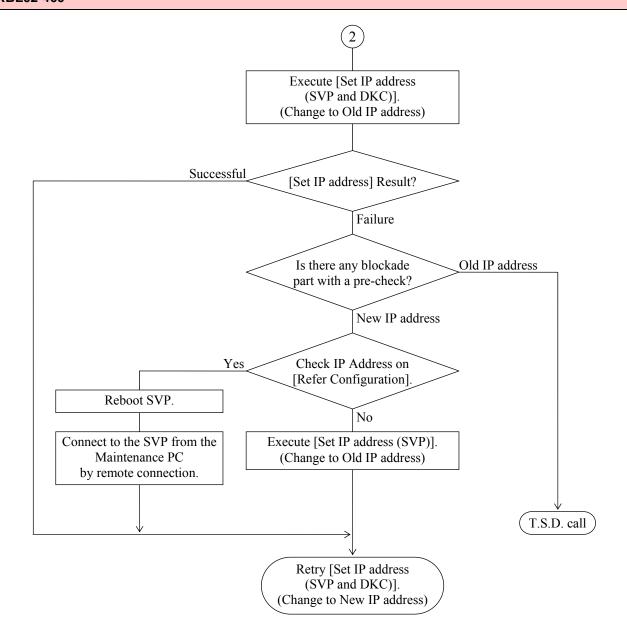
2.3.9 Recovery Procedure When Changing IP Address Failed



Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL02-450

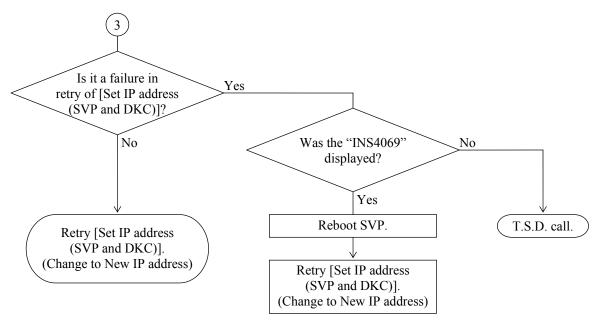




Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL02-470

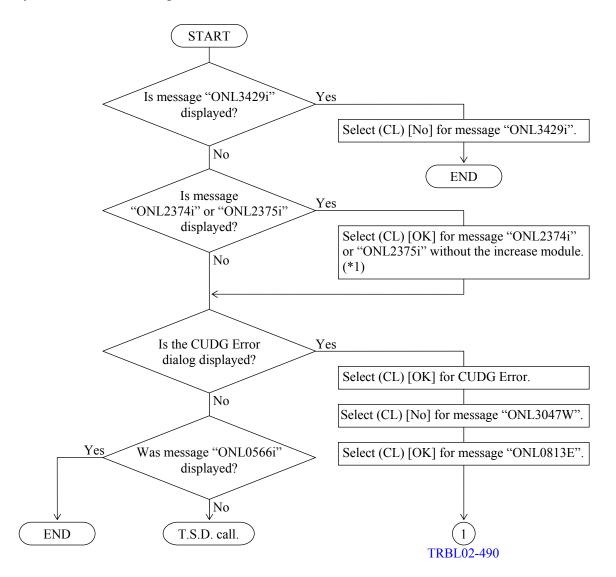
Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

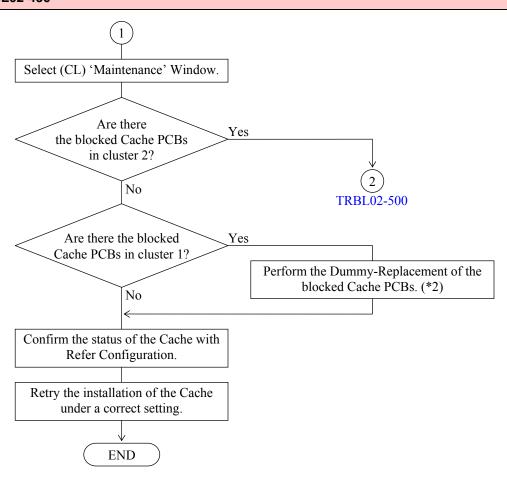


*: If the IP address change fails though [Set IP address (SVP and DKC)] is retired after SVP reboot, replace the SVP before retrying [Set IP address (SVP and DKC)].

2.3.10 Recovery Procedure for Mistake in Settings When Installing CACHE

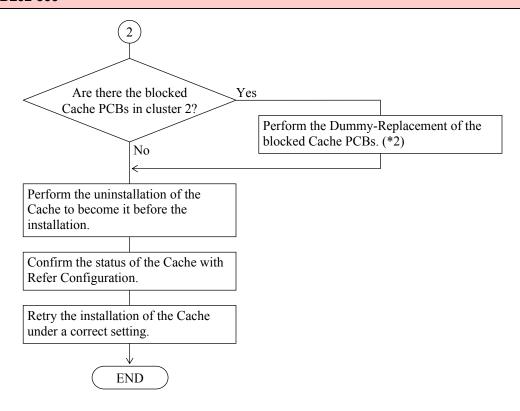
Perform the recovery according to the following procedures when you make a mistake in the setting by the Cache increase operation.





Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL02-500

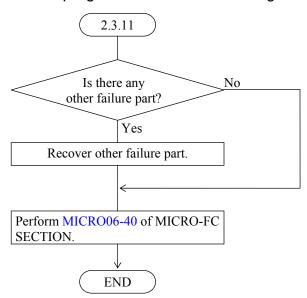


- *1: Pull out and insert the PCB that lights LED.
- *2: Pull out the increased memory modules.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL02-510

2.3.11 Micro-program Version Mismatching

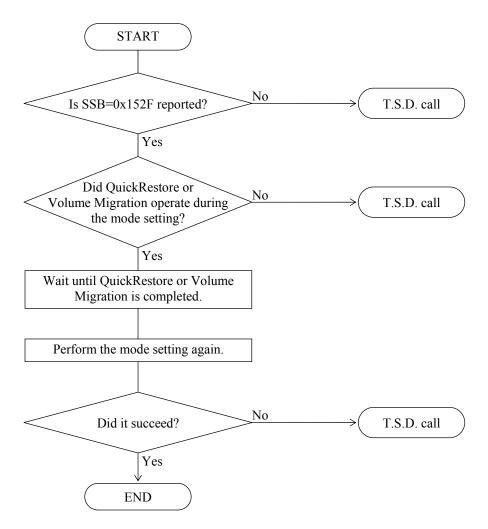


Rev.0 / Mar.2014

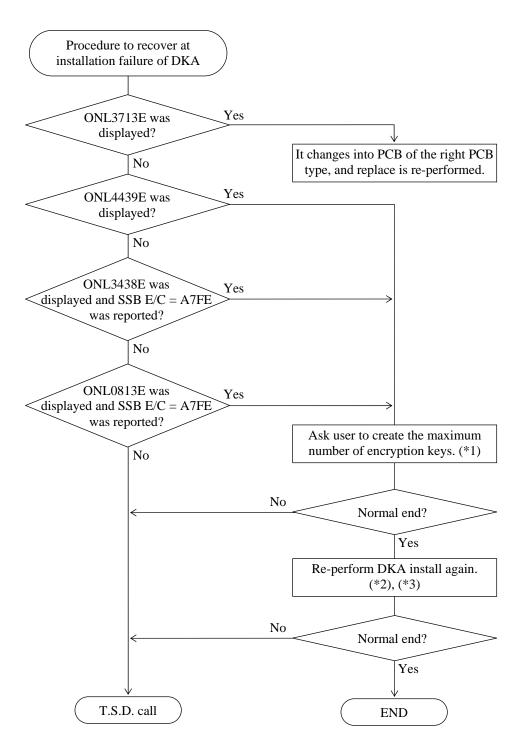
TRBL02-520

2.3.12 Action When Mode Setting of System Option Failed

When "Error response from DKC." and "Change Configuration was failed." were displayed during the mode setting execution of System Option, correspond it in the following procedure.



2.3.13 Recovery Procedure for Failure During DKA Installation



- *1: When creating encryption key on the Key Management Server, it may take approximately 60 minutes.
- *2: When the DKA replacement was failed with using new part, it is not necessary for you to replace the DKA to new one again.
- *3: If DKA is blocked, please dummy-replace the DKA.

2.4 Multiple Parts Have Failed

Maintenance Priority

If there are many parts which need maintenance in the system, you should plan the maintenance schedule under the priority mentioned in this page.

If you have to maintain two parts, first you should maintain a part whose priority is higher than the other.

Table 2.4-1 shows that a part with a smaller priority number has a higher priority.

In the following cases, go to the maintenance work of the next priority.

- The failure part is remained even if the maintenance with a higher priority is performed.
- The higher priority maintenance is failed, or the higher priority maintenance procedure is suppressed.

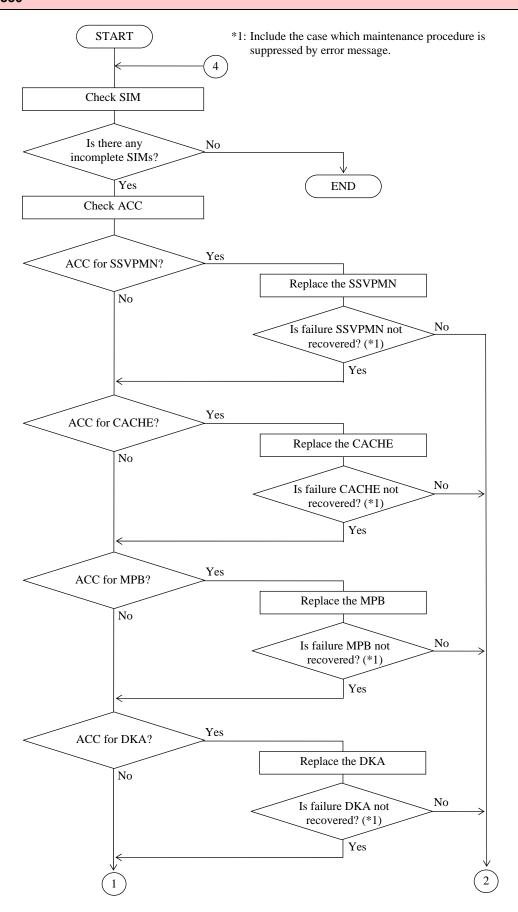
	•	
Priority	Parts name	Maintenance method
1	SSVPMN	Replace
2	CACHE	Replace
3	MPB	Replace
4	DKA	Replace
5	СНА	Replace
6	CACHE DIMM	Replace
7	SSW	Replace
8	BKM	Replace
9	HDD	Replace
10	LDEV	Format or Restore
11	Hardware etc.	Replace
12	Software	Exchange

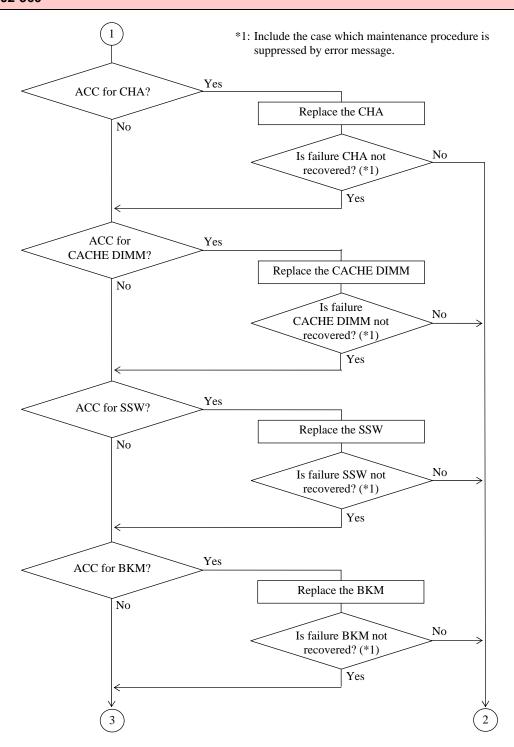
Table 2.4-1 Priority Table

When the SVP High Reliability Kit has been installed and an SVP fail over (SIM = 7FF3XX) is detected, at first, take actions to resolve the failure (SIM = 7FF3XX).

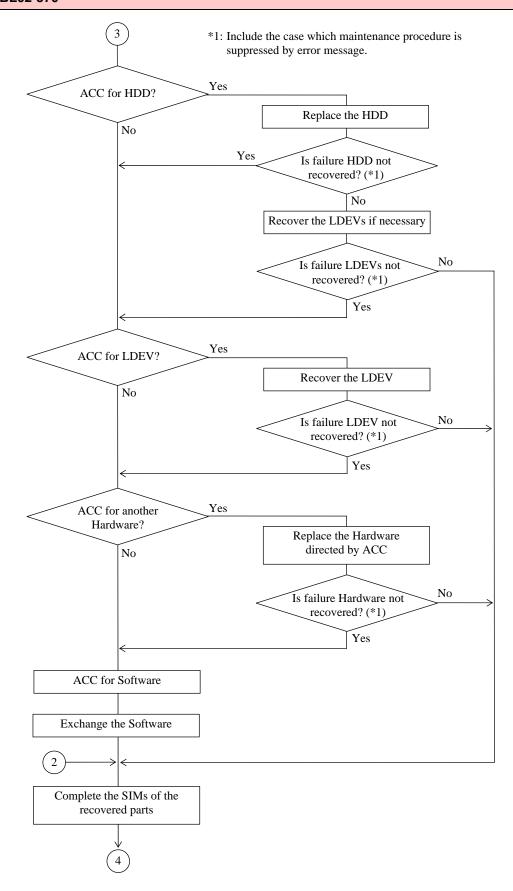
In case of voltage alarm (SIM = BF201X) detected, at first, you should perform the recovery procedure for voltage alarm detection (TRBL03-29-10).

In case of temperature alarm (SIM = BF13XX) detected, at first, you should perform the recovery procedure for temperature alarm detection (TRBL03-34-10).





TRBL02-570



Rev.0 / Mar.2014

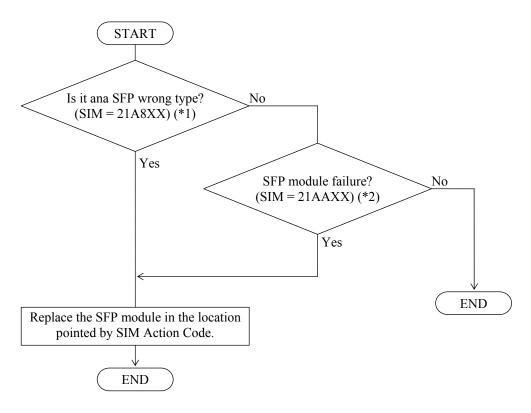
TRBL03-01-10

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

3. Recovery from Common Platform Failure

3.1 Recovery Procedure When SFP Module Failure Is Detected (SIM = 21A8XX, 21AAXX)

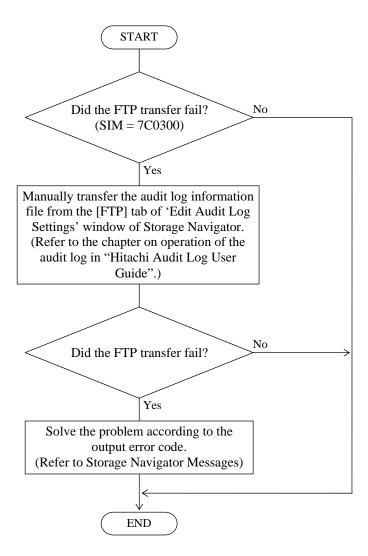
The recovery procedure when an SFP module failure occurs is indicated.



- *1: SFP wrong type factors
 - When a Longwave SFP is used in the Shortwave setting port and a Shortwave SFP is used in the Longwave setting port.
 - When an unsupported SFP transceiver is installed.
 - When the information on the SFP is not recognized correctly.
- *2: SFP module failure factors
 - When SFP module hardware failure is occurred.
 - When an unsupported SFP transceiver is installed.

3.2 Action When Audit Log FTP Transfer Failure Is Detected (SIM = 7C0300)

The recover procedure when failing to the audit log FPT transfer is indicated.



Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL03-03-10

3.3 Action When LDEV FORMATTING Failed (SIM = 4100XX)

SIM = 410002: Some ECC Groups are failed at LDEV Formatting.

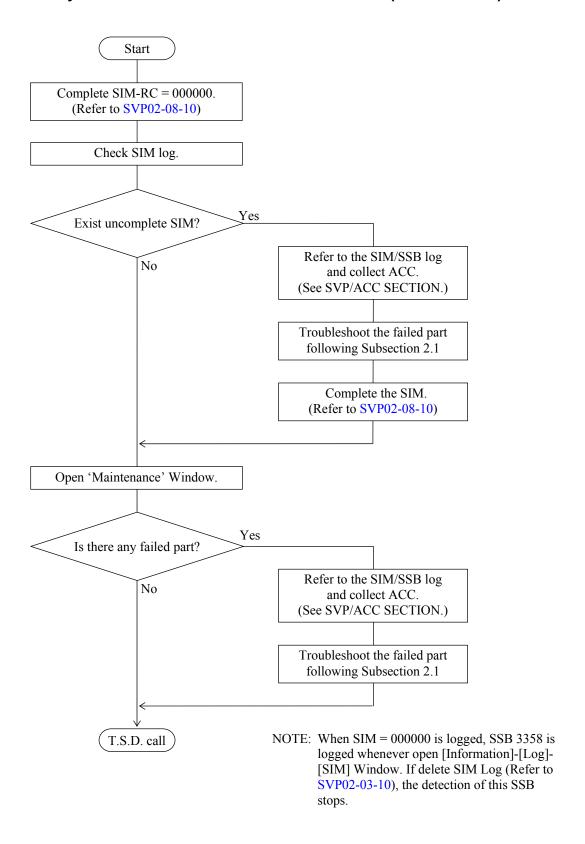
One or more ECC Groups failed at LDEV formatting exists.

When SIM related to HDD or SAS Port has been generated at the same time, measures of this SIM should be executed.

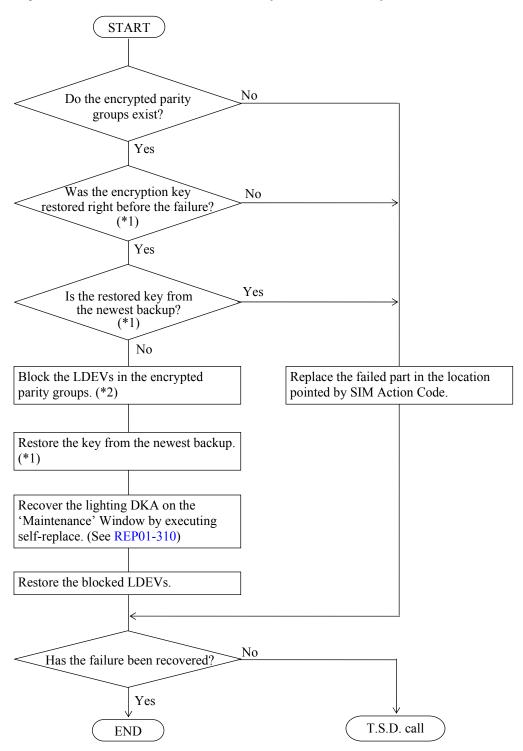
SIM = 410001: LDEV Formatting is failed

Take the dump and call the Technical Support Division.

3.4 Recovery Procedure for Detected Invalid SIM Data (SIM = 7C0500)



3.5 Recovery Procedure for DMA Blockade (SIM = CF83XY)

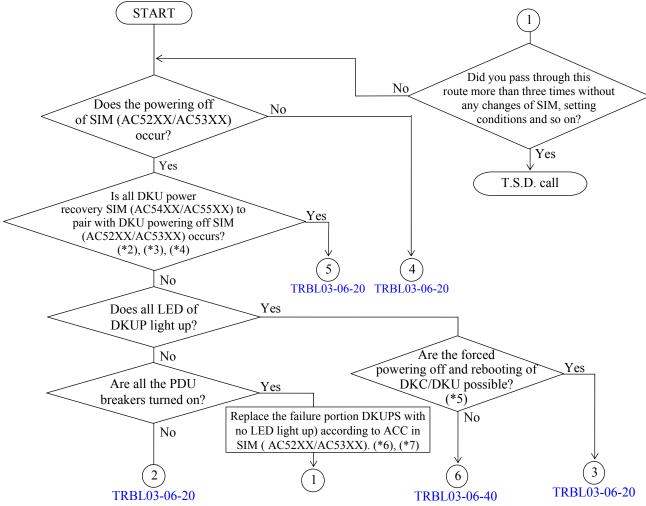


^{*1:} The backup and restoration of the encryption key must be performed by the customer security administrator. Please request the customer security administrator to confirm settings and operate.

^{*2:} Please block the LDEVs with 'Logical Device' window of SVP.

3.6 Recovery when power off or SAS PORT failure occurred (SIM = CF12XX, AC52XX, AC53XX)

When DKU powering off failure (SIM = AC52XX, AC53XX) and SAS PORT blockage (SIM = CF12XX) occurred, follow the procedure.



- *1: The priority of maintenance for ACC-designated location depending on the maintenance parts. In only case that both SIM: CF12XX, AC52XX/AC53XX are output, execute maintenance in the following preferential order. If no parts are found in ACC-designated location, execute maintenance in the following preferential order. Priority: High > Low.
 - PDU Breaker Switch on (AC52XX/AC53XX) > DKUPS replacement (AC52XX/AC53XX) > SSW replacement (CF12XX) > DKA replacement (CF12XX) > SSW replacement (AC52XX/AC53XX) >
 - SAS Cable replacement (AC52XX/AC53XX) > DKA replacement (AC52XX/AC53XX) (Power related: AC52XX/AC53XX take priority, SSW/DKA/SAS Cable: CF12XX takes priority)
- *2: If DKUPS replacement and PDU ON are executed, check SIM after waiting for more than 2 minutes.

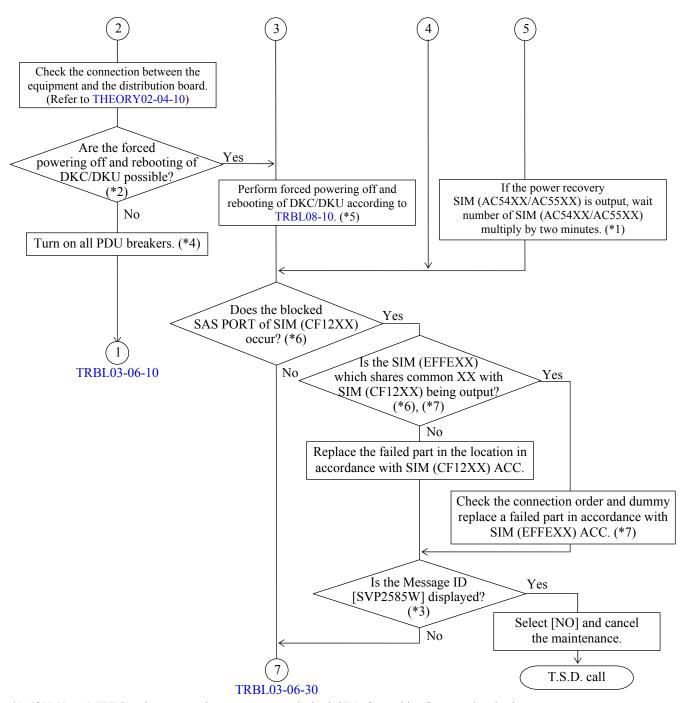
 SIM XX of AC52XX/AC53XX indicates chassis number (hexadecimal number). At the time of the recovery of DKU power
- interruption, SIM: AC54XX/AC55XX with equal XX is output.

 *3: If SAS Port which is connected to HDU of power off recovery is blocked during DKU power off recovery, HDU power off recovery SIM as well as HDU power off recovery on blocked SAS Port route are not output. In this case, continue recovery action flow assuming AC54XX/AC55XX which is a pair of designated location is output.
- *4: If both two Ports of SAS Port which are connected to the chassis with uncompleted 4HDU power interruption recovery are blocked, SIM: AC54XX/AC55XX is not output even when the power supply to a chassis which has the HDU power interruption status is recovered.
- *5: If the connection of the equipment and the distribution board is not appropriate, explain to the client, stop the equipment and correct the connection.
- *6: If DKUPS cannot be replaced, call T.S.D.
- *7: If DKUPS is replaced when failure occurs in multiple locations, PDEV blockage may occur. In this case, execute maintenance with SOM: 1044 ON. After power off recovery is completed, return the status of SOM: 1044 before the change.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL03-06-20

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.



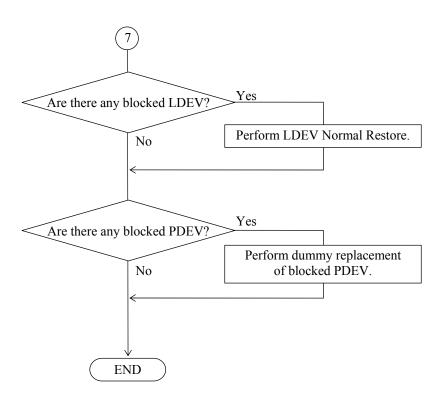
- *1: If PDU on, DKUPS replacement and so on are executed, check SIM after waiting for more than 2 minutes.

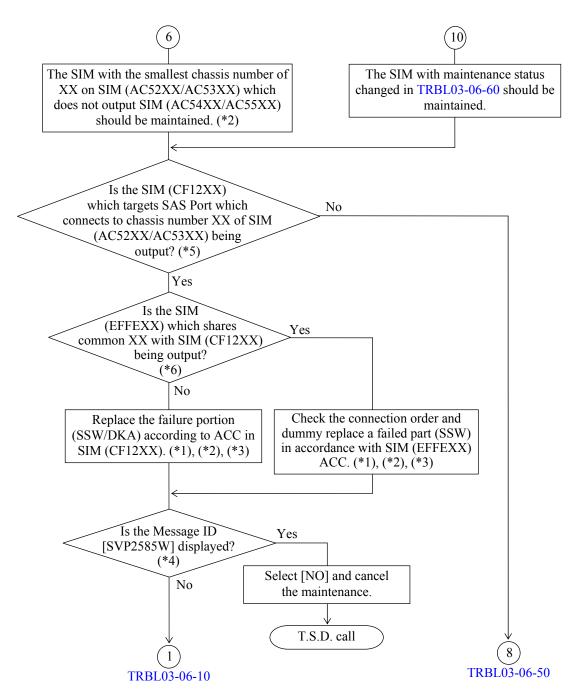
 Note that around 2 minutes are required from output of DKU power interruption recovery SIM to LDEV recovery.
- *2: If the connection of the equipment and he distribution board is not appropriate, explain to the client, stop the equipment and correct the connection.
- *3: [SVP2585W] A warning of <Important CAUTION> "When you continue this operation, customer's DATA is LOST. Are you sure you want to continue this operation?".
- *4: If breakers in which need PDU breaker on exists in multiple locations and breakers are turned on, PDEV may be blocked. In this case, execute maintenance with SOM: 1044 ON. After power interruption recovery is completed, return the status of SOM: 1044 to the prechange state.
- *5: If DKC/DKU is forcibly powered off and rebooted, DKU power interruption recovery SIM is not output. In this case, complete DKU power interruption SIM.
- *6: The XX in CF12XX, EFFEXX represents SAS Port number XX (hexadecimal).
- *7: For the detail of the connection order, see "3.45 Recovery when SAS cable connection error occurs (SIM = EFFEXX)" (TRBL03-45-10).

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL03-06-30

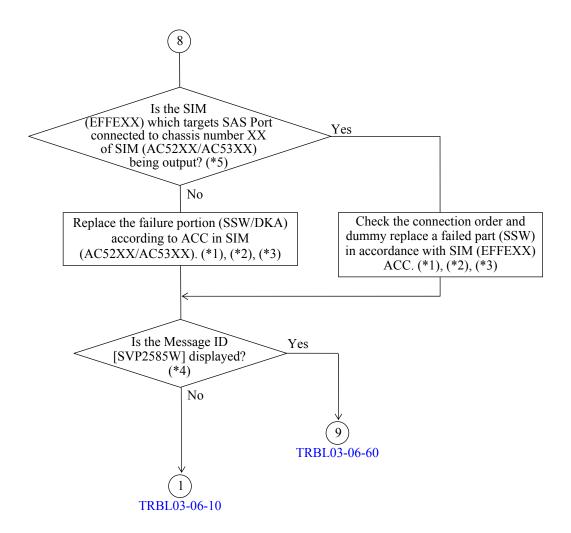
Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.



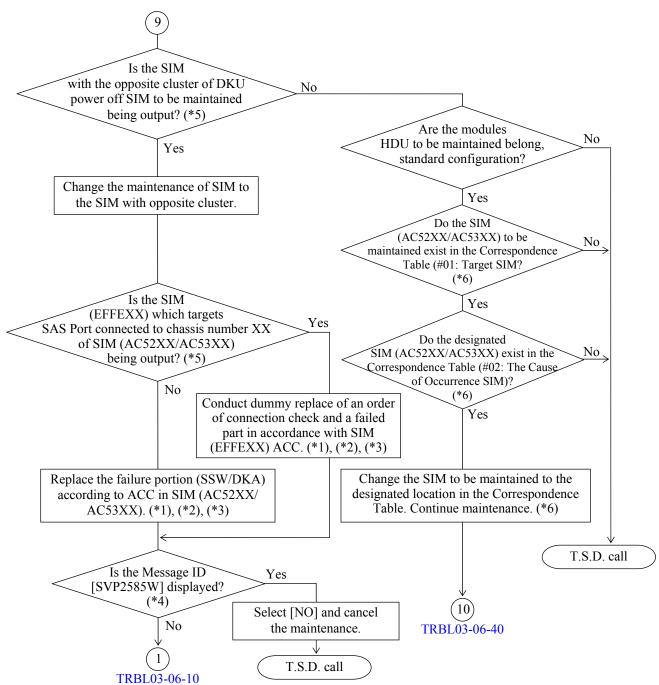


- *1: SIM (CF11XX, CF12XX) which is related to not replaced SAS Port may be reported after the replacement.
- *2: If the multiple power interruption SIM (AC52XX/AC53XX) which does not output the power interruption recovery SIM (AC54XX/AC55XX) are output, execute in ascending order of the unit number (XX). Note that AC52XX represents HDU power interruption at the CL#1 side of the unit number XX has detected, and AC53XX represents that HDU power interruption at the CL#2 side of the unit number XX. In case that both AC52XX and AC53XX with the identical "XX" unit numbers have been output, execute ACC at the side of earlier SIM output on ahead.
- *3: If replacement/dummy replace resulted in output of abnormal chassis connection order (SIM: EFFEXX), execute maintenance act in accordance with "3.45 Recovery when SAS cable connection error occurs (SIM = EFFEXX)" (TRBL03-45-10).
- *4: [SVP2585W] A warning of <Important CAUTION> "When you continue this operation, customer's DATA is LOST. Are you sure you want to continue this operation?".
- *5: AC52XX, AC53XX represents CL#1 and CL#2 in chassis number XX (hexadecimal). The XX in CF12XX, EFFEXX represents SAS Port number (hexadecimal).
- *6: For the detail of the connection order, see "3.45 Recovery when SAS cable connection error occurs (SIM = EFFEXX)" (TRBL03-45-10).

TRBL03-06-50



- *1: SIM (CF11XX, CF12XX) which is related to not replaced SAS Port may be reported after the replacement.
- *2: If the multiple power interruption SIM (AC52XX/AC53XX) which does not output the power interruption recovery SIM (AC54XX/AC55XX) are output, execute in ascending order of the unit number (XX). Note that AC52XX represents HDU power interruption at the CL#1 side of the unit number XX has detected, and AC53XX represents that HDU power interruption at the CL#2 side of the unit number XX. In case that both AC52XX and AC53XX with the identical "XX" unit numbers have been output, execute ACC at the side of earlier SIM output on ahead.
- *3: If replacement/dummy replace resulted in output of abnormal chassis connection order (SIM: EFFEXX), execute maintenance act in accordance with "3.45 Recovery when SAS cable connection error occurs (SIM = EFFEXX)" (TRBL03-45-10).
- *4: [SVP2585W] A warning of <Important CAUTION> "When you continue this operation, customer's DATA is LOST. Are you sure you want to continue this operation?".
- *5: AC52XX, AC53XX represents CL#1 and CL#2 in chassis number XX (hexadecimal). The XX in EFFEXX represents SAS Port number (hexadecimal). For the detail of the connection order, see "3.45 Recovery when SAS cable connection error occurs (SIM = EFFEXX)" (TRBL03-45-10).



- *1: SIM (CF11XX, CF12XX) which is related to not replaced SAS Port may be reported after the replacement.
- *2: If the multiple power interruption SIM (AC52XX/AC53XX) which does not output the power interruption recovery SIM (AC54XX/AC55XX) are output, execute in ascending order of the unit number (XX). Note that AC52XX represents HDU power interruption at the CL#1 side of the unit number XX has detected, and AC53XX represents that HDU power interruption at the CL#2 side of the unit number XX. In case that both AC52XX and AC53XX with the identical "XX" unit numbers have been output, execute ACC at the side of earlier SIM output on ahead.
- *3: If replacement/dummy replace resulted in output of abnormal chassis connection order (SIM: EFFEXX), execute maintenance act in accordance with "3.45 Recovery when SAS cable connection error occurs (SIM = EFFEXX)" (TRBL03-45-10).
- *4: [SVP2585W] A warning of <Important CAUTION> "When you continue this operation, customer's DATA is LOST. Are you sure you want to continue this operation?".
- *5: The AC52XX, AC53XX with a common XX are HDU power off SIM of CL#1 and CL#2 chassis number XX (hexadecimal). If the SIM (AC52XX) is executed, the opposite CL will be SIM (AC53XX). For the detail of the connection order, see "3.45 Recovery when SAS cable connection error occurs (SIM = EFFEXX)" (TRBL03-45-10).
- *6: For the detail of Correspondence Table, see TRBL03-06-70.

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

TRBL03-06-70

If DKU power off occurs in standard configuration, a power off factor may be caused by DKU power off of other units. In that case, check Maintenance Flow and Correspondence Table to determine maintenance parts.

Correspondence Table

#01:Target SIM	#02: The cause of Occurrence SIM
AC5300	AC5201/AC5301 (HDU#001 power off)
AC5201	AC5200/AC5300 (HDU#000 power off)
AC5302	AC5203/AC5303 (HDU#003 power off)
AC5203	AC5202/AC5302 (HDU#002 power off)
AC5304	AC5205/AC5305 (HDU#005 power off)
AC5205	AC5204/AC5304 (HDU#004 power off)
AC5306	AC5207/AC5307 (HDU#007 power off)
AC5207	AC5206/AC5306 (HDU#006 power off)
AC5330	AC5231/AC5331 (HDU#101 power off)
AC5231	AC5230/AC5330 (HDU#100 power off)
AC5332	AC5233/AC5333 (HDU#103 power off)
AC5233	AC5232/AC5332 (HDU#102 power off)
AC5334	AC5235/AC5335 (HDU#105 power off)
AC5235	AC5234/AC5334 (HDU#104 power off)
AC5336	AC5237/AC5337 (HDU#107 power off)
AC5237	AC5236/AC5336 (HDU#106 power off)

- Correspondence Table #01: Target SIM The SIM described in #01 may occur by DKU power off factor of another unit. If a maintenance of SIM (AC52XX/AC53XX) described in Correspondence Table is executed, check #02.
- Correspondence Table #02: SIM for the cause of occurrence The DKU power off SIM in which could be the cause of occurrence for #01 subjected SIM is listed in #02. If either one of SIM of the cause of #02 occurrence (AC52XX/AC53XX) is output, the maintenance of the designated SIM needs to be executed first. In this case, change maintenance to SIM listed in #02 SIM for the cause of occurrence and continue the flow (Execute the route of TRBL03-06-40 ®).

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

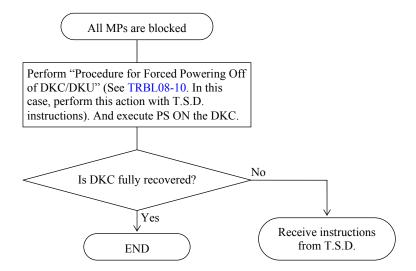
TRBL03-07-10

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

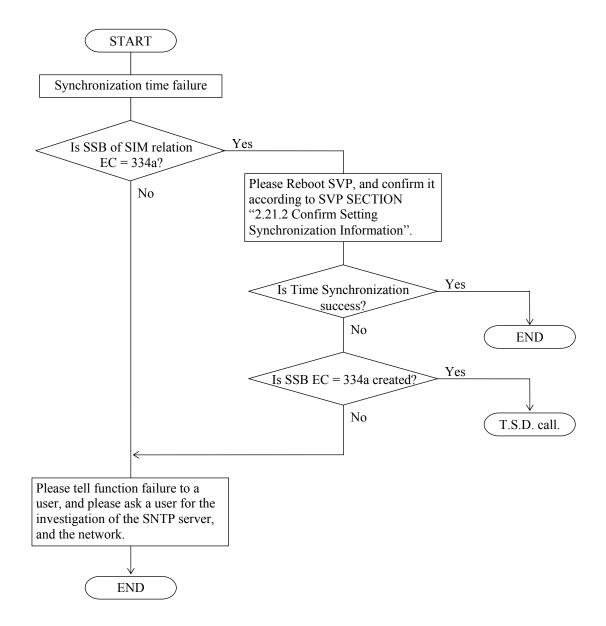
3.7 Recovery Procedure for DKC Blockade (SIM = 30A100)

A CAUTION

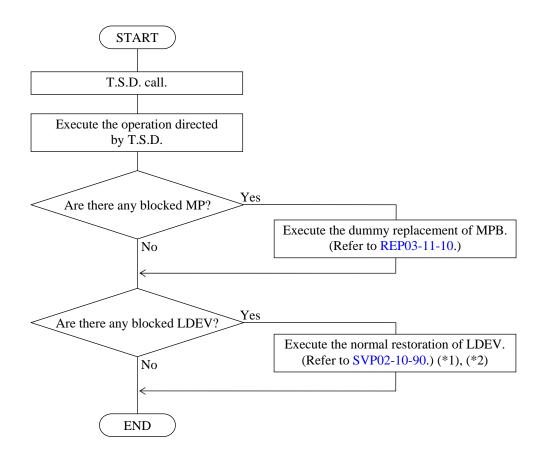
Perform this action that a special procedure is included in, by instructions of T.S.D.



3.8 Action When Time Synchronization Failed (SIM = 7FFA00)



3.9 Recovery Procedure for LDEV Blockade due to Microcode Error (SIM = 3A0XYY)



- *1: Delete [TrueCopy / Universal Replicator / ShadowImage / Volume Migration / Thin Image / XRC / FlashCopy (R) V2 / FlashCopy (R) SE / global-active device] pairs that use the LDEV before restoring the LDEV. After the recovery flow completes, create pairs again.

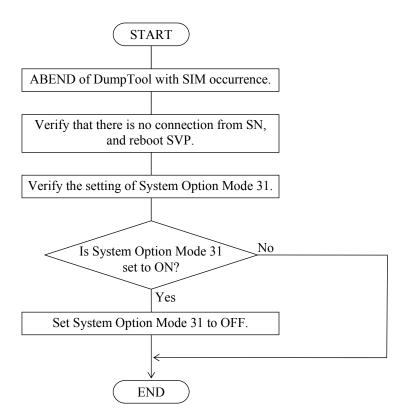
 When you delete FlashCopy (R) V2 / FlashCopy (R) SE pairs, please execute following procedure.

 If a LDEV to be restored has both source and target extents of relationships with other LDEVs not to be maintained, please perform following procedure (1), (2) and (3).
 - (1) Perform forcible Withdraw by specifying SDEVN, TDEVN, and DDSW(NO) options. Please specify a LDEV to be restored as TDEVN. In addition, please don't specify extent option such as XTNTLST.
 - (2) Perform forcible Withdraw by specifying SDEVN, TDEVN, and DDSW(NO) options. Please don't specify extent option such as XTNTLST.
 - (3) Perform forcible Withdraw by specifying TDEVN, and DDSW(NO) options. Please don't specify SDEVN option and extent option such as XTNTLST.

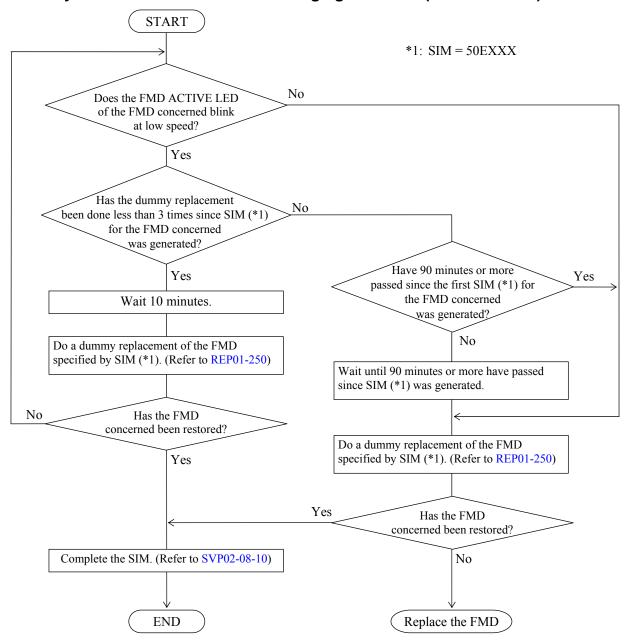
The other cases, please perform following procedure (1) and (2).

- (1) Perform forcible Withdraw by specifying SDEVN, TDEVN, and DDSW(NO) options. Please don't specify extent option such as XTNTLST.
- (2) Perform forcible Withdraw by specifying TDEVN, and DDSW(NO) options. Please don't specify SDEVN option and extent option such as XTNTLST.
- *2: When recovering the LDEV used in a GAD pair, recover the LDEV in accordance with the procedure described in TRBL18-50.

3.10 Recovery Procedure for Abnormal End of DumpTool (SIM = 7C0400)



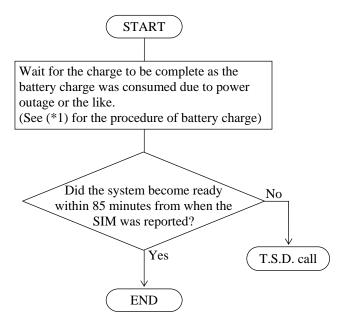
3.11 Recovery Procedure When FMD No Charging Occurred (SIM = 50EXXX)



3.12 Recovery procedure of SIM occurrence during battery charge (SIM = FE00XX)

If this SIM is reported, the battery charge level is below 25% and the system is waiting for start up. It takes a maximum of 85 minutes until the battery charge level becomes 25% or more.

For details, "2.2.3 Hardware Component (9) Battery". (THEORY02-02-180)



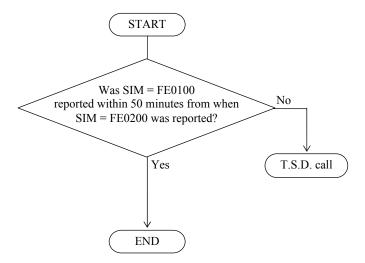
*1: Turn on the breakers on the PDPs and the PDUs, which makes the BS-ON LED lit, and then charge the batteries until the BATTERY CHARGE LED (See LOCATION SECTION (LOC03-100)) goes from blinking (charge in progress) to solid (charge completed).

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

3.13 Action when Cache Write Through by battery factor is detected (SIM = FE01XX, FE02XX)

If SIM = FE02XX is reported, the battery charge level is below 50% and the system operates in cache write through mode. It takes a maximum of 50 minutes until the battery charge level becomes 50% or more. SIM = FE0100 is reported when the battery charge level becomes 50% or more.

For details, "2.2.3 Hardware Component (9) Battery". (THEORY02-02-180)



Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL03-14-10

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

3.14 Isolation and Recovery Procedure for Common SAS Failure (SIM = DF6XXX, DF7XXX, DF8XXX, DF9XXX)

When a port error SIM for a drive (PDEV) is reported, this section provides the procedures for judging whether the error is caused by the pertinent drive error or common SAS error, and how to recover the error.

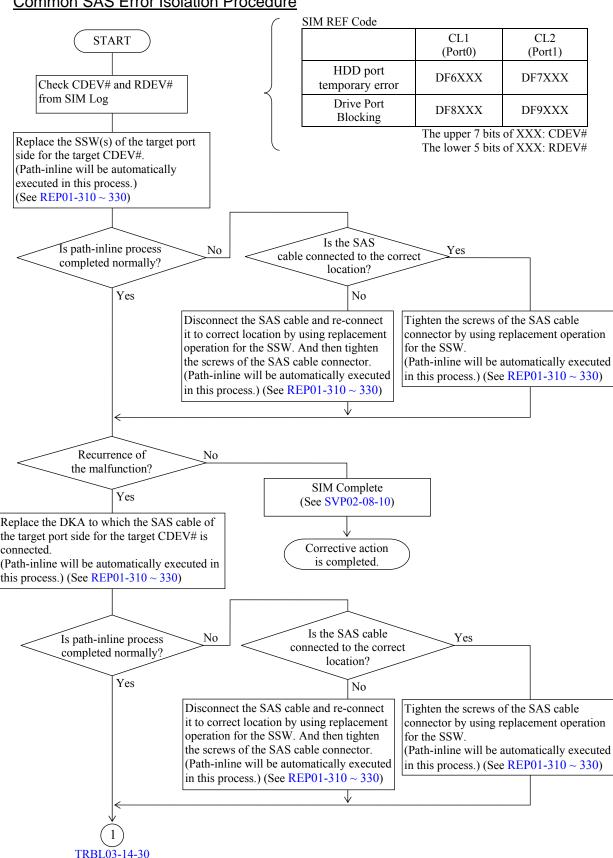
As a HDD port error SIM managed in each PDEV, a Port temporary error (REF code = DF6XXX, DF7XXX) is reported when a warning is issued, and Port blocking (REF code = DF8XXX, DF9XXX) is reported when the equipment is blocked (The upper 7 bits of XXX: CDEV#, The lower 5 bits of XXX: RDEV#).

Possible causes for the malfunction are:

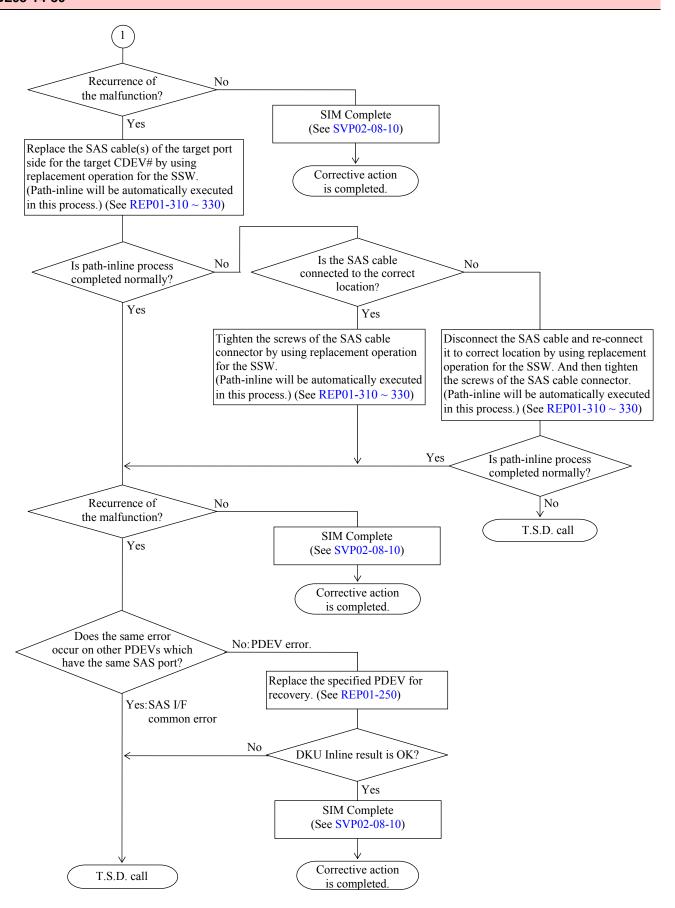
- (1) Failure of drive specified
- (2) Defects in SAS Chip for DKA
- (3) Defects in SAS Loop (cable, SSW (expander))
- (4) Other drive failure
- (5) HDU Box platter failure

Before performing the maintenance and replacement only for the failed drive, follow these isolation and recovery procedures to check that a common SAS port error occurs on other PDEVs on the same SAS I/F. If a common error exists, perform the appropriate recovery for the common error parts.

Common SAS Error Isolation Procedure



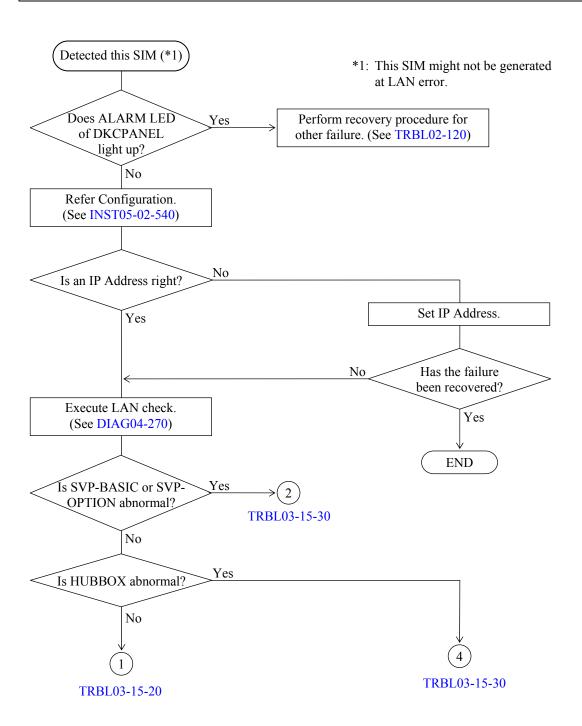
TRBL03-14-30



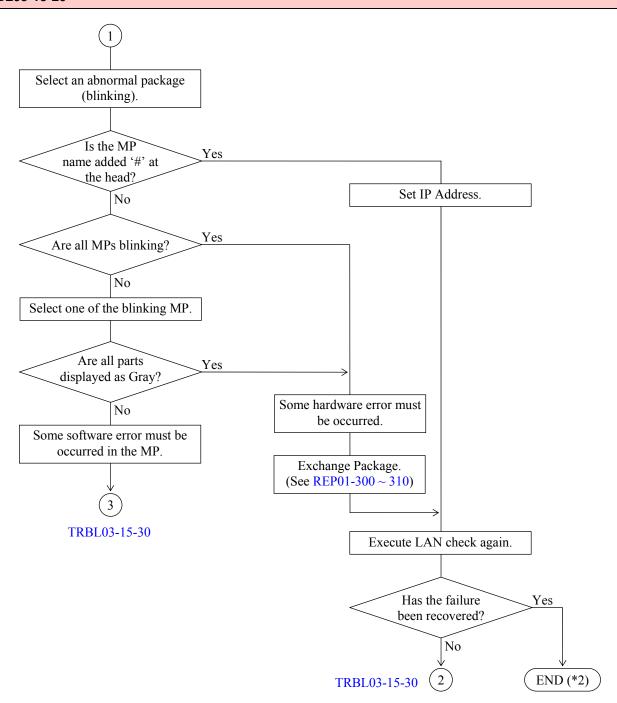
3.15 Recovery Procedure for LAN Error/DKC Processor Failure/SVP Failure (SIM = 1400X0, 1500X0, 73XX00)

A CAUTION

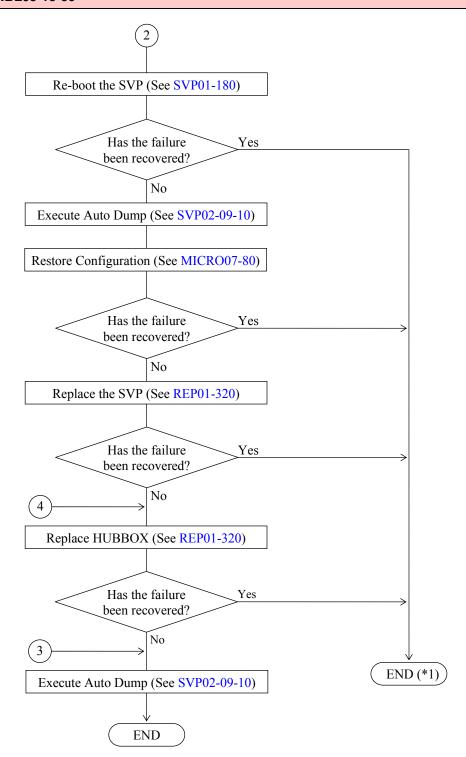
The storage system that detected this SIM may fell into serious error state due to DKC processor abnormality. Therefore, restore the storage system according to the following flow immediately. (*1)



TRBL03-15-20



*2: After finishing the error recovery, execute SIM complete and delete logs. (Refer to SVP02-03-10, SVP02-08-10)



Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL03-16-10

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

3.16 Recovery Procedure for CACHE Replacement Failure (SIM = 3993XX, FFE40X, FFF90X)

This recovery procedure is provided for CACHE replacement when replace failure SIM is reported.

• CACHE replace failure caused by processor error

(REF code = 0x3993XX, 0x3D93XX : XX = PCB ID, MP ID in PCB)

- ① Remove the process or MPB shown in the SIM REF code.

 In this case, CHK3 or other equipment error are reported because no processing is performed.
- ② Retry the suspended CACHE replacement.
- 3 Replace removed PCB in Step 1.
- CACHE replace failure caused by Shared Memory error

(REF code = 0xFFE40X : X:(0) = side A, (1) = side B)

- ① Conduct CACHE replacement again.
- ② When normal end, CACHE replacement is completed.
- ③ When SM failure SIM(REF code = 0xFFE40X) is reported again, replace CACHE PCB (Basic) of the same CL side.
- SM restore failure by cause of CACHE memory

(REF code = 0xFFF90X : X:(0) = side A, (1) = side B)

- ① Mounting of the same CL side as CACHE PCB that fails in the replacement CACHE PCB (Basic and Option) replacement is executed.

 If you see "A failed part still exists and should be serviced first. Do you want to stop this process?" on the screen, select [No], and use the password to keep on performing CACHE
- PCB replacement proceeding in terms of replacement.

 ② It replaces it in service parts CACHE PCB different from CACHE PCB that fails in the

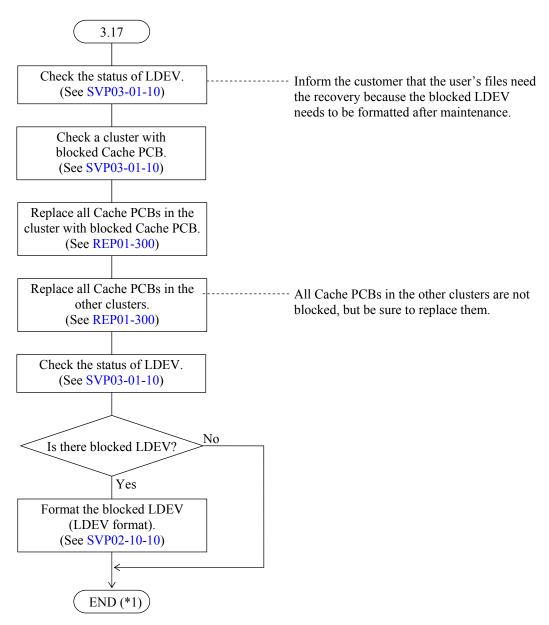
replacement when failing in the replacement according to the procedure of ①.

③ It wants to do the failure end after the work of ② is completed CACHE PCB and the replacement is executed again.

3.17 Recovery Procedure for CACHE Failure (Both Sides) (SIM = FFF50X)

This procedure is to recover errors of the both sides of cache (SIM = FFF50X) at powering on the storage system.

At this time, if pending data (non-written data to the drive) exists on the cache, the drive will be blocked and the LDEV formatted drive will be required.



*1: After finishing the error recovery, do SIM complete and delete logs. (SVP02-03-10, SVP02-08-10)

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL03-18-10

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

3.18 Recovery Procedure for Mounted Memory Capacity Inconsistency (SIM = FFE30X, SIM = FFE800)

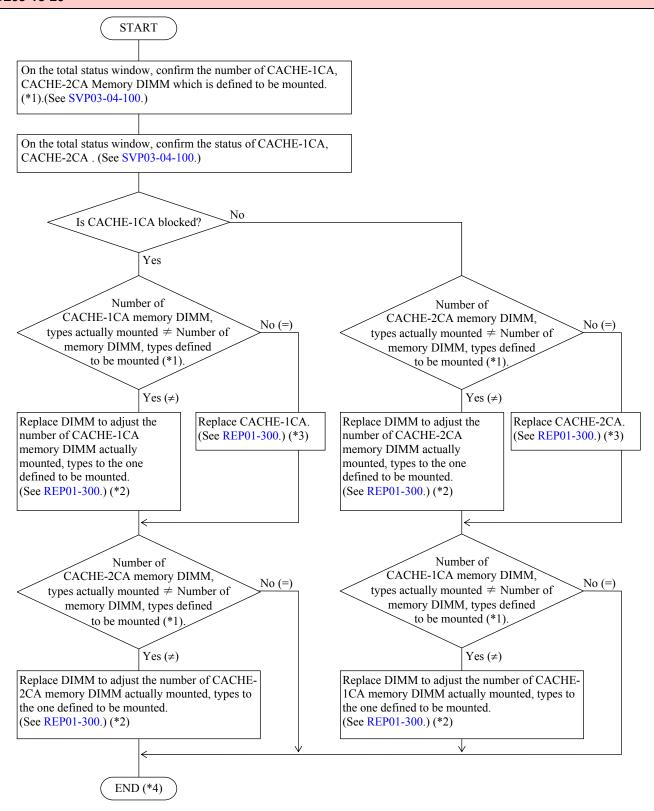
In case that SIM-RC = FFE30X (the mounted SM capacities inequality error) was reported, recover the problem in accordance with the procedure below.

This error occurs if an SM is blocked because the mounted Memory capacity differs between Cache Memory PCB (CACHE-1CA, CACHE-2CA). Therefore, the number of mounted CM DIMM and type must be mounted again correctly.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL03-18-20

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.



- *1: Number of memory DIMM being mounted on the status window.
- *2: Confirm the number of mounted memory DIMM, types to mount appropriate number and types.
- *3: No need to adjust, replace the number of memory DIMM, types mounted.
- *4: After finishing the error recovery, complete SIM. (Refer to SVP02-08-10)

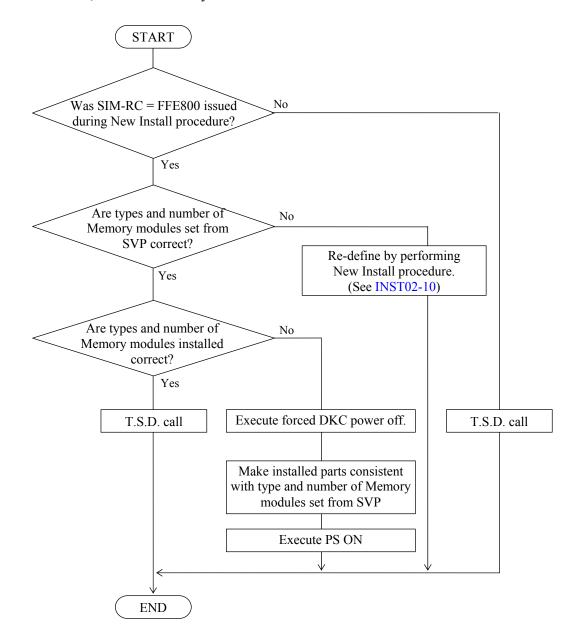
Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL03-18-30

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

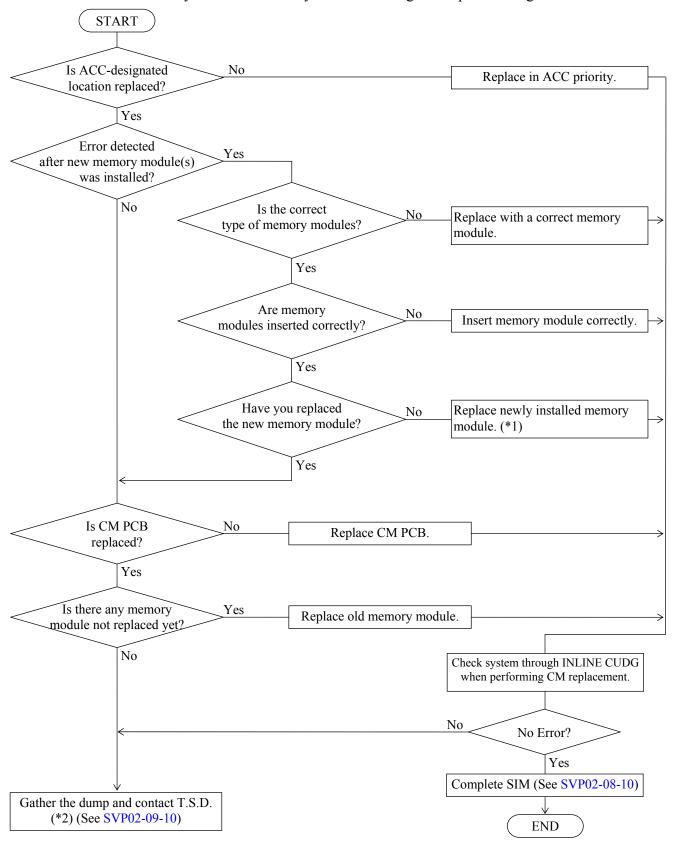
In case that SIM-RC = FFE80X was reported, recover the problem in accordance with the procedure below.

This SIM indicates that "Type of Memory module installed is inconsistent with the type set from SVP" or "The number of Memory modules installed is inconsistent with the number set from SVP". In that case, the inconsistency must be conformed.



3.19 Isolation Procedure for CACHE Failure (SIM = FFF0XX, FFF1XX, FFF2XX, FFE2XX)

Isolate a cache memory or shared memory error according to the procedure given below.



Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL03-19-20

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

*1: If there are multiple module groups, replace one by one.

If the symptom is not cleared even after replacement, de-install newly installed memory modules to return to the original configuration.

*2: T.S.D.: Technical Support Division

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL03-20-10

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

3.20 Recovery Procedure for LDEV Blockade (SIM = EF9XXX, DFAXXX, DFBXXX)

When LDEVs are blocked in the case of blocking several PDEVs (SIM RC=EF9YXX, DFAYXX, DFBYXX), perform the following recovery procedures.

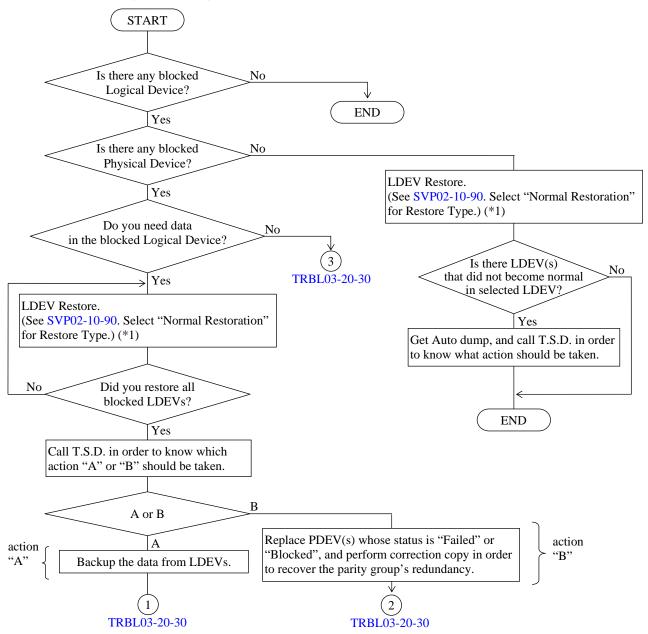
NOTICE: Be sure to call T.S.D. before you perform PDEV replace. It causes a DATA-LOSS in some cases.

NOTE: When you execute a Recovery Procedure for LDEV Blocking, you must delete the TC-MF pair.

After recovering it, if necessary, you execute establish pair.

TRBL03-20-20

SIM RC = EF9YXX, DFAYXX, DFBYXX



- *1: If there are FlashCopy (R) V2 / FlashCopy (R) SE relationships in LDEVs to be restored, please delete relationships before restore LDEVs by following procedure.
 - If a LDEV to be restored has both source and target extents of relationships with other LDEVs not to be maintained, please perform following procedure (1), (2) and (3).
 - (1) Perform forcible Withdraw by specifying SDEVN, TDEVN, and DDSW(NO) options. Please specify a LDEV to be restored as TDEVN. In addition, please don't specify extent option such as XTNTLST.
 - (2) Perform forcible Withdraw by specifying SDEVN, TDEVN, and DDSW(NO) options. Please don't specify extent option such as XTNTLST.
 - (3) Perform forcible Withdraw by specifying TDEVN, and DDSW(NO) options. Please don't specify SDEVN option and extent option such as XTNTLST.

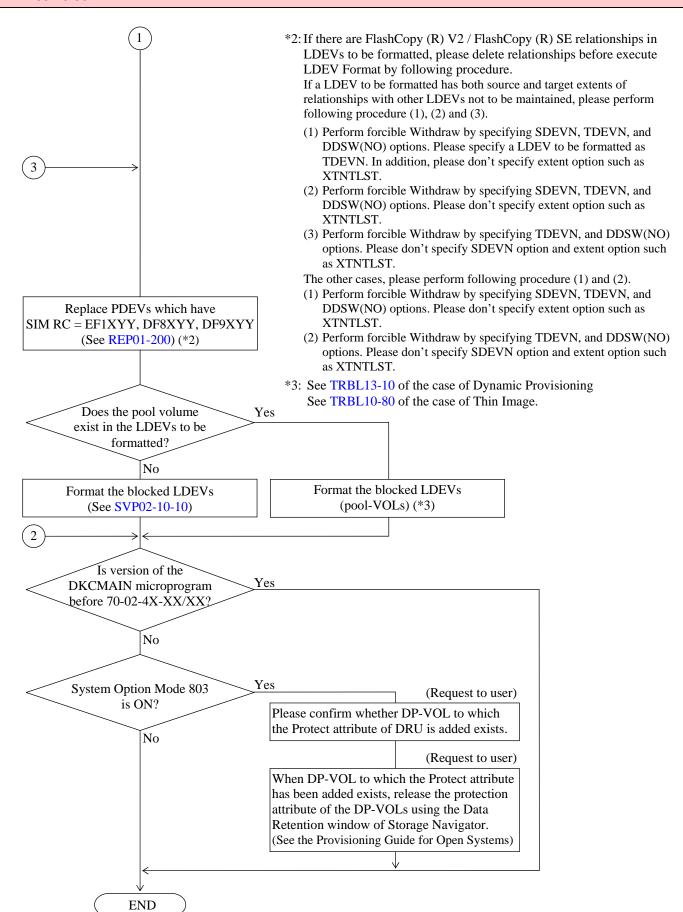
The other cases, please perform following procedure (1) and (2).

- (1) Perform forcible Withdraw by specifying SDEVN, TDEVN, and DDSW(NO) options. Please don't specify extent option such as XTNTLST.
- (2) Perform forcible Withdraw by specifying TDEVN, and DDSW(NO) options. Please don't specify SDEVN option and extent option such as XTNTLST.

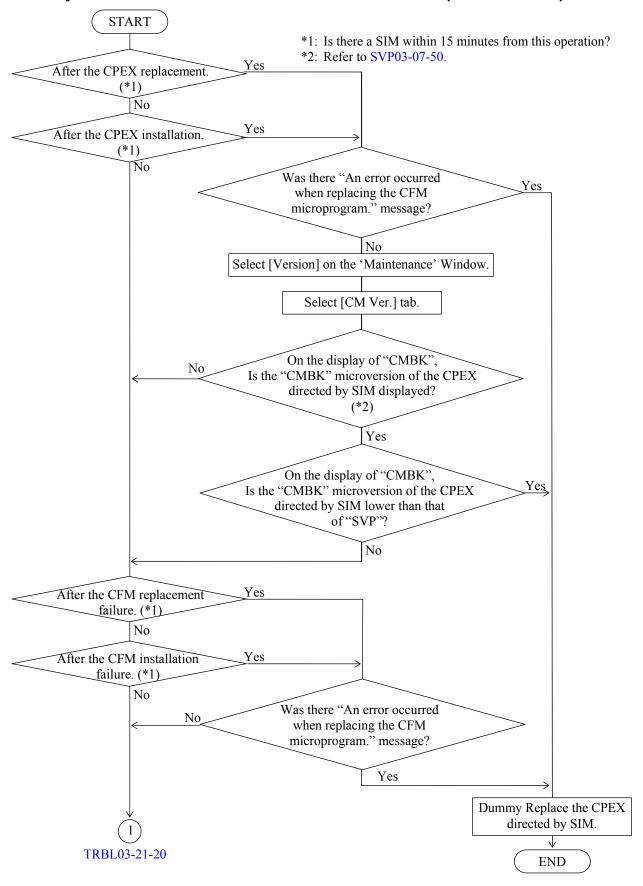
Rev.1 / Mar.2014, Jul.2014

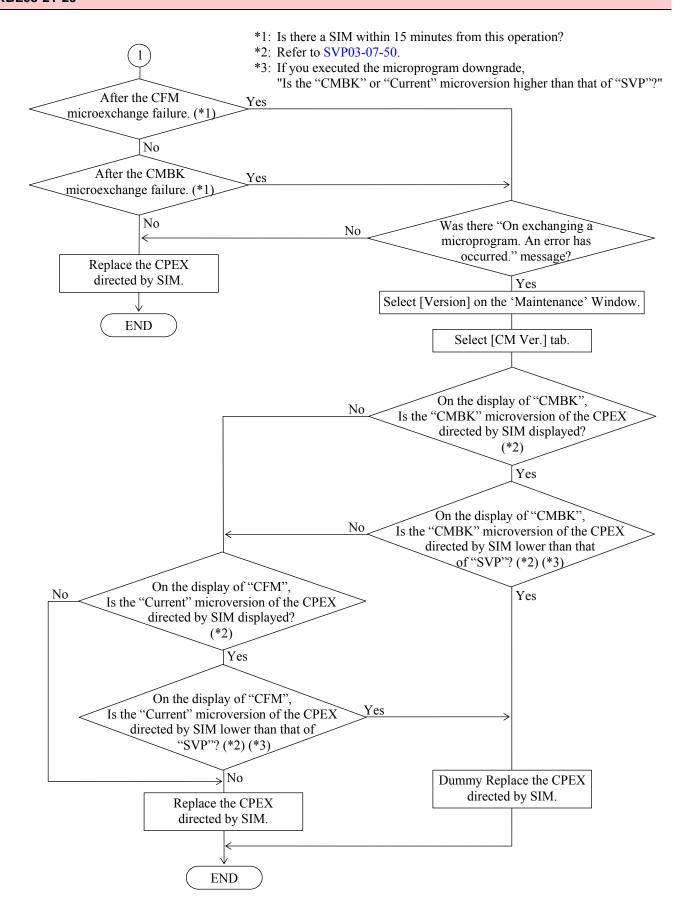
TRBL03-20-30

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

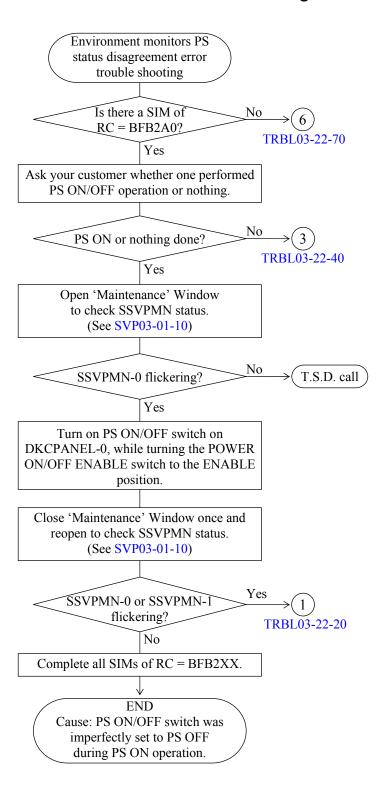


3.21 Recovery Procedure When CM Patrol Check Error Occurs (SIM = FFCC0X)





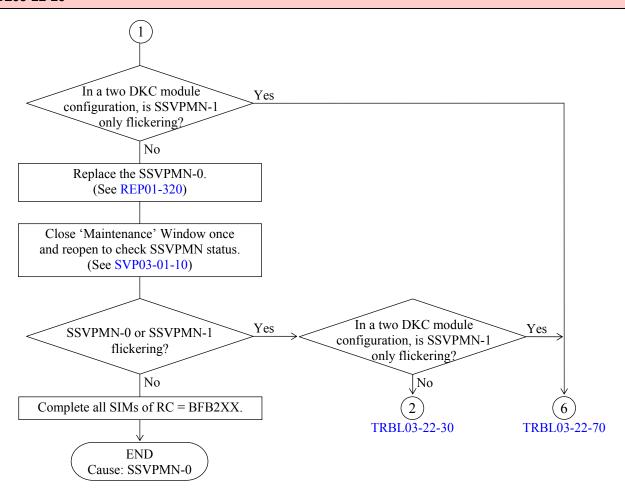
3.22 Environment Monitors PS Status Disagreement Error (SIM = BFB2XX)



Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL03-22-20

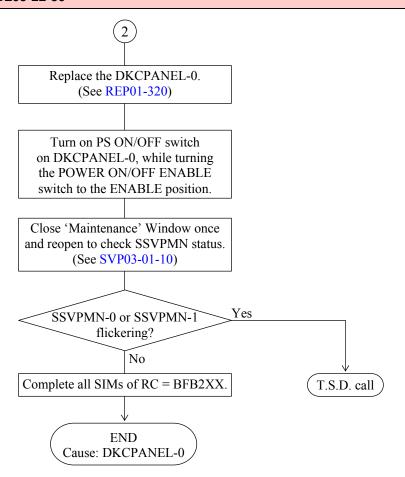
Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.



Rev.0 / Mar.2014

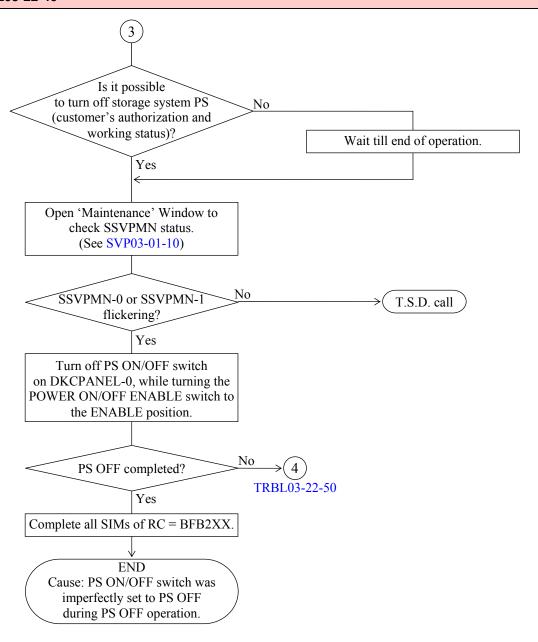
TRBL03-22-30

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.



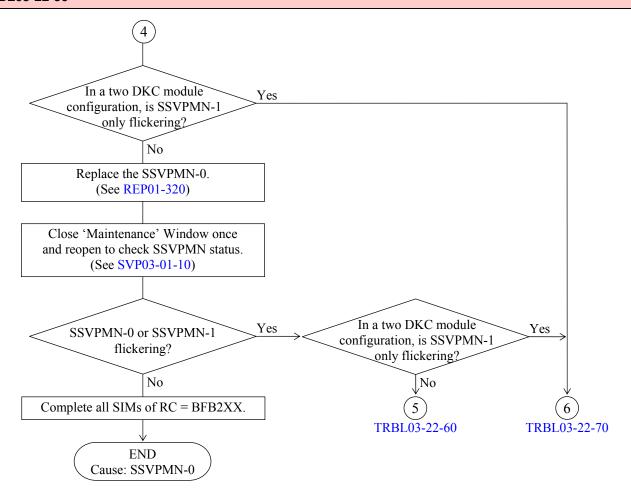
Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

TRBL03-22-40



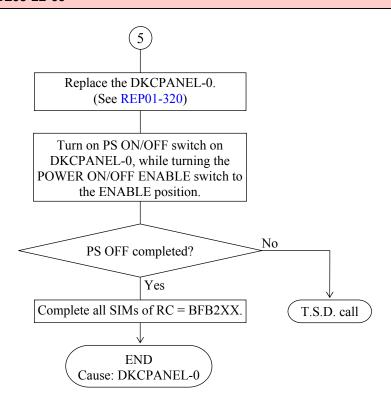
Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL03-22-50

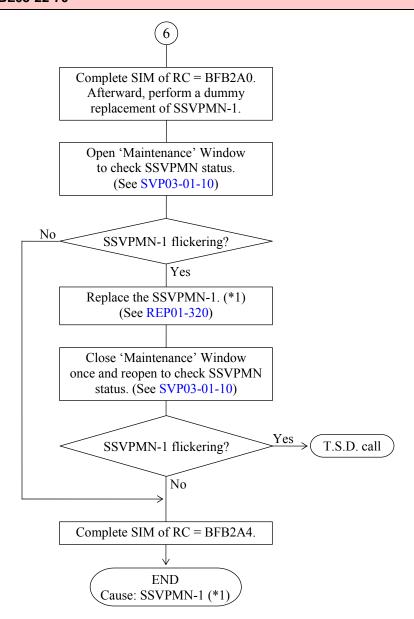


Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL03-22-60



TRBL03-22-70



*1: If a dummy replacement is instructed, perform the dummy replacement. If SSVPMN-1 is recovered by the dummy replacement, the SSVPMN-1 is not failure.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL03-23-10

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

3.23 PS Warning Error

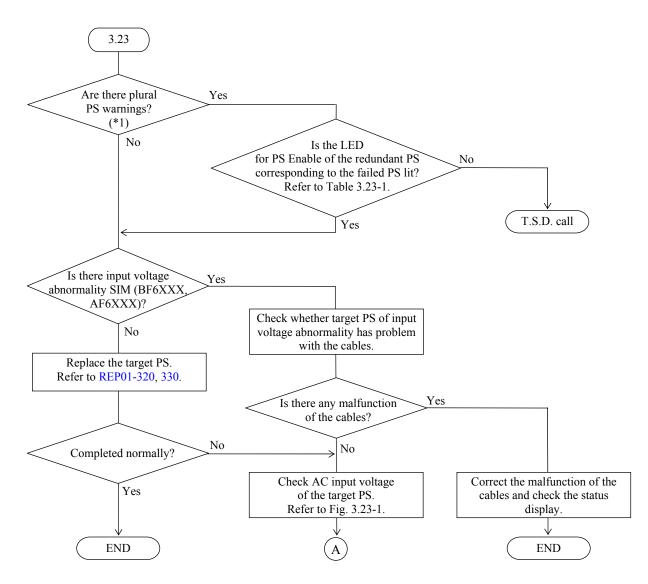
(SIM = BF40XX, BF41XX, BF42XX, BF43XX, AF5XXX, BF6XXX, AF6XXX)

Associated SIM and Description

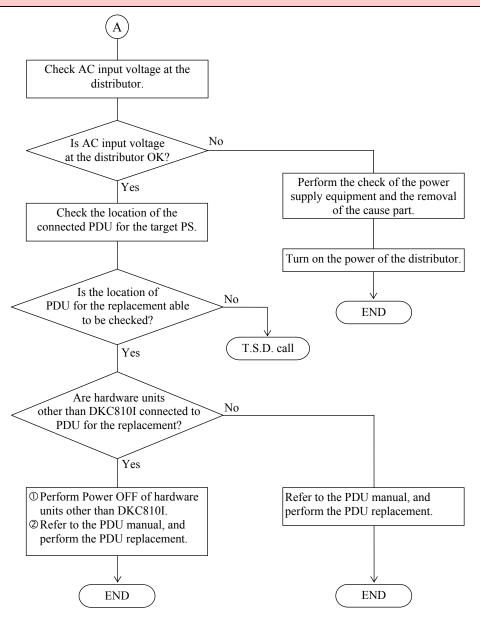
SIM RC	Warning type	Description
BF40XX BF41XX	DKCPS warning	Malfunction of DKCPS
BF42XX BF43XX		
AF5XXX	DKUPS warning	Malfunction of DKUPS
BF6XXX	DKCPS input voltage abnormality	Abnormal AC input voltage of DKCPS
AF6XXX	DKUPS input voltage abnormality	Abnormal AC input voltage of DKUPS

Check that the PDU breaker is on and that the PS cable ASSY between PDU and DKCPS/DKUPS is connected correctly before replacement of DKCPS/DKUPS.

When the PDU breaker is off, turn it to on. When the PS cable ASSY is disconnected, connect it.



TRBL03-23-20



*1: Refer to LOC03-180, 230, 260 for Location of the LED for PS Enable.

Table 3.23-1 Correspondence Table from PS Warning Location to Redundant PS Location

No.	PS Warning Location	I	Redundant PS Location
1	DKCPS-x0	\rightarrow	DKCPS-x1
2	DKCPS-x1	\rightarrow	DKCPS-x0
3	DKCPS-x2	\rightarrow	DKCPS-x3
4	DKCPS-x3	\rightarrow	DKCPS-x2
5	DKUPSxy0-1	\rightarrow	DKUPSxy0-2
6	DKUPSxy0-2	\rightarrow	DKUPSxy0-1
7	DKUPSxy1-1	\rightarrow	DKUPSxy1-2
8	DKUPSxy1-2	\rightarrow	DKUPSxy1-1
9	DKUPSxy2-1	\rightarrow	DKUPSxy2-2
10	DKUPSxy2-2	\rightarrow	DKUPSxy2-1
11	DKUPSxy3-1	\rightarrow	DKUPSxy3-2
12	DKUPSxy3-2	\rightarrow	DKUPSxy3-1
13	DKUPSxy4-1	\rightarrow	DKUPSxy4-2
14	DKUPSxy4-2	\rightarrow	DKUPSxy4-1
15	DKUPSxy5-1	\rightarrow	DKUPSxy5-2
16	DKUPSxy5-2	\rightarrow	DKUPSxy5-1
17	DKUPSxy6-1	\rightarrow	DKUPSxy6-2
18	DKUPSxy6-2	\rightarrow	DKUPSxy6-1
19	DKUPSxy7-1	\rightarrow	DKUPSxy7-2
20	DKUPSxy7-2	\rightarrow	DKUPSxy7-1

NOTE1: For example, if Location of PS warning is "DKCPS-00", Location of the corresponding redundant PS becomes "DKCPS-01". At this time, if the LED (Green) for PS Enable of "DKCPS-01" is lit, it is redundant so that the maintenance replacement of "DKCPS-00", etc. is possible. If the LED (Green) for PS Enable of "DKCPS-01" is off, it is not redundant so that the maintenance replacement of "DKCPS-00", etc. is impossible (T.S.D. call).

NOTE2: DKUPS-xy0

x: DKC No. 0, 1

y: DKU No. 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL03-23-40

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

[AC Input voltage check]

- a. Remove the cable of target PS.
- b. Measure AC input voltage at terminal of removed cables.

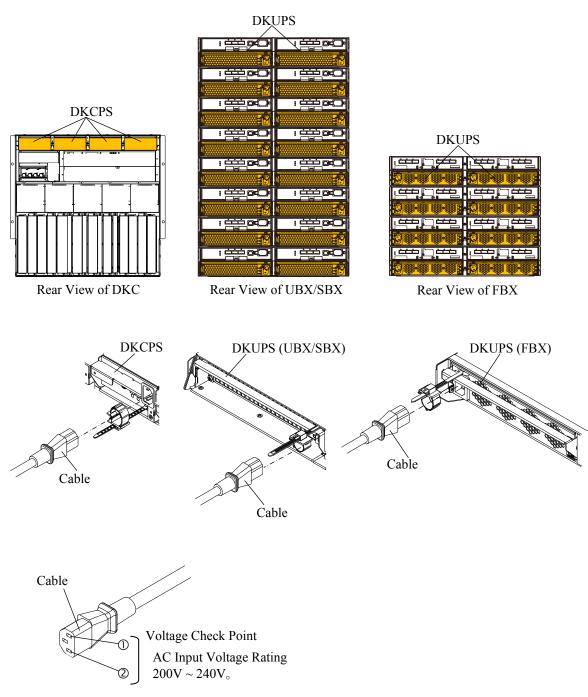
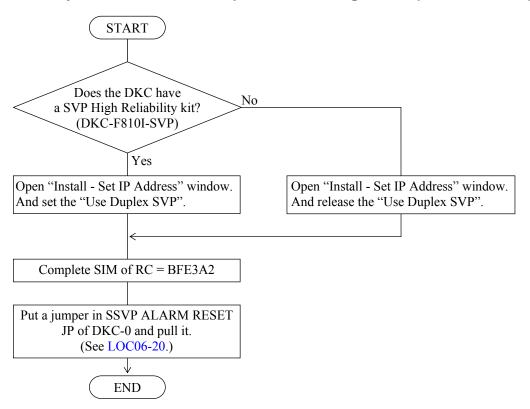


Fig. 3.23-1 AC Input Voltage Check

3.24 Recovery Procedure When Duplex SVP Setting Failed (SIM = BFE3A2)

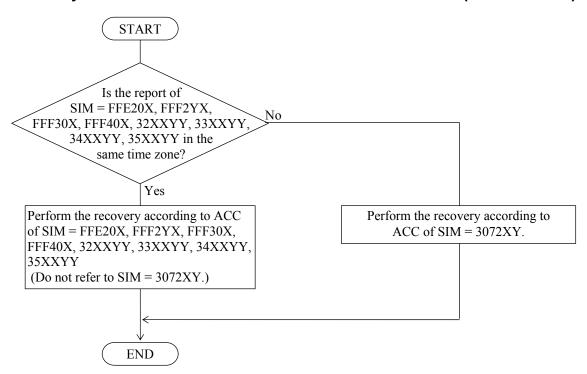


Rev.0 / Mar.2014

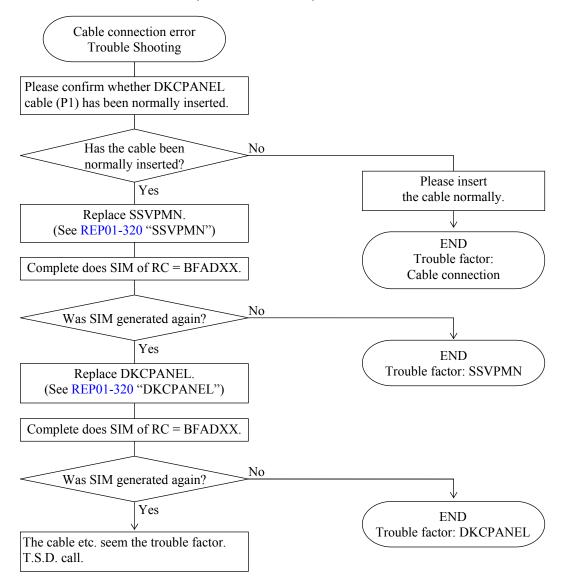
TRBL03-25-10

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

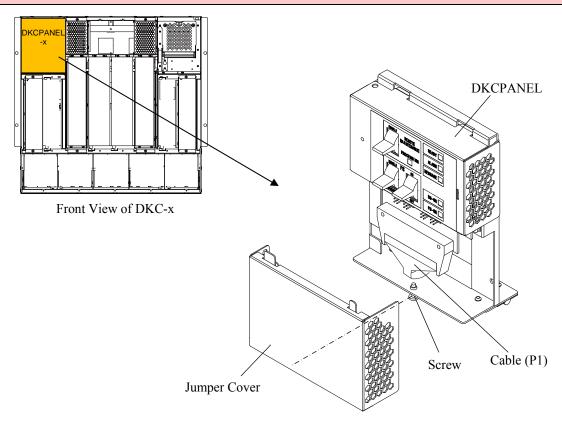
3.25 Recovery Procedure When CHK3 Threshold Over Occurred (SIM = 3072XY)



3.26 Cable Connection Error (SIM = BFADXX)



TRBL03-26-20

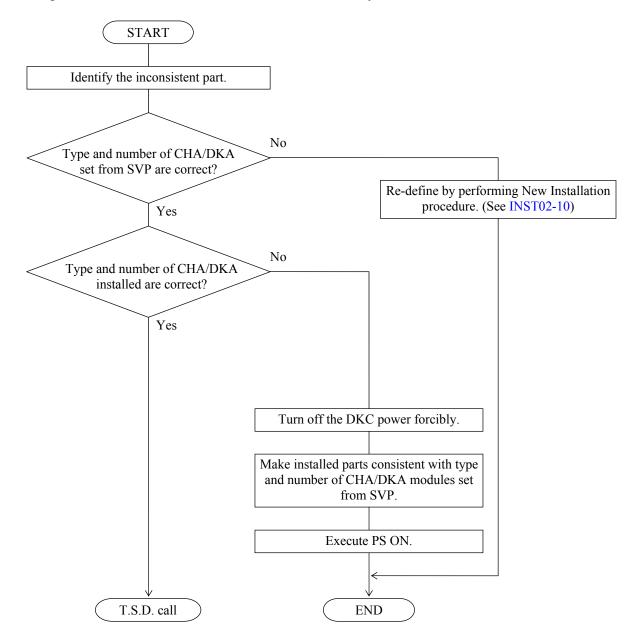


NOTE: x: DKC No. 0, 1

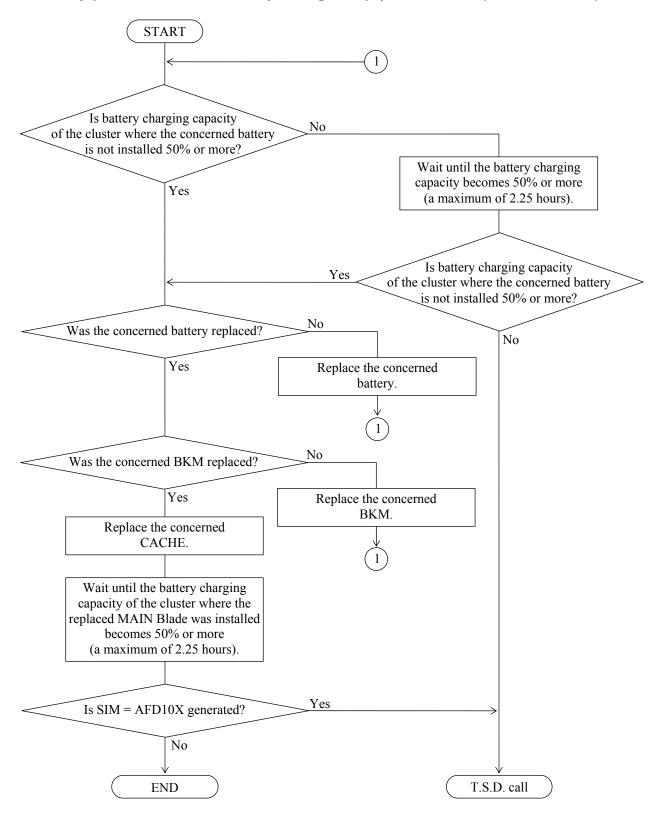
TRBL03-27-10

3.27 Recovery Procedure for CHA/DKA Type Warning (SIM = 3C9500)

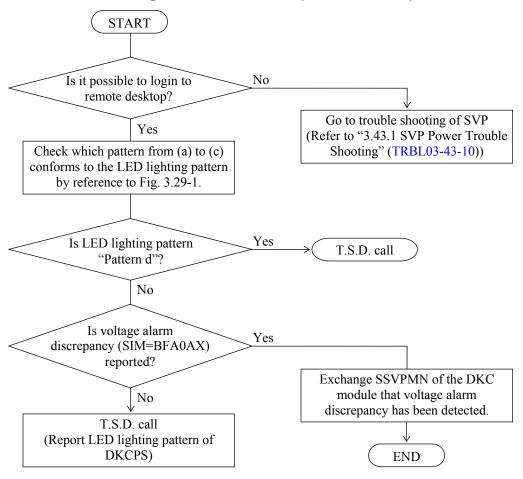
When CHA/DKA installation and definitions set from SVP are inconsistent (SIM-RC = 3C9500), follow the procedure below to recover from the inconsistency.



3.28 Recovery procedure when Battery Charge Empty is detected (SIM = AFD10X)



3.29 At the Time of Voltage Alarm Detection (SIM = BF201X)



- Collect Normal Dump.
- Record the LED lighting conditions of the DKCPS of DKC module. (See Fig. 3.29-1 and Fig. 3.29-2)
- Check whether abnormalities in appearance and unusual odor parts exist.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL03-29-20

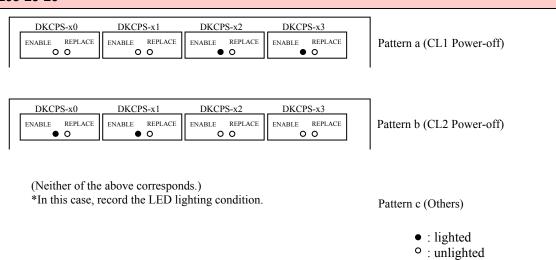


Fig. 3.29-1 DKCPS LED Lighting Patterns in the Second Side 12V Power Supply Off (Rear Side of DKC Module)

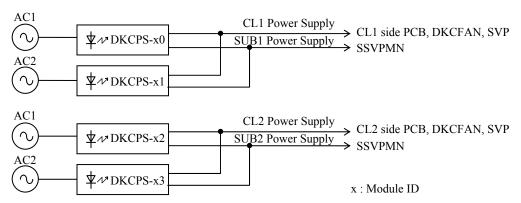
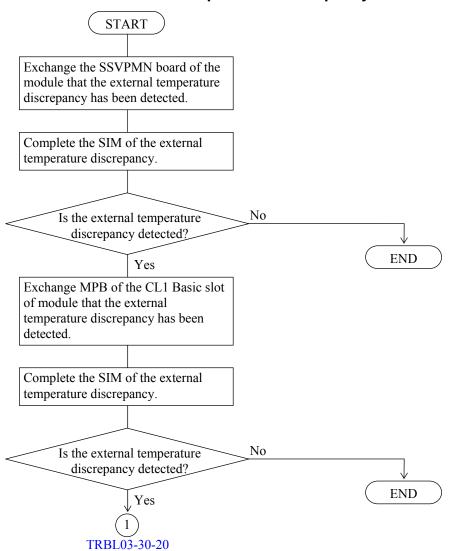


Fig. 3.29-2 Diagram of The Secondary Side Power Supply

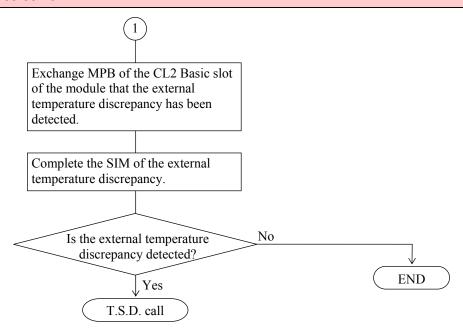
3.30 At the Time of External Temperature Discrepancy Detection (SIM = BFA2XX)



Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL03-30-20

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.



- Collect Normal Dump.
- Check whether the MPB of Basic slot has been properly loaded.
- Check whether the dummy cover of PK has been properly loaded.
- Check whether there is any obstruction of intake air/exhaust air pipe line exists on the front side (intake air side) or the rear side (exhaust air side) of the DKC module.
- Check whether the external temperature environment is abnormal, or was abnormal.

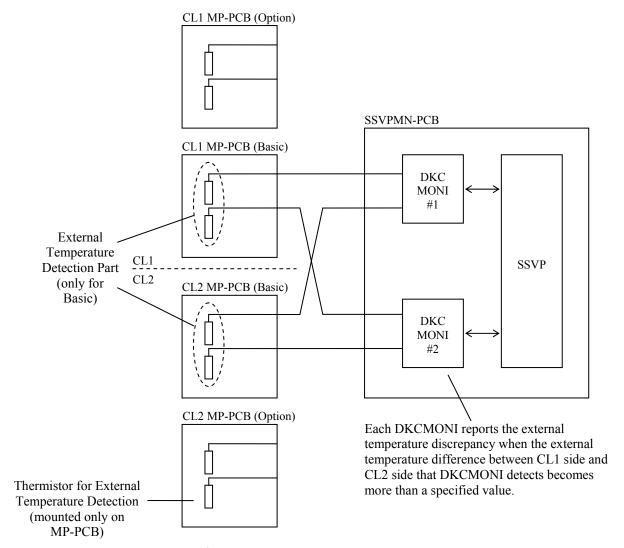
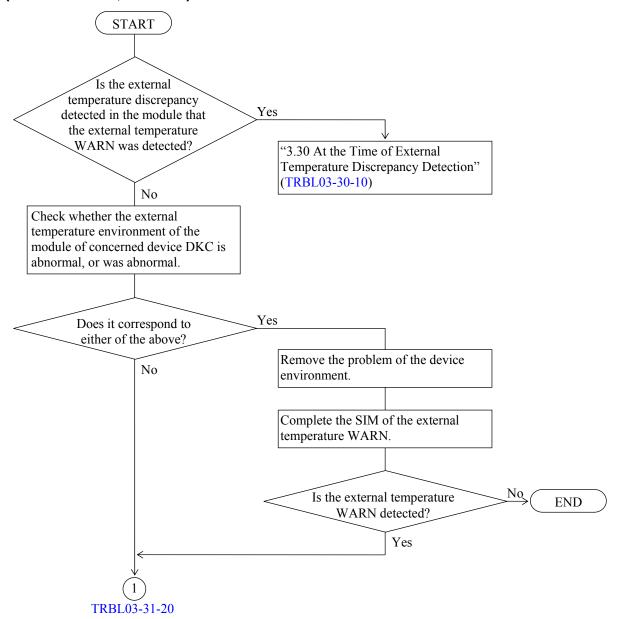
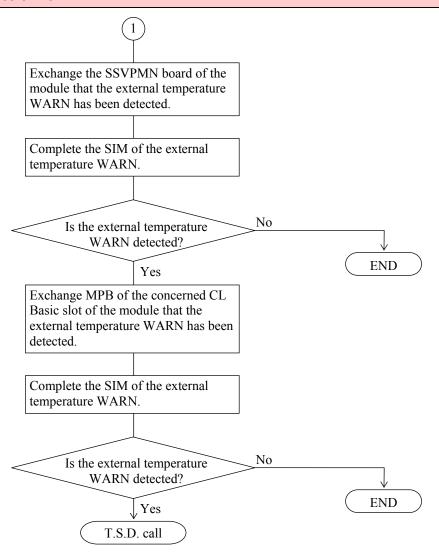


Fig. 3.30-1 Diagram of External Temperature Detection

3.31 At the Time of External Temperature WARN (+ or -) Detection (SIM = BF11XX, BF12XX)



TRBL03-31-20



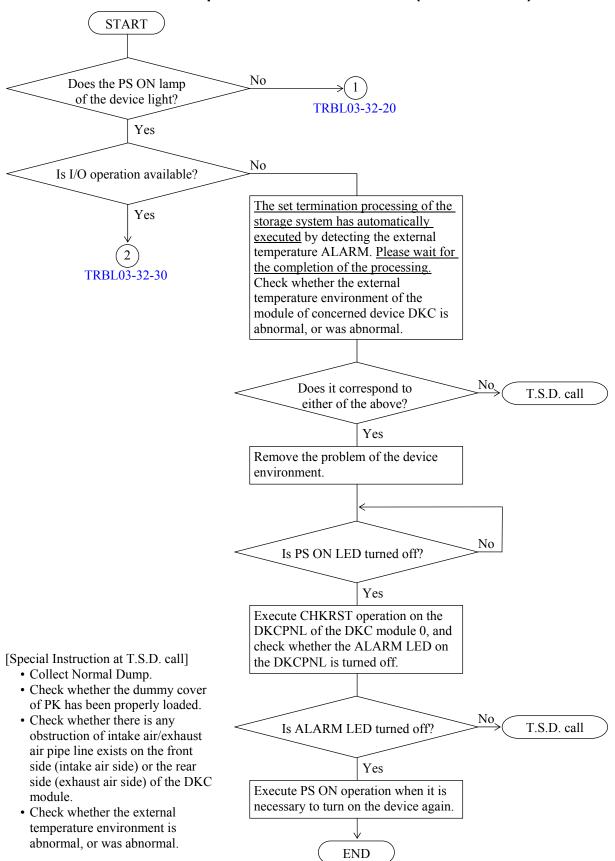
- Collect Normal Dump.
- Check whether the dummy cover of PK has been properly loaded.
- Check whether there is any obstruction of intake air/exhaust air pipe line exists on the front side (intake air side) or the rear side (exhaust air side) of the DKC module.
- Check whether the external temperature environment is abnormal, or was abnormal.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

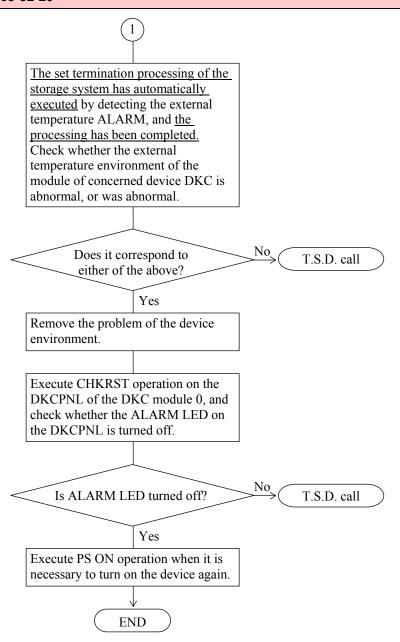
TRBL03-32-10

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

3.32 At the Time of External Temperature ALARM Detection (SIM = BF10XX)

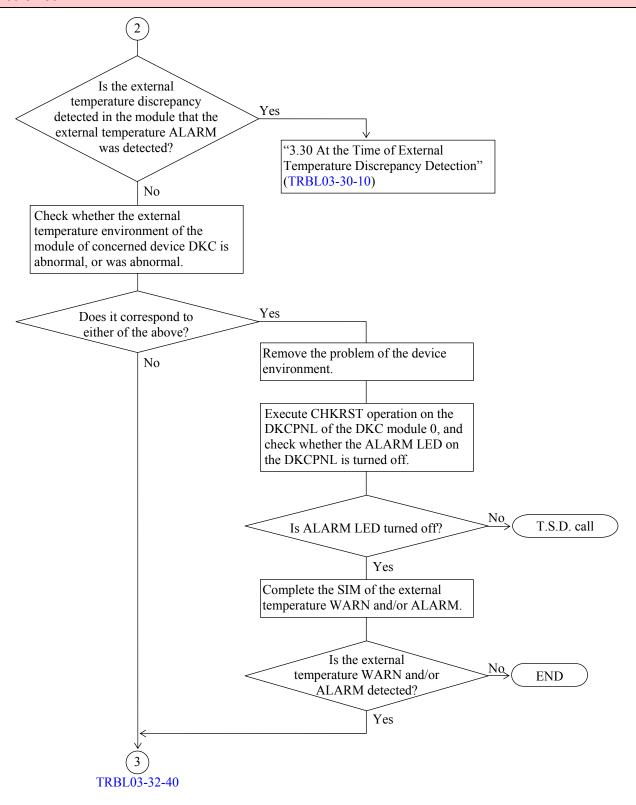


TRBL03-32-20



- Collect Normal Dump.
- Check whether the dummy cover of PK has been properly loaded.
- Check whether there is any obstruction of intake air/exhaust air pipe line exists on the front side (intake air side) or the rear side (exhaust air side) of the DKC module.
- Check whether the external temperature environment is abnormal, or was abnormal.

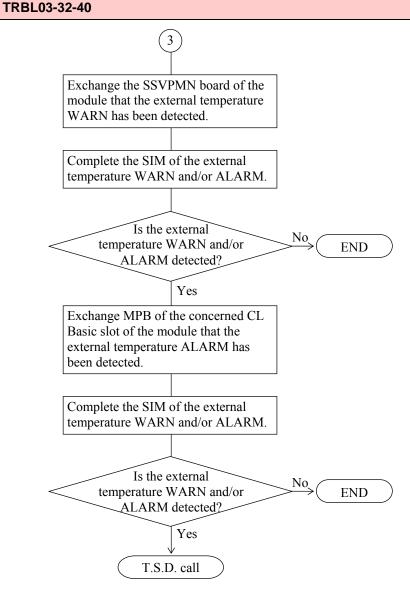
TRBL03-32-30



- Collect Normal Dump.
- Check whether the dummy cover of PK has been properly loaded.
- Check whether there is any obstruction of intake air/exhaust air pipe line exists on the front side (intake air side) or the rear side (exhaust air side) of the DKC module.
- Check whether the external temperature environment is abnormal, or was abnormal.

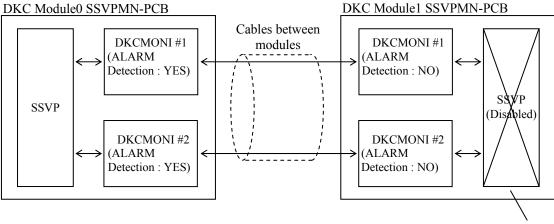
Rev.0 / Mar.2014

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.



- Collect Normal Dump.
- Check whether the dummy cover of PK has been properly loaded.
- Check whether there is any obstruction of intake air/exhaust air pipe line exists on the front side (intake air side) or the rear side (exhaust air side) of the DKC module.
- Check whether the external temperature environment is abnormal, or was abnormal.

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.



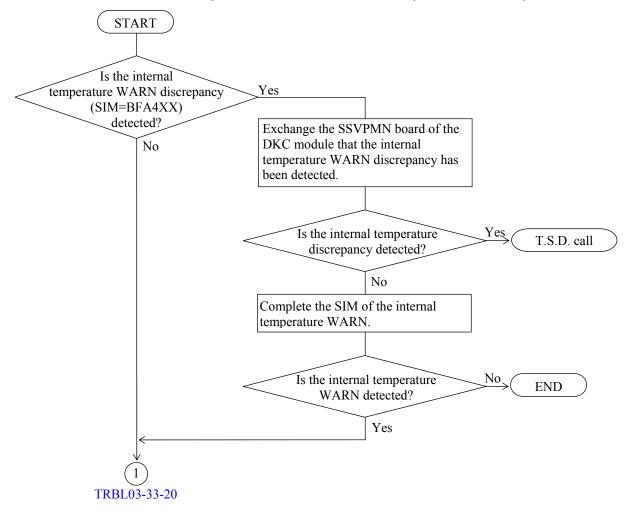
The SSVP on the module1 side is always nullified

[NOTE]

- Procedures for a planed stop due to detection of the external temperature ALARM should be performed when both the DKCMONIs in a DKC module (two DKCMONIs for one module configuration or two DKCMONIs in either of the modules for two modules configuration) detect the external temperature alarm. (Perform a planed stop under the above mentioned condition.)
- The SIM is generated individually per DKCMONI. (two DKCMONIs for one module configuration or four DKCMONIs for two modules configuration)
- ALARM LED lights when the external temperature ALARM is detected by either of the DKCMONI in the storage system.
- When detecting the external temperature ALARM, the ALARM state is kept even if the temperature drops, and the PS ON operation is not accepted.

Fig. 3.32-1 Performance Pattern Diagram of External Temperature ALARM Detection in DKC2 Module Configuration

3.33 At the Time of Internal Temperature WARN Detection (SIM = BF15XX)

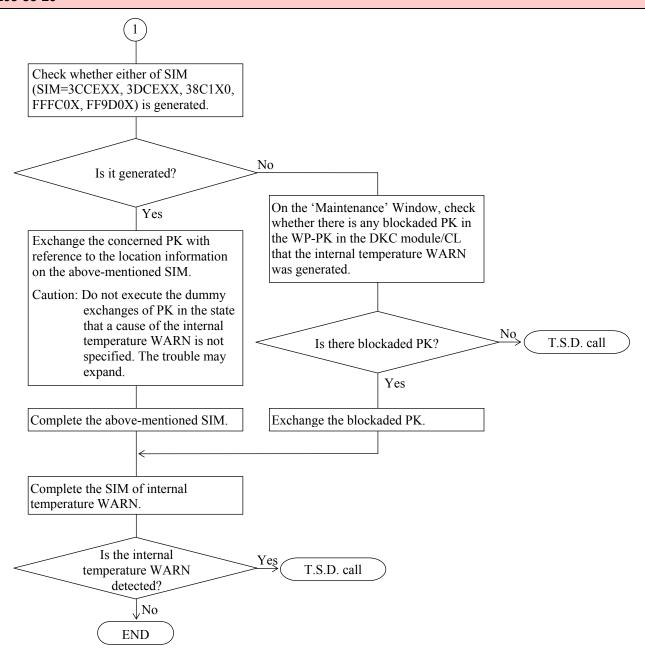


- Collect Normal Dump.
- Check whether the dummy cover of PK has been properly loaded.
- Check whether there is any obstruction of intake air/exhaust air pipe line exists on the front side (intake air side) or the rear side (exhaust air side) of the DKC module.
- Check whether the external temperature environment is abnormal, or was abnormal.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL03-33-20

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.



- Collect Normal Dump.
- Check whether the dummy cover of PK has been properly loaded.
- Check whether there is any obstruction of intake air/exhaust air pipe line exists on the front side (intake air side) or the rear side (exhaust air side) of the DKC module.
- Check whether the external temperature environment is abnormal, or was abnormal.
- Check whether abnormalities in appearance and unusual odor parts exist.

TRBL03-33-30

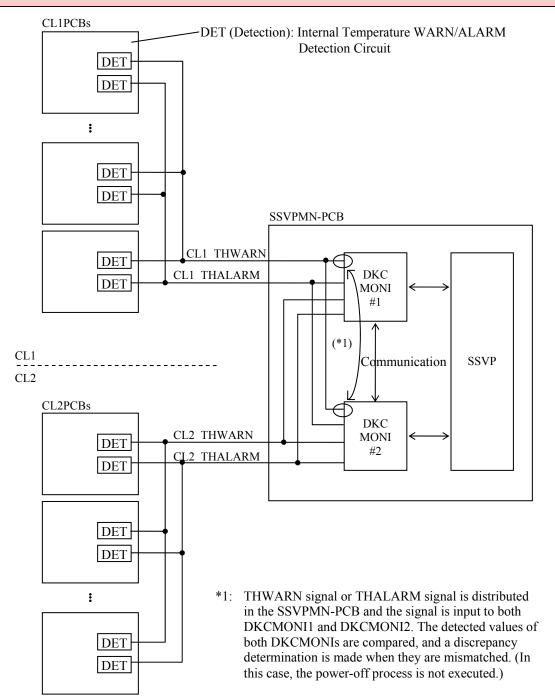
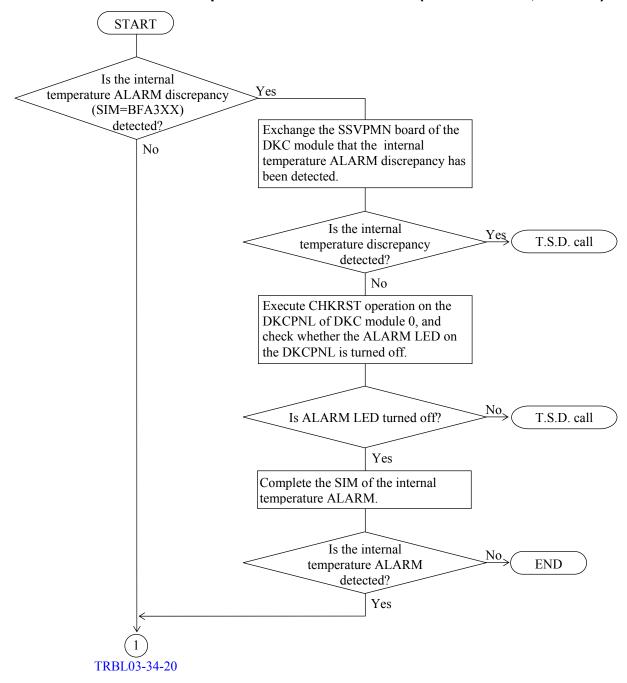


Fig. 3.33-1 Diagram of Internal Temperature WARN/ALARM Detection

3.34 At the Time of Internal Temperature ALARM Detection (SIM = BF13XX, BF14XX)



- Collect Normal Dump.
- Check whether the dummy cover of PK has been properly loaded.
- Check whether there is any obstruction of intake air/exhaust air pipe line exists on the front side (intake air side) or the rear side (exhaust air side) of the DKC module.
- Check whether the external temperature environment is abnormal, or was abnormal.
- Check whether abnormalities in appearance and unusual odor parts exist.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL03-34-20



Check which pattern from (a) to (c) conforms to the LED lighting pattern by reference to Fig. 3.34-1.

T.S.D. call

(Report LED lighting pattern of DKCPS.)

Caution: Do not execute the dummy exchanges of PK or CHKRST operation (ALARM latch release operation) in the state that a cause of the internal temperature ALARM is not specified. The trouble may expand.

[Special Instruction at T.S.D. call]

- Collect Normal Dump.
- Check whether the dummy cover of PK has been properly loaded.
- Check whether there is any obstruction of intake air/exhaust air pipe line exists on the front side (intake air side) or the rear side (exhaust air side) of the DKC module.
- Check whether the external temperature environment is abnormal, or was abnormal.
- Check whether abnormalities in appearance and unusual odor parts exist.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL03-34-30

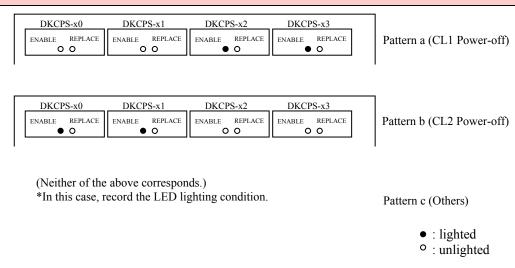


Fig. 3.34-1 DKCPS LED Lighting Patterns in the Second Side 12V Power Supply Off (Rear Side of DKC Module)

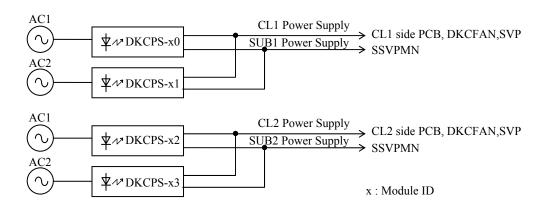
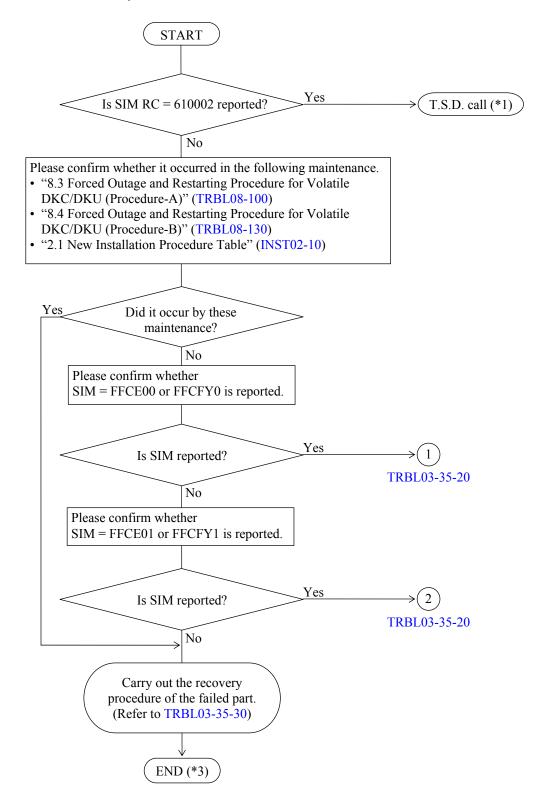


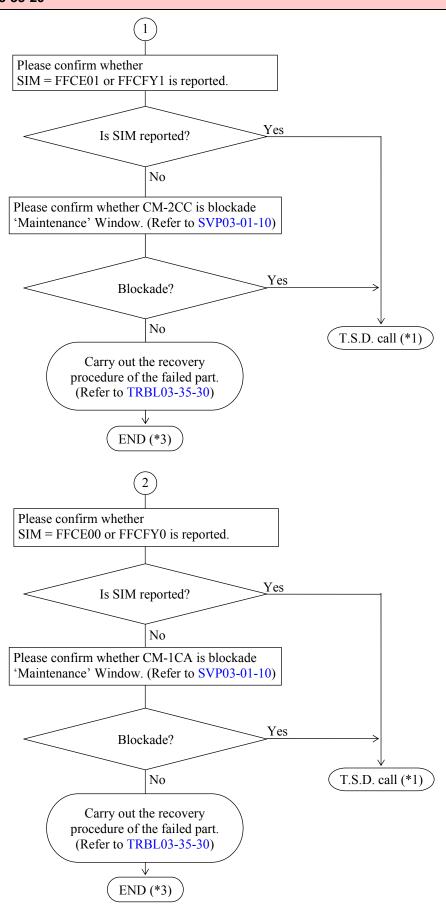
Fig. 3.34-2 Diagram of The Secondary Side Power Supply

3.35 Isolation Procedure for Failed Part in CACHE Volatilization (SIM = FFCE0X, FFCFYX, 610002)

At the time of the cash volatilization, you carry out the recovery of the involved site according to the ACC of SIM-RC or the detailed information that it is displayed the following procedure by SSB window to classify involved sites after enforcement.

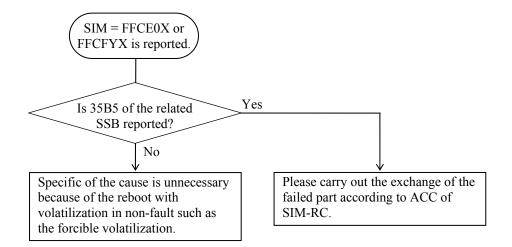


TRBL03-35-20



Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL03-35-30



(*1) The SM information is not restored. DKC is in following condition.

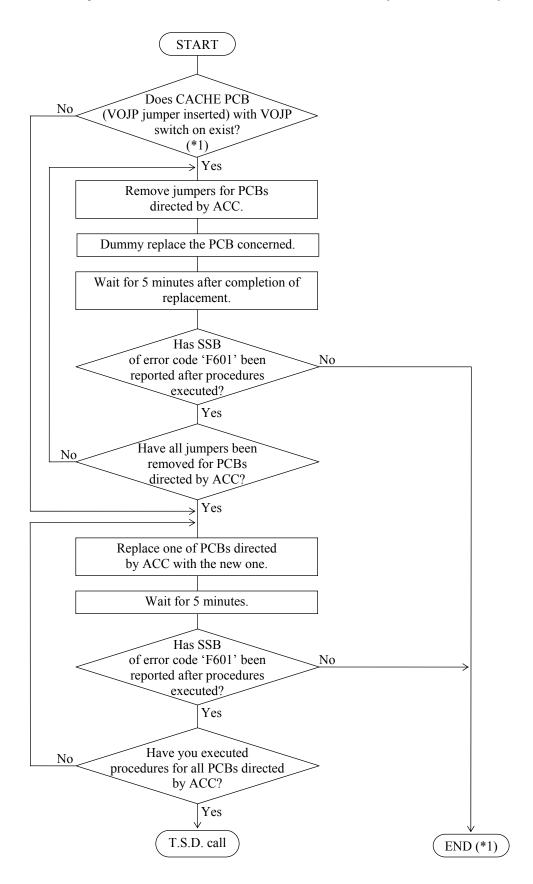
Name of the P.P.	Phenomenon	
TC	Differential bitmap is deleted. All copies in next resynchronization or being executed will be copied.	
GAD	Differential bitmap is deleted. All copies in next resynchronization or being executed will be copied.	
UR	Differential bitmap is deleted. All copies in next resynchronization or being executed will be copied.	
SI	Refer to (*2)	
Snapshot/Thin Image	All Snapshot/Thin Image pairs are deleted.	
	All POOL is blocked.	
VM	Percentage that VM paris are synchronized goes down to 0% (differential bitmap is cleared) and copy processing time takes long.	
FCv2	All established FC pairs are deleted.	
Quick Format	Data will be lost from LDEV that carrying out Quick Format.	
Dynamic Provisioning/ Dynamic Tiering	The data stored in HDP-VOL is lost.	

(*2) PS OFF phenomenon varies according to a ShadowImage pair state before carrying out PS OFF.

Name of the P.P.	Pair Status (Open Pair Status/MF Pair Status)	Phenomenon
SI	COPY (PD)/Pending	Percentage that P-VOL and S-VOL are synchronized goes down to 0% and copy processing time takes long.
	PAIR/Duplex	Percentage that P-VOL and S-VOL are synchronized goes down to 0%.
	COPY (SP)/SP-Pend	Pair Status turns into PSUE/Suspend.
	PSUS (SP)/V-Split	Pair Status turns into PSUE/Suspend.
	PSUS/Split	Percentage that P-VOL and S-VOL are synchronized goes down to 0% and copy processing time will takes long in next resynchronization.
	COPY (RS)/Resync	Percentage that P-VOL and S-VOL are synchronized goes down to 0% and copy processing time takes long.
	COPY (RS-R)/Resync-R	Percentage that P-VOL and S-VOL are synchronized goes down to 0% and copy processing time takes long.
	PSUE/Suspend	None

(*3) After finishing the error recovery, do SIM complete.

3.36 Recovery Procedure for Forcible Volatile Mode (SIM = FFFEXX)



Rev.0 / Mar.2014

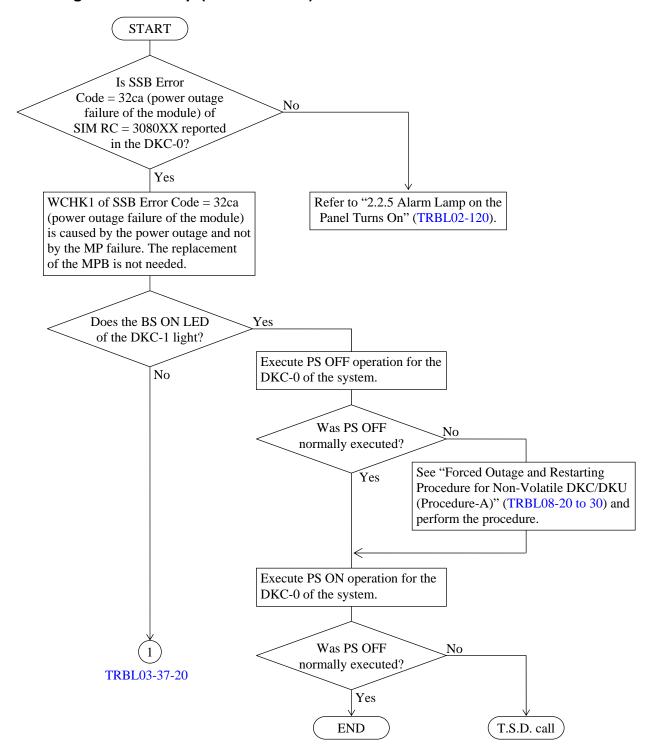
TRBL03-36-20

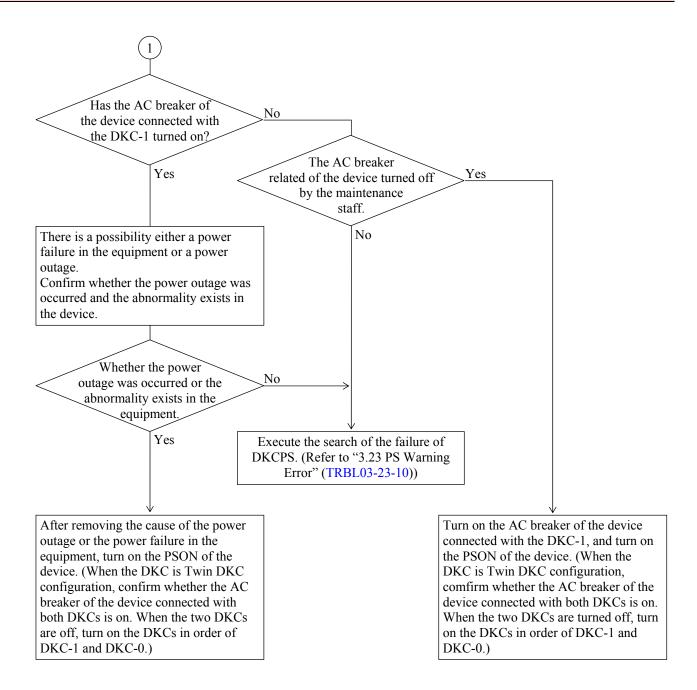
Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

*1: After finishing the error recovery, execute SIM complete and delete logs. (Refer to SVP02-08-10)

*2: For the location of VOJP switch (VOJP jumpers), refer to LOC06-170.

3.37 Receiving WCHK1 Dump (SIM = 3080XX)





Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL03-38-10

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

3.38 Isolation and Recovery Procedure for Drive Link Rate Error (SIM = DFCXXX, DFDXXX)

This section describes the method to judge whether a link rate error of a specific drive (PDEV) is caused by a drive failure or an SSW failure and the recovery method when a link rate error SIM is reported.

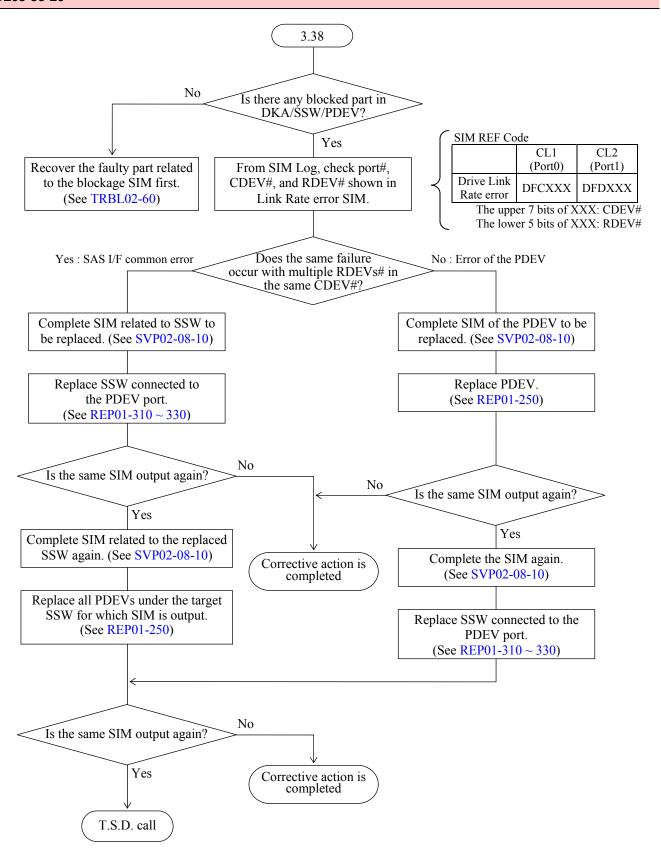
With this SIM, when setting Link Rate for each drive port of each PDEV fails, a drive port link rate error of Path 0 (REF code = DFCXXX) or a drive port link rate error of Path 1 (REF code = DFDXXX) is reported (The upper 7 bits of XXX: CDEV#, The lower 5 bits of XXX: RDEV#).

Possible causes of this failure include:

- (1) Failure of the drive
- (2) Failure of SSW (EXP)

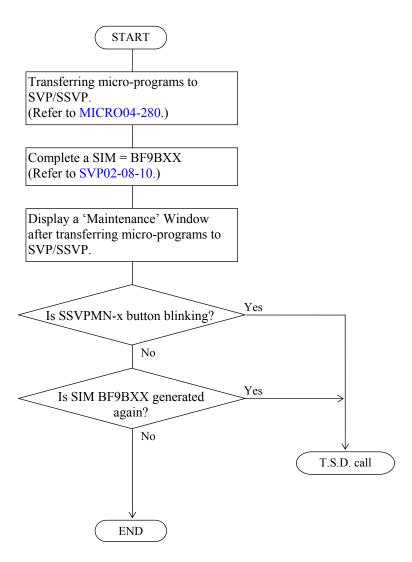
Therefore before replacing the faulty drive with a service part, isolate the failure and recover it by performing the appropriate recovery procedure.

TRBL03-38-20



3.39 Recovery Procedure for Mismatch of SSVPMN Micro Program Version (SIM = BF9BXX)

When "Mismatch of SSVPMN micro program version" are occurred, make a recovery according to the following procedure.



3.40 Recovery Procedure for DCR Pre-Staging ABNORMAL END (SIM RC = 4821-X0)

The recovery method for DCR Pre-Staging ABNORMAL END (SIM RC = 4821-X0) factor is shown below. (*1)

Factor X0	Meaning	The recovery method
"10"	No DCR P.P.	Pre-staging re-execution from the DCR change window after DCR P.P. Install. (*2)
"20"	Storage system Busy	Pre-staging re-execution from the DCR change window. (*2)
"40"	Staging Time Over	Pre-staging re-execution from the DCR change window. (*2)
"50"	Cache or SM Blockade	The cache or SM blockade occurs. Please recover the cache or SM referring to the maintenance manual. (TROUBLE SHOOTING SECTION)
"60"	LDEV Warning	LDEV is Failure State. Pre-staging re-execution from the DCR change window after LDEV recovery. (*2)
"70"	Staging Failure	HDD is Failure State. Pre-staging re-execution from the DCR change window after HDD recovery. (*2)
"80"	PS OFF	Pre-staging re-execution after PS ON. (*2)
"90"	Pre-Staging Canceled	Pre-staging re-execution from the DCR change window. (*2)
"A0"	Cache Over Load	Pre-Staging Re-perform from the DCR change window at the time of low loading. (*2)

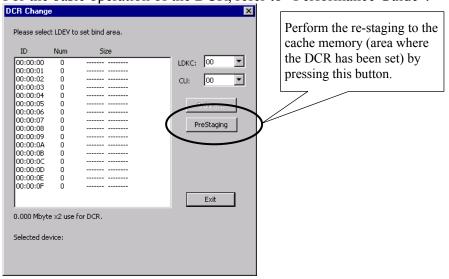
^{*1:} When the message mentioned above has not been reported though DCR Pre-Staging was terminated abnormally, please press [PreStaging] button on the DCR change window.

A recovery procedure against each factor of the abnormal end (SIM RC = 4821-EX) of the DCR Pre-Staging that is automatically started at the time of the storage system powering on or maintenance of the cache is shown below.

Factor EX	Meaning	The recovery method
"E1"	No DCR P.P.	Pre-staging re-execution from the DCR change window after DCR P.P. Install. (*2)
"E2"	Storage system Busy	Pre-staging re-execution from the DCR change window. (*2)
"E4"	Staging Time Over	Pre-staging re-execution from the DCR change window. (*2)
"E5"	Cache or SM Blockade	The cache or SM blockade occurs. Please recover the cache or SM referring to the maintenance manual. (TROUBLE SHOOTING SECTION) Please advance maintenance at cache or SM blockade occurs by maintenance. Moreover, when the maintenance of LDEV (making, deletion, and recovery) is executed, this SIM is reported. In this case, please Pre-staging re-execution from the DCR change window after completing the maintenance of LDEV (making, deletion, and recovery). (*2)
"E6"	LDEV Warning	LDEV is Failure State. Pre-staging re-execution from the DCR change window after LDEV recovery. (*2)
"E7"	Staging Failure	HDD is Failure State. Pre-staging re-execution from the DCR change window after HDD recovery. (*2)
"E8"	PS OFF	Automatic Pre-staging re-execution after PS ON.
"E9"	PreStaging Cancel	Pre-Staging Re-perform from the DCR change window. (*2)
"EA"	Cache Over Load	Pre-Staging Re-perform from the DCR change window at the time of low loading. (*2)

*2: [PreStaging] button

For the basic operation of the DCR, refer to "Performance Guide".



Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL03-41-10

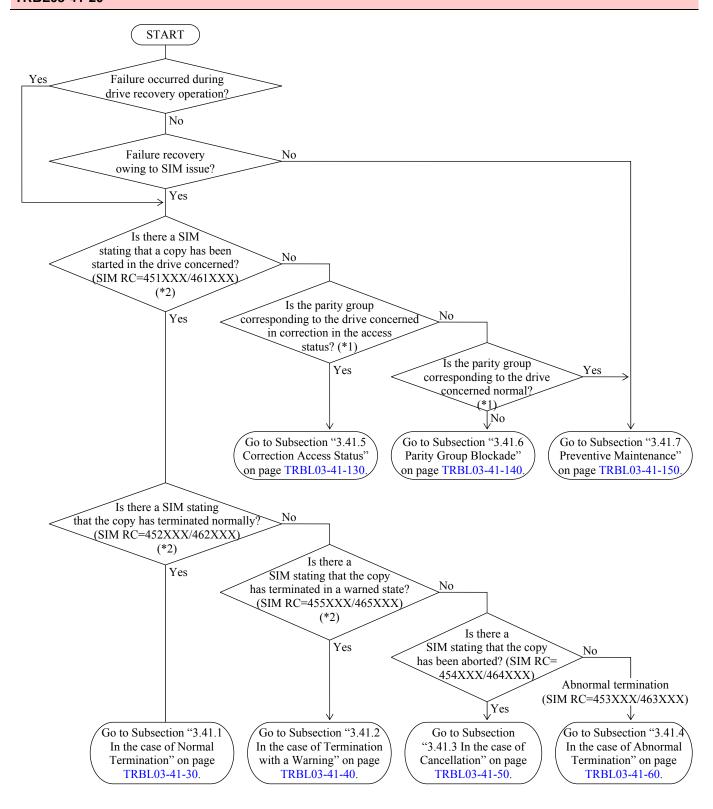
3.41 Recovery Procedure for Drive Failure

Explanation:

Types of the drive copy are shown below. Confirm the copy type and execute the drive recovery procedure.

Copy type	Description	Operation occasion
Correction copy	 This is an operation to restore and copy the data of the blocked drive using the data of another drive and parity data when the data drive is blocked. A correction copy to the spare drive is referred to as another drive correction copy. A correction copy to the replacement drive which has been installed instead of the blocked drive is referred to as a self-drive correction copy. 	 Automatic operation owing to a failure Operation instructed by the maintenance personnel
Drive copy	This is an operation to copy data to the spare drive from the data drive. A copy automatically performed owing to a warning level failure is referred to as dynamic sparing.	 Automatic operation owing to a failure Operation instructed by the maintenance personnel
Copy back	This is a copy for returning data which has been copied to the spare drive by another drive correction copy or drive copy to the original data drive.	Operation instructed by the maintenance personnel

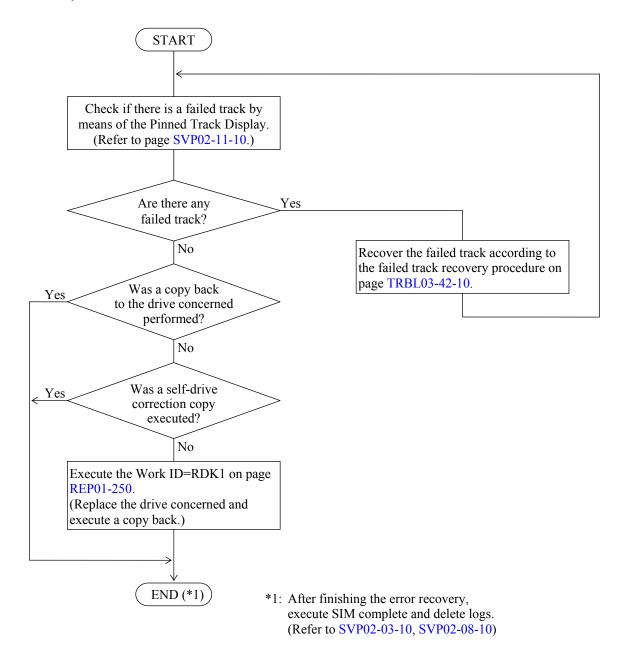
TRBL03-41-20



- *1: Confirm the status of the parity group corresponding to the drive concerned by means of the SVP status. For the procedure for referring to the SVP status, refer to Section "3.6 Logical device window" on page SVP03-06-10.
- *2: The term "copy" means drive copy, copy back, or correction copy.

3.41.1 In the case of Normal Termination (SIM = 452XXX, 462XXX)

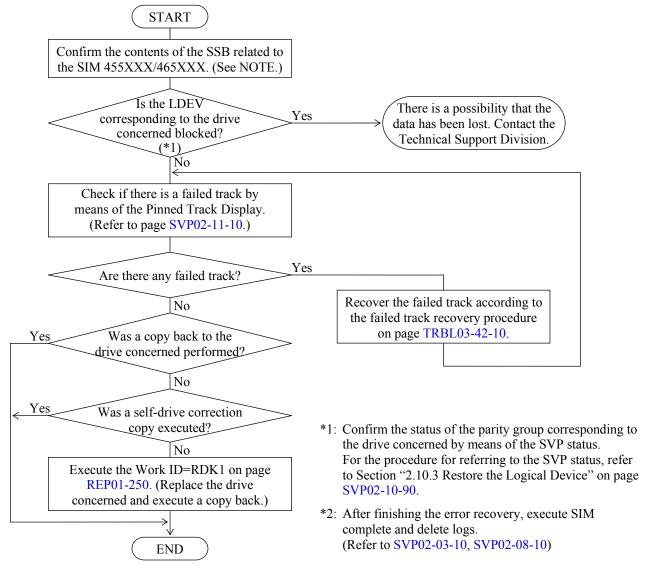
The procedure below is that used after a drive copy, copy back, or correction copy terminates normally.



3.41.2 In the case of Termination with a Warning (SIM = 455XXX, 465XXX)

The procedure explained below is that used when the drive copy, copy back, or correction copy terminates but one of the following is detected:

- (1) A failed track was detected, but the copy was continued.
- (2) One or more blocked LDEVs were detected in the same parity group. Copy of data of the blocked LDEVs was skipped.



NOTE: Meaning of bytes 40 to 7E of SSB F/M = 9F EC = 9355 related to SIM RC = 455XXX/465XXX

Byte (Hex.)	Item	Meaning
40	Number of failed tracks	Number of failed tracks
41	Number of blocked LDEVs	Number of blocked LDEVs
42	Blocked LDEV #0	Blocked LDEV No.
:	:	(Up to 30 LDEVs can be inputted from the top.)
7D	Blocked LDEV #29	However, 0Xff is inputted in the unused part.
7E	E.O.D	Means the end of data

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL03-41-50

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

3.41.3 In the case of Cancellation (SIM = 454XXX, 464XXX)

The procedure below is that used when a drive copy, copy back, or correction copy is aborted owing to the SVP operation by the service personnel. Since the status of the drive concerned is that before starting copy, execute the recovery operation for the same drive once again.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

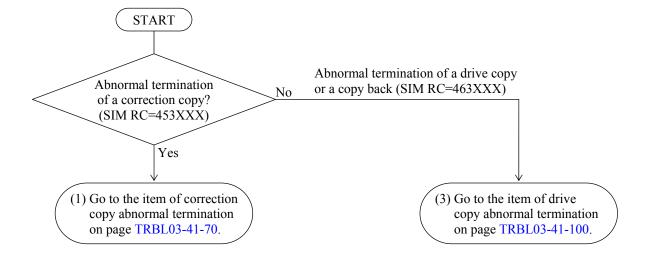
TRBL03-41-60

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

3.41.4 In the case of Abnormal Termination (SIM = 453XXX, 463XXX)

The procedure below is that used when a drive copy, copy back, or correction copy terminates abnormally.

Since the recovery procedure may differ depending on the copy type, confirm the description on page TRBL03-41-10 and execute the following procedure.

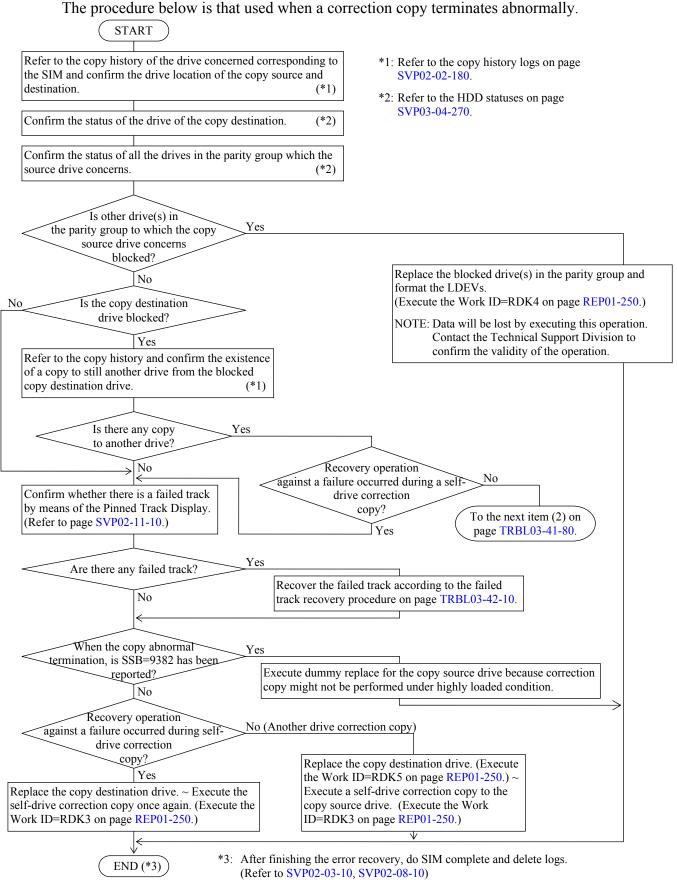


Hitachi Proprietary

DKC810I

TRBL03-41-70

(1) In the case of correction copy abnormal termination



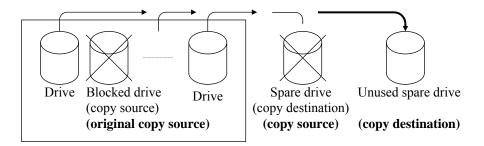
Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL03-41-80

(2) In the case of correction copy abnormal termination (in which an unused spare drive is available)

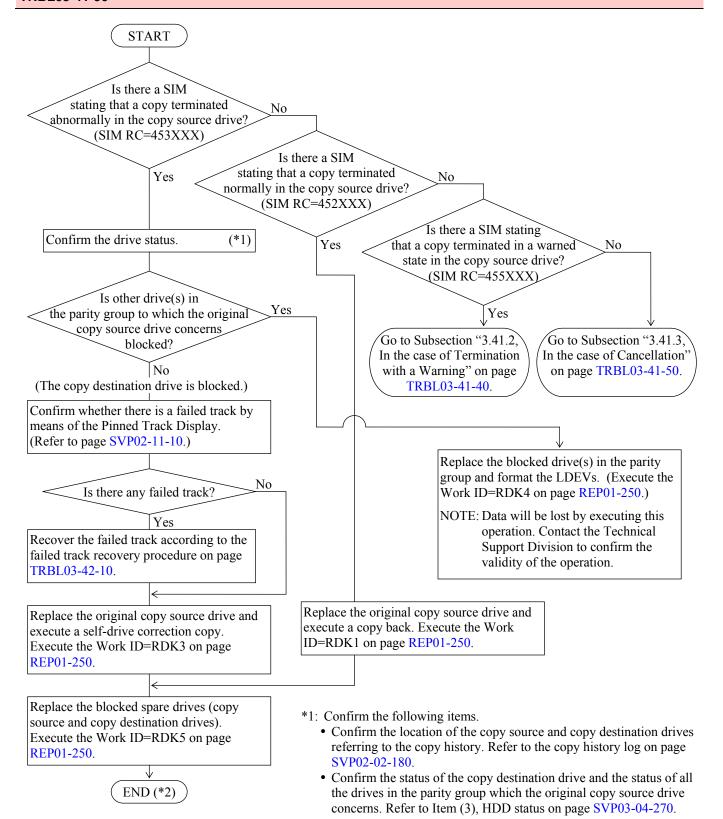
This is a case in which a correction copy terminates abnormally owing to a failure in the copy destination drive. However, if an unused spare drive exists, the correction copy is automatically performed to the unused spare drive.

In the following procedure, the copy source is referred to as a original copy source, the copy destination is referred to as a copy source, and the unused spare drive is referred to as a copy destination.



Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL03-41-90

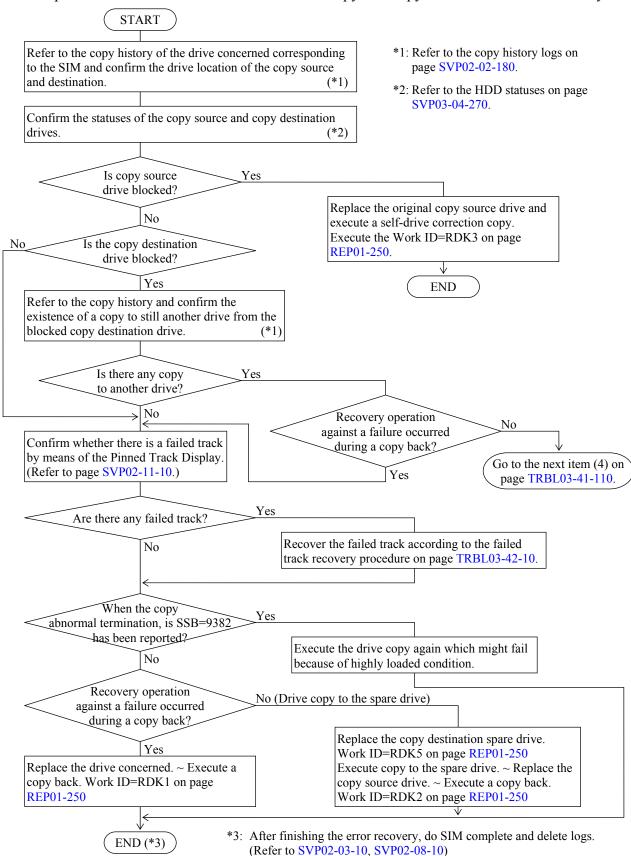


*2: After finishing the error recovery, do SIM complete and delete logs.

(Refer to SVP02-03-10, SVP02-08-10)

(3) In the case of drive copy abnormal termination

The procedure below is that used when a drive copy or a copy back terminates abnormally.

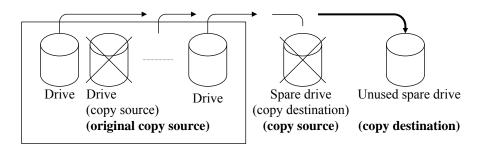


Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL03-41-110

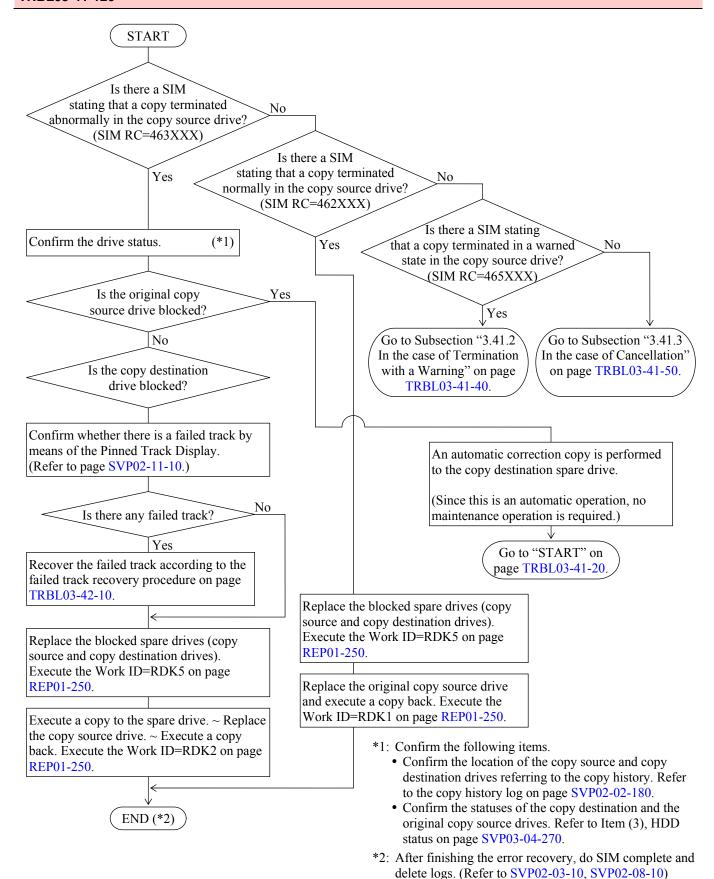
(4) In the case of drive copy abnormal termination (in which an unused spare drive is available) This is a case in which a drive copy terminates abnormally owing to a failure in the copy destination drive. However, if an unused spare drive exists, the drive copy is automatically performed to the unused spare drive.

In the following procedure, the copy source is referred to as an original copy source, the copy destination is referred to as a copy source, and the unused spare drive is referred to as a copy destination.



Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL03-41-120



DKC810I Hitachi Proprietary

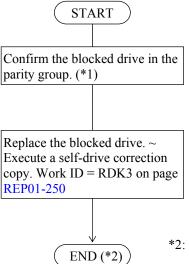
Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL03-41-130

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

3.41.5 Correction Access Status

The procedure below is that used when one drive in the parity group is blocked.



*1: Refer to Item (3), HDD status on page SVP03-04-270. Though SIM was issued, HDD status may become copy incomplete. (SIM RC = EFCXXX) In that case, recover in the following at left procedure.

*2: After finishing the error recovery, execute SIM complete and delete logs. (Refer to SVP02-03-10, SVP02-08-10)

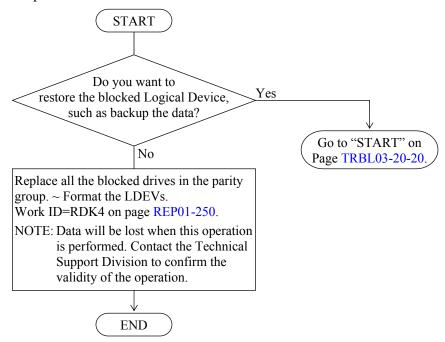
Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL03-41-140

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

3.41.6 Parity Group Blockade

The procedure below is that used when the two or more drives are blocked in the parity group.

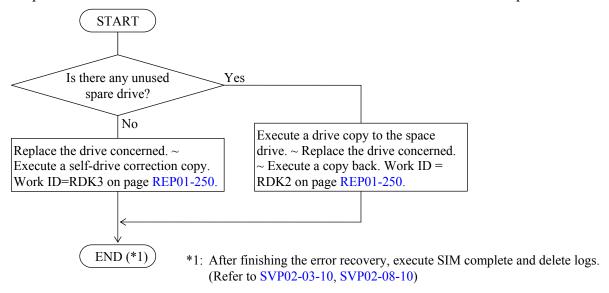


Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL03-41-150

3.41.7 Preventive Maintenance

The procedure below is that used when the drive is not blocked but it must be replaced.



Rev.1 / Mar.2014, Jul.2014

TRBL03-42-10

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

3.42 Recovery Procedure for Pinned Track

Hardware errors sometimes cause a pinned track.

This document explains pinned tracks and how to recover from them.

The following reports inform of the occurrence of a pinned track:

- Permanent Data Check
- Repeated report of Host Adapter CHK2 on the same track
- SIM report of a pinned track

SIM REF. CODE	Meaning	Comment
EF4XYY	Unable to write a track to a PDEV	X: CU# (*) YY: LDEV#
FF4XYY	Unable to process a track to or from Cache	
EF5XYY	Unable to write a track to a device in the external storage system	
FF5XYY	Unable to read a track from a device in the external storage system	

^{*:} CU# is detected only lower figure in SIM-RC (CU#0 - CU#0XF). Look at the SVP information-Content-SIM-Error Location.

To recover pinned tracks, the following information is necessary:

- Address in LDEV (LDEV number, Cylinder & Head address)
- First and last Cylinder & Head addresses of the stripe containing the pinned track
- The error type of the pinned track (Write or ECC/LRC)
- The PDEV number of the drive containing the pinned track

This information can be obtained from the "Pinned Data Display Function" (SVP03-09-10) of the SVP.

There are 4 types of pinned track error:

Display on SVP	Meaning	Recovery
Write Error	Unable to write a track to a PDEV	Replacement of PDEV
ECC/LRC Error	Unable to process a track to or from Cache	Data recovery
External VOL Write Error	Unable to write a track to a device in the external storage system	After recovering the external storage system, perform a dummy replacement of the cache package
External VOL Read Error	external storage system	After recovering the external storage system, perform a dummy replacement of the cache package

Following explains the error types of pinned tracks and shows reference for recovery:

Pinned Tracks Volume	References
Mainframe Volume	TRBL04-10
Open Volume	TRBL05-130
ShadowImage for Mainframe/ShadowImage Volume	TRBL06-10
TrueCopy for Mainframe/TrueCopy Volume	TRBL07-210
UR Data Volume or Journal Volume	TRBL09-130
Thin Image Pool Volume	TRBL10-60
Global-active device pair volume or Quorum disk volume	TRBL18-80

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL03-42-20

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

ECC/LRC Error

Causes:

- (1) An ECC/LRC type of a pinned track occurs when a CHK2 error occurs during data transfer between cache and channel, or between cache and drive. If it is a temporary error, such as transfer timeout, the error may be recovered and the PIN may be deleted by retrying the operation. When the retry operation fails because the track is the dirty data, Permanent Data Check may occur, and data will be lost. The host has to reconstruct the data using the backup file etc.
- (2) An ECC/LRC type of a pinned track occurs when the host failed to write data to the cache due to the failures in two or more drives (In RAID6, 3 or more drives). If it is a temporary failure, the PIN may be deleted when the host retries the operation. However, data check will be reported to the host.
- (3) When a parity track cannot be created due to a drive failure etc., an ECC/LRC type of a pinned track occurs, and only the data will be destaged. The ECC/LRC type of a pinned track will be recovered when the entire stripe is written.
- (4) When the data cannot be read from the source drive during correction copy, the target track cannot be recovered. As a result, the track will become an ECC/LRC pinned track. This will lead to Permanent Data Check, and the original data will be lost.
- (5) This error occurs when the emergency destage, which is performed because of a cache failure or a cache maintenance operation or PS OFF, failed due to TOV etc., and the error could not be recovered despite retrying.

Result of host I/O operation:

- (1) When a track with an ECC/LRC error is accessed by a host I/O and the data can be read, the result will be a normal end.
- (2) If the data cannot be read, there will be a failure reported of Permanent Data Check. In this case the data is lost.
- (3) Repeated Host Adapter CHK2 errors reported. Data is usually still readable but is not being destaged from cache.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL03-42-30

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

Recovering ECC/LRC pinned tracks:

- (1) Execute ICKDSF ANALYZE SCAN using LDEV, CC, HH information from the SVP PINNED TRACK display to determine whether Failure is reported or not.
 - (a) No Failure. Data can be read. Read the data and save it to tape, another volume, or memory, etc.
 - (b) Failure. Data cannot be read. It must be reconstructed by host from backup files, etc.
- (2) Run ICKDSF INSPECT NOPRESRVE (NOCHECK if 3390-3R) to the affected track. This will write all zeros to the track and will clear the pinned track indication.
- (3) Restore the track with the saved data from step 1a or the reconstructed data 1b.
- (4) If a Pinned Track recurs, resolve hardware problem and repeat steps 1-3.
- (5) If CC and HH information in the SVP PINNED TRACK shows outside the user area, this indicates that a pinned track occurred in the management area. In this case, clear the pinned track by the LDEV Format after backing up the data. (The number of user cylinders can be referred on the 'Customized Volume Size Define' of the SVP Refer Configuration.)

Pinned Track disappearance:

Under certain circumstances, pinned tracks may disappear with no recovery action having been taken.

This can occur from:

- (1) The entire stripe is written. This discards all the old data & parity in the stripe.
- (2) A Format Write from R1 is issued to the pinned track. This rewrites the entire stripe and all old data in the stripe is discarded.
- (3) If dirty data that could not be destaged due to CHK2 error is read successfully by the host, pinned tracks will be turned off.
- (4) If a parity track is unable to be destaged due to a drive failure and the drive is replaced using Correction Copy (drive replacement by copying to a spare will not clear Pinned Tracks).

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL03-42-40

3-42-40

Write Error

Cause:

A write error type of pinned track will be made when the data destaging process to a PDEV is unsuccessful due to a drive failure. When a drive failure occurs, the drive and the DKC both attempt to recover the problem. If the recovery attempts are unsuccessful, a Write type pinned track is posted. The recovery attempts are:

- (1) Media failure : Automatic reallocation of data to an alternate sector.
- (2) Other failure : Alternate path retry.

Write error count for each PDEV is stored in the DKC. If the write error count for a PDEV exceeds the threshold value, the PDEV is blocked. Only one PDEV per parity group will be blocked. One blocked PDEV in a parity group will not stop DKC operation to that parity group. However, the parity group will be in correction access mode. If a write type pinned track is accessed by the host after its PDEV has been blocked, the pinned track status will be reset.

Result of host I/O operation:

All access to write type pinned tracks will be successful and return a normal end.

Recovering Write Error pinned tracks:

Replace the PDEV with the pinned track. At this time if there is already a blocked PDEV in the same parity group, replace the blocked PDEV first. Then replace the PDEV with the pinned track. If more than one PDEV in a parity group has write error pinned tracks, check the ORM display on the SVP Panel.

Replace the PDEV with the highest error rate first, then second highest, etc. The pinned track(s) will be recovered by correction copy.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL03-42-50

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

External VOL Write Error

Cause:

When write processing is performed for a device in an external storage system, and Check Condition (Medium Error) is received due to a drive failure of the external storage system, External VOL Write Error is set.

How to recover:

After recovering the device in the external storage system, perform a dummy replacement of the cache package.

In addition, after recovering the device in the external storage system, you can remove pinned track of the external devices by writing I/O from the host. However, please note that the customer data stored in external devices is destroyed. Because the data will be overwritten by the I/O.

External VOL Read Error

Cause:

When read processing from the device in the external storage system is performed, and Check Condition (Medium Error) is received due to a drive failure in the external storage system, External VOL Read Error is set.

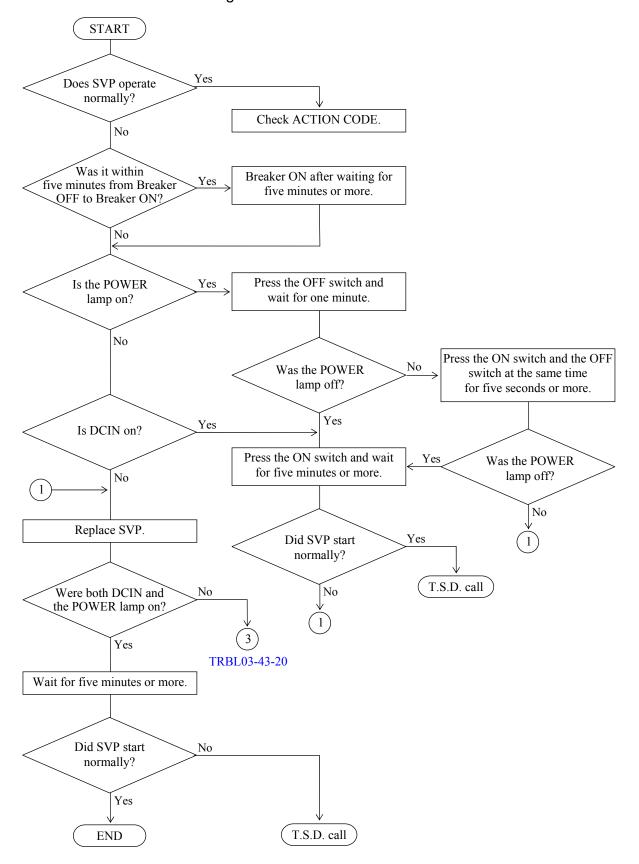
How to recover:

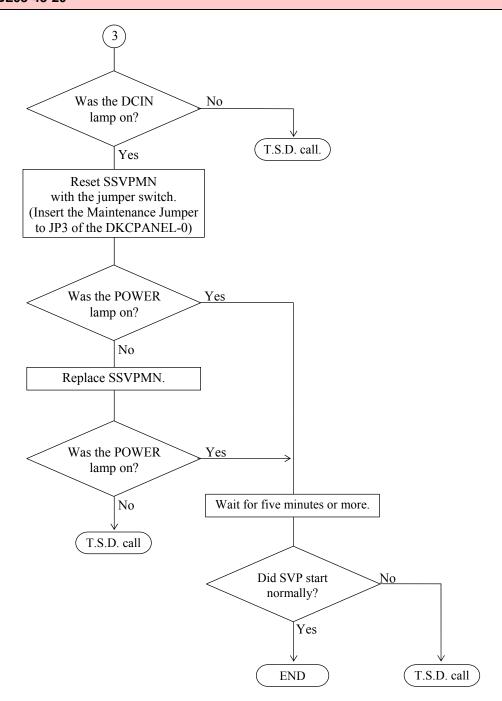
After recovering the device in the external storage system, perform a dummy replacement of the cache package.

In addition, after recovering the device in the external storage system, you can remove pinned track of the external devices by writing I/O from the host. However, please note that the customer data stored in external devices is destroyed. Because the data will be overwritten by the I/O.

3.43 Recovery Procedure for SVP Failure

3.43.1 SVP Power Trouble Shooting

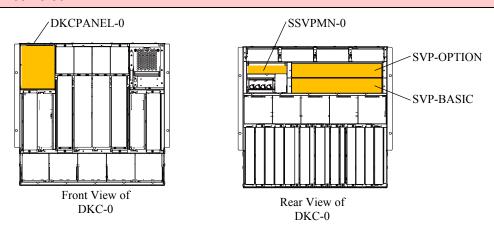


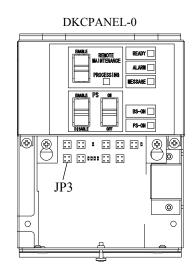


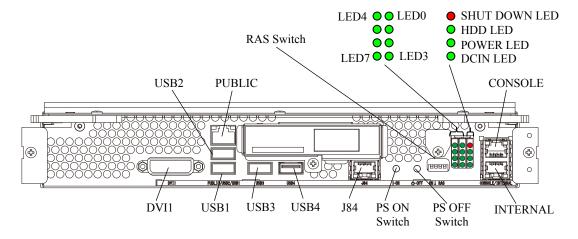
Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL03-43-30

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.



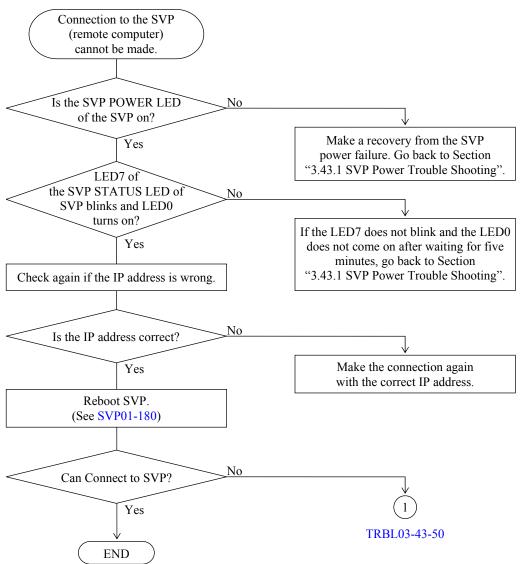




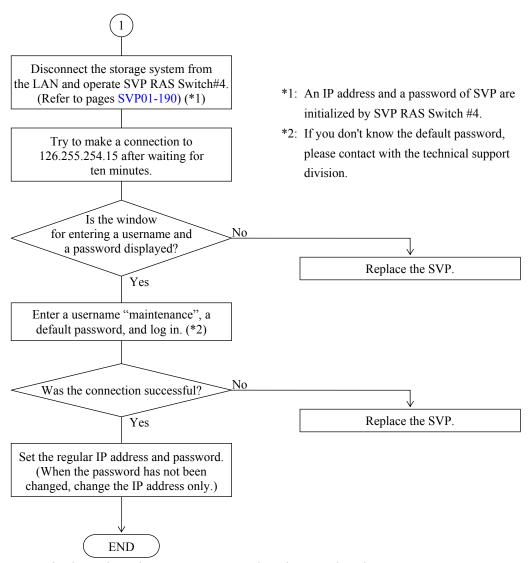
Front View of SVP

Fig. 3.43.1-1 Parts Location

3.43.2 When Connection to SVP (Remote Computer) Cannot Be Made



Erase the log when the recovery procedure is completed. (Refer to pages SVP02-03-10 and SVP02-08-10.)



Erase the log when the recovery procedure is completed. (Refer to pages SVP02-03-10 and SVP02-08-10.)

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL03-43-60

3.43.2.1 SVP OS Recovery procedure

<Pre procedure>

- 1. Open the rear door.
- 2. Turn off the power for the SVP. (Press "OFF" switch for 5 seconds or more.)

[SVP OS Recovery Procedure]

(1) Confirm the power status of the SVP (It should be off). If the "POWER LED" is off, then the SVP's power status is off (DCIN LED is always on).

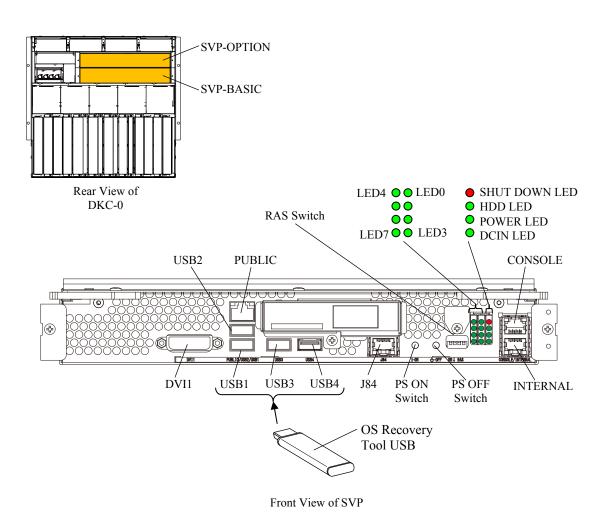


Fig. 3.43.2.1-1 System structure of the DKC810I

- (2) Set the SVP PS ON/OFF INH switch (SVP RAS SW #1) on the SVP to ON (lower position). And insert the "DKC810I SVP OS Recovery Tool USB" to the USB port, and press the "ON" switch. Then, the SVP will start ("SVP POWER LED" will be on).
- (3) A few minutes after from the SVP started, "OS Recovery Tool" will be loaded from the USB port, and executed.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL03-43-80

(4) OS Recovery Tool performs recovery of the OS from the Backup partition. This process requires 15 minutes (*1).

- *1: Do not turn off the power of SVP during this process. It might cause fatal error to the SVP.
- (5) After 15 minutes, turn off the power of the SVP and remove the "OS Recovery Tool USB", and turn on it again.

If the recovery process finished abnormally, then retry the recovery procedure. If the process finished abnormally again, the SVP has some hardware failure. (It requires replacing the SVP)

- (6) After the OS recovered normally, the Security Patch Programs should be installed to SVP (Please refer to each ECN about the details of them).
- (7) At the final step, install the Microprogram to the SVP. And, after the final step finished, set the SVP PS ON/OFF INH Switch (SVP RAS SW #1) on the SVP to OFF (upper position).

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL03-43-90

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

3.43.3 About Other SVP Troubles

(1) Action when the "Set Network Location" dialog is displayed. "Set Network Location" dialog might be displayed on the SVP window at the opportunity when the network environment of Public LAN changed. There is no influence on the SVP function by this windows being displayed. Please close according to the following procedure.

(a) The "Set Network Location" dialog.



(b) How to close the "Set Network Location" dialog.

Press (CL) the [Cancel] button in the lower right of the dialog.

DKC810I Hitachi Proprietary

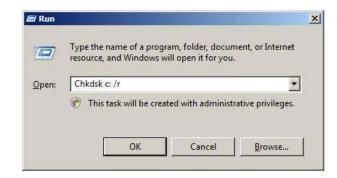
Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL03-43-100

(2) Action when the SVP HD (Hard Drive) may be failed. If SVP HD (Hard Drive) may be failed, do as following procedures.

- (a) Set SVP RAS Switch#1 Set the SVP RAS Switch#1 (SVP PS ON/OFF INH Switch) on the SVP to ON.
- (b) Select [Run] Select (CL) [Run...] from the [Start] menu.
- (c) Execute of disk check Enter the following command in the "Open:" box and select (CL) the [OK] button.

Chkdsk c: /r



Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

(d) Schedule of disk check Please input [Y] to the message of "Chkdsk cannot run because the volume is in use by another process. Would you like to schedule this volume to be checked the next time the system restarts?".

NOTE: The disk check of SVP is performed after the reboot of SVP. A disk check takes about 1 hour.

(Time changes in the state of SVP PC.)

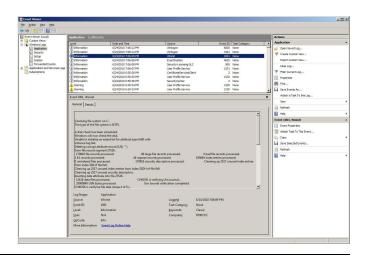
(e) SVP reboot

Press SVP PS-OFF Switch, and SVP is stopped. Make sure that SVP POWER LED is off, and then press SVP PS-ON Switch. SVP is started. (See LOC03-120)

(f) Displaying the Event Viewer Please start an event viewer, after a disk check is completed and SVP started, and select (DC) [Windows Logs]-[Application].

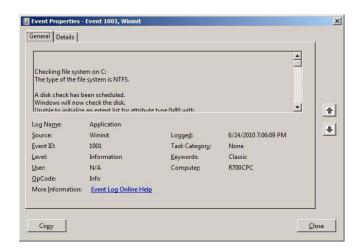
Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

(g) Display of diagnosis result Select (DC) the thing of "Wininit" from [Source] of the list of events.



(h) Details of diagnosis result

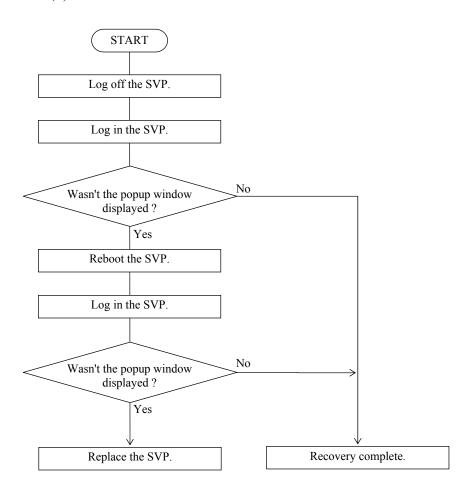
The result of the disk check is displayed.



- (i) Completing Setting of SVP RAS Switch#1 Set the SVP RAS Switch#1 (SVP PS ON/OFF INH Switch) on the SVP to OFF.
- (3) Action when the "Your user profile was not loaded correctly." popup is displayed. "Your user profile was not loaded correctly." popup might be displayed on the Task tray of Windows at the opportunity when the SVP logged in. The SVP function might not work correctly. Please deal with it according to the following procedure.
 - (a) The "Your user profile was not loaded correctly." popup



(b) Action



(4) Action in the case you cannot operate SVP because the SVP window is not displayed (black window) etc. when logging into SVP.

Reboot SVP in accordance with the procedure of SVP SECTION "1.9 SVP reboot" (SVP01-180) and log in again.

DKC810I

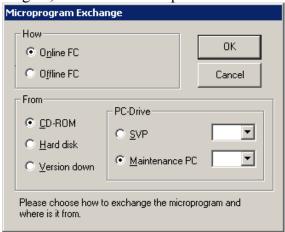
Rev.0 / Mar.2014 TRBL03-43-130

> (5) When performing maintenance operation through the remote connection (RDP) with the Maintenance PC, we sometimes have to choose a drive from the drive drop-down list displayed on the operation screens such as micro-replace screen and configuration-backup screen to continue an operation.

Occasionally, if a drive letter is not displayed in the drive drop-down list or if a drive letter is displayed repeatedly in the same drive drop-down list, we have to cut off the connection with the Maintenance PC and then reconnect to the Maintenance PC by the remote connection (RDP) again. After that we should make the drive drop-down list screen redisplay, and then we can continue our maintenance operation.

There have two ways to make the drive drop-down list screen redisplay according to different operations as below.

(a) When operating on the micro-replace screen, to make the drive drop-down list screen redisplay, we should click the [Cancel] button to close the micro-replace screen and reopen it again, then the drive drop-down list will be refreshed.



(b) When operating on the configuration-backup screen, to make the drive drop-down list screen redisplay, we should click the [Refresh] button, and then the drive drop-down list will be refreshed.

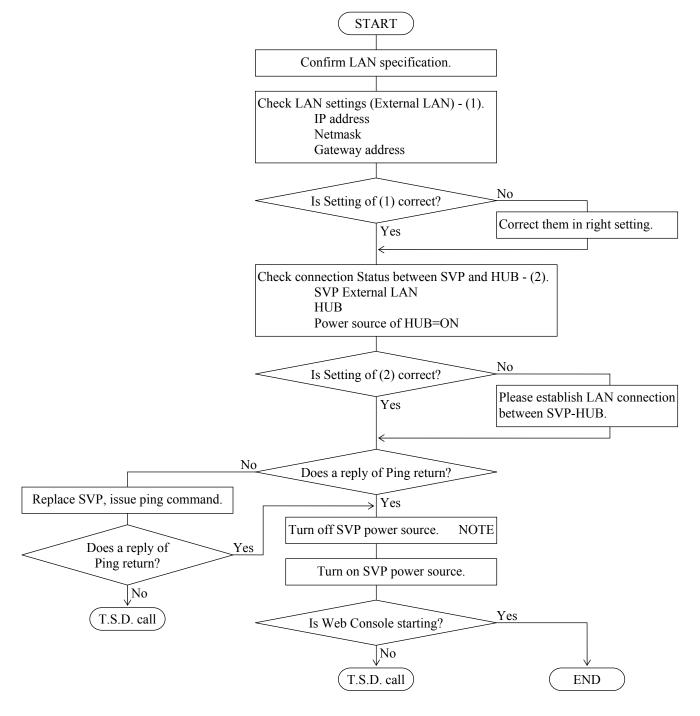


Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

3.44 Web Console Failure Recovery

Recover it referring to trouble shooting in the WEB CONSOLE SECTION in advance. If not solved yet, recover it according to the following procedure.

3.44.1 Web Console Trouble Shooting

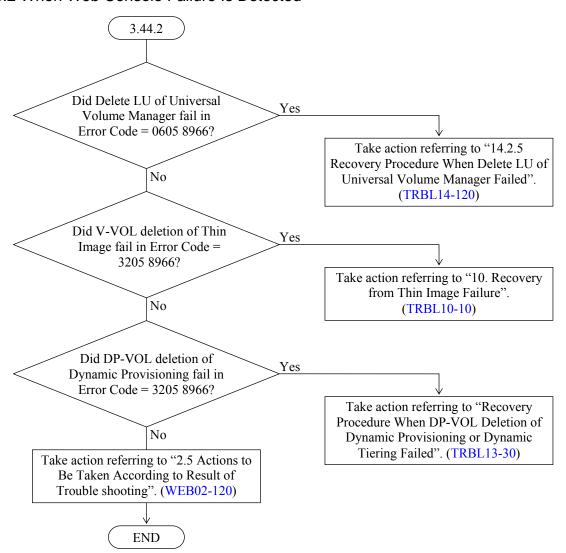


NOTE: The state that excluded LAN cable connection of SVP side of External LAN or LAN cable connection of HUB side or a power supply of HUB is an Off state, and reboot SVP, and Web Console cannot start when connected outside LAN after that. Moreover, when you cannot start Web Console, please reboot SVP.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL03-44-20

3.44.2 When Web Console Failure Is Detected



Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

3.45 Recovery when SAS cable connection error occurs (SIM = EFFEXX)

The recovery procedure when incorrect recognition of DKU location is detected at the processing to initialization on backend SAS is as follows.

As a SIM for failure managed per SAS port, SAS cable connection error (REF code = EFFEXX) is reported. (XX: SAS Port#)

As a cause of the error, it is assumed that one of the following failures occurs in the reported SAS port or in another SAS port of the opposite cluster.

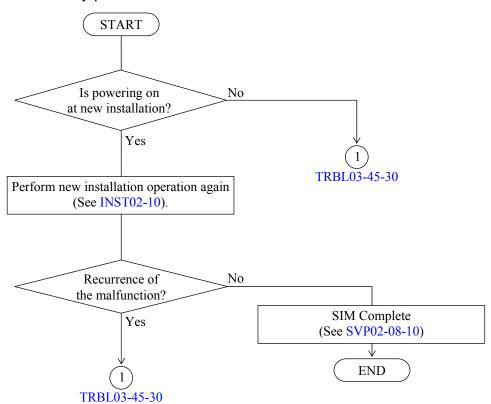
There is the case that plural PDEV(s) on the SAS port concerned blockade when this SIM occurs at the time of a boot, but PDEV(s) blockade recovers in a procedure of this chapter.

1 SAS cable is connected with wrong SSW (*1) ① Connected cluster is wrong. Next DKU CL1 CL2 The DKU CL1 CL2 ② Connected with different SSWs between clusters and the second s		
The DKU CL1 CL2 © Connected with different SSWs between clu The Next DKU CL1 CL2		
© Connected with different SSWs between clu The Next DKU CL1 CL2		
© Connected with different SSWs between clu The Next DKU CL1 CL2		
The Next DKU CL1 CL2		
	isters.	
Next DKU CL1 CL2		
Next DKU CL1 CL2		
The DKU CL1 CL2		
③ Connected with wrong HDU.		
	CL1 CL2	
NEXT DIKO CLI CLZ C		
The DKU CL1 CL2 C	CL1 CL2	
	As the number of set DKUs and the number of actually recognized	
the number of DKUs is DKUs are different, SAS cable is not connected DKUs are different, SAS cable is not connected	d or the number of	
insufficient (*1) DKUs is not enough. 3 Connection order of DKUs is Because of wrong connection, the connection of	and on a f DVII is	
wrong (*1) Switched.	order of DKU is	
The Next DKU CL1 CL2		
The Next DRU CL1 CL2		
Next DKU CL1 CL2		
The DKU CL1 CL2		
	There is any DKU to which the power is not supplied.	
5 The type of the connected The specified DKU type (2.5 inch DKU/3.5 inch		
	inconsistent with the DKU type that is actually recognized.	
6 Jumper setting is wrong (*2) Cable connection is correct but jumper setting		
7 SAS Ports in both CL are blocked When DKA in both CL or SSW has failure and DKU.	cannot access to	
	① The SAS Cable is connected with OUT0 or OUT1, not IN.	
wrong Port of SSW (*1) © The SAS Cable is connected with IN or OU	,	
③ The SAS Cable is connected with IN or OU	-	

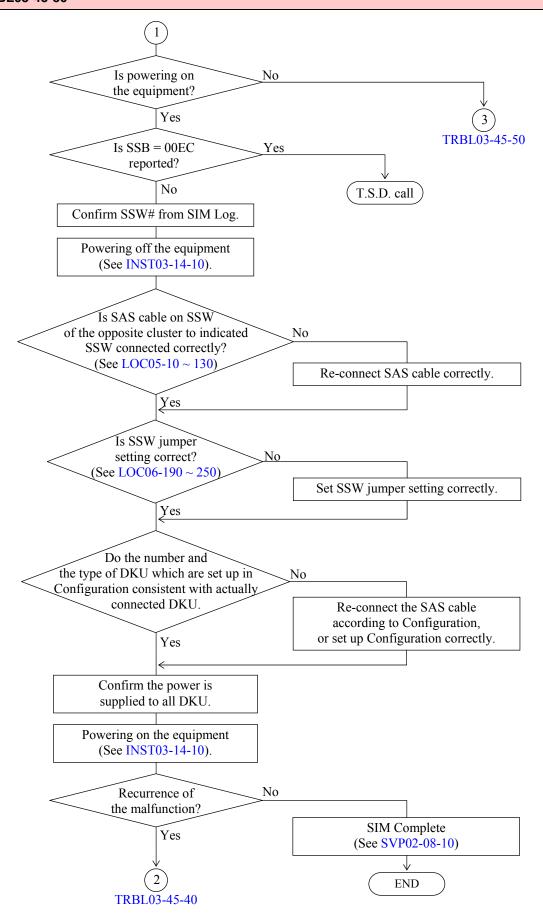
*1: Refer to LOC05-10 \sim 130 for right connection.

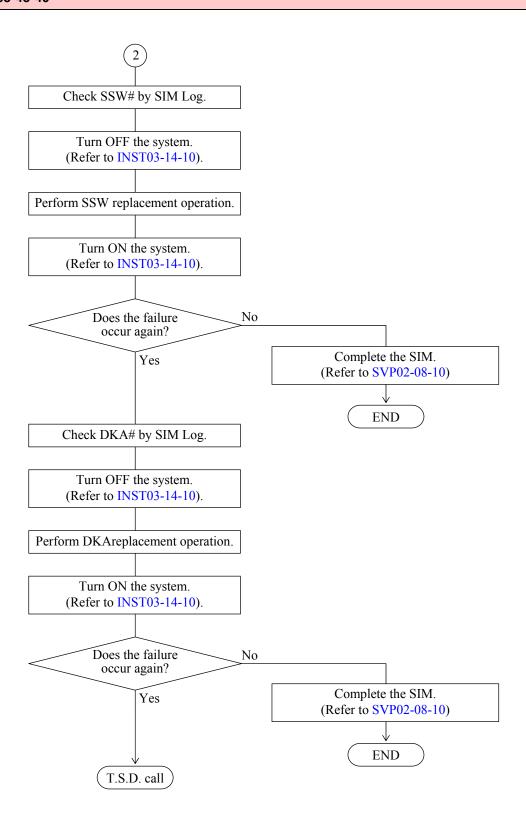
*2: Refer to LOC06-10 \sim 270 for right jumper setting.

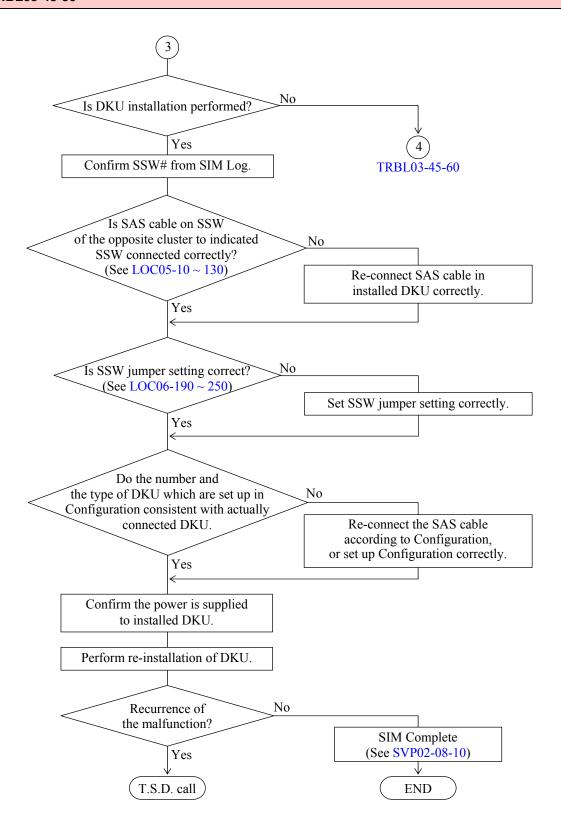
Recovery procedure for SAS cable connection failure

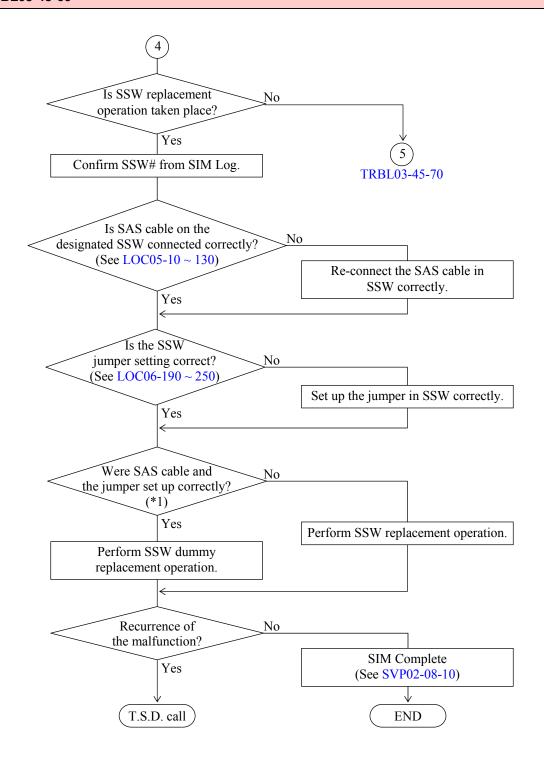


TRBL03-45-30

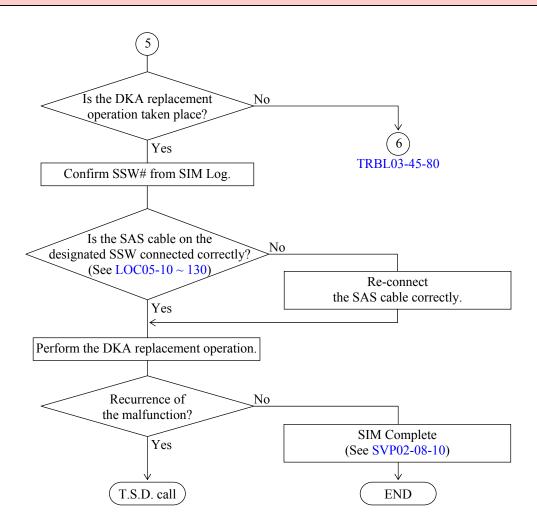




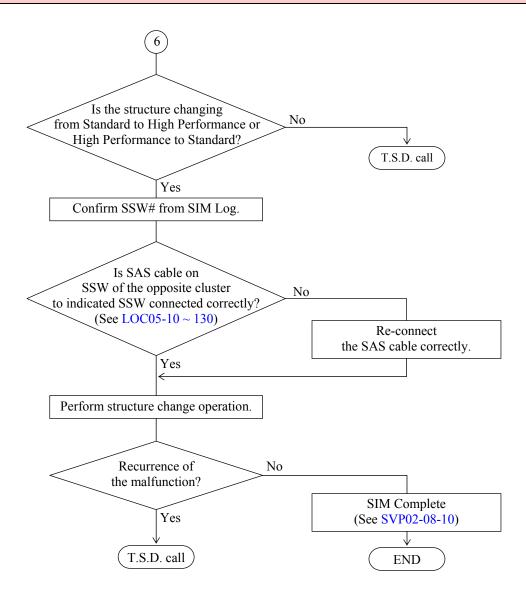




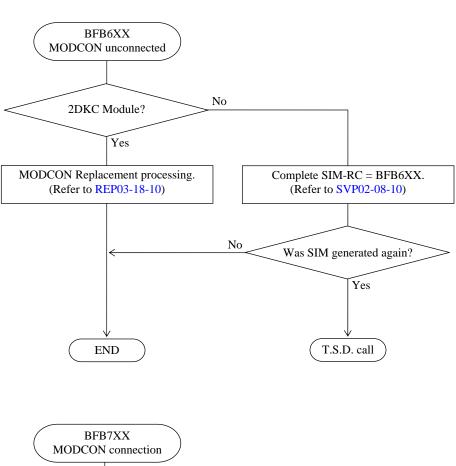
*1: When the replacement failed because of wrong connection of SAS cable or wrong jumper setting, make recovery by replacement operation as the failure was not caused by SSW failure.

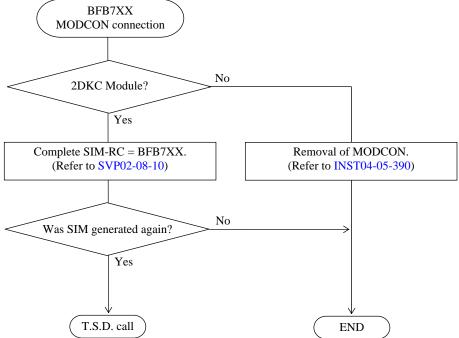


TRBL03-45-80



3.46 Recovery Procedure for MODCON connection/unconnected (SIM = BFB6XX, BFB7XX)





3.47 Connection Failure of MODCON Cables (SIM = BFB5A4)

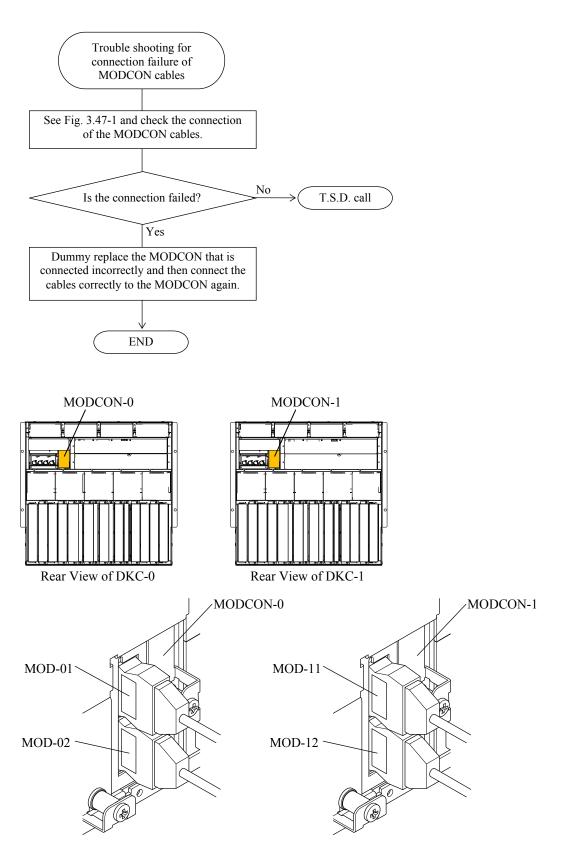


Fig. 3.47-1 Connection of MODCON Cables

Hitachi Proprietary

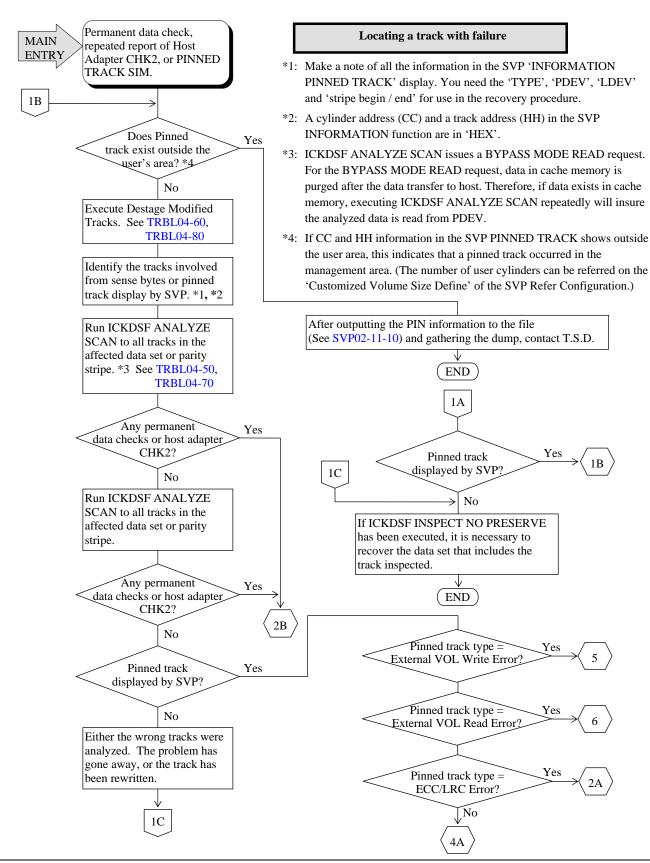
DKC810I

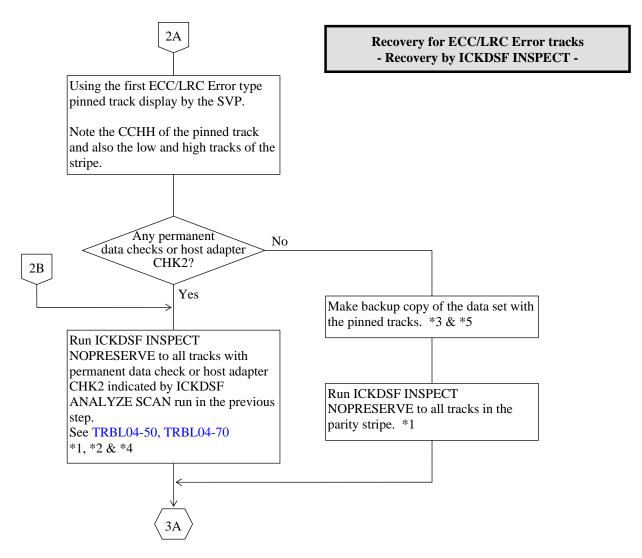
Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014 TRBL04-10

4. Recovery from Mainframe Platform Failure

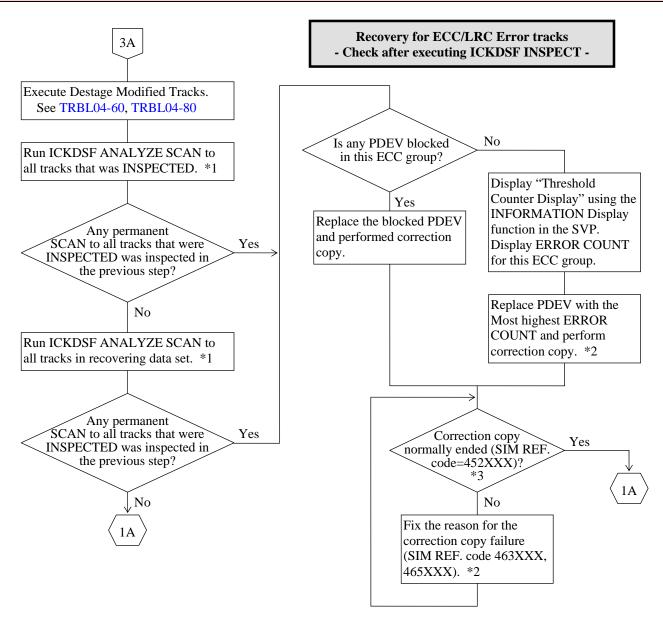
4.1 Recovery Procedure for Mainframe Pinned Track





- *1: Remember all tracks on which the ICKDSF INSPECT NO PRESERVE is run as customer data has been lost. Customer will have to recover files for each data set.
- *2: If you execute ICKDSF INSPECT in the tracks of VTOC, the volume should be set to offline. In this case the entire volume will have to be restored.
- *3: During a file recovery from the backup procedure to the restore procedure of the data set, the data set cannot be accessed until the recovery is complete.
 - If a file recovery for PDS data is set, execute the backup/restore procedure to the data set (all members).
- *4: When the drive emulation type is 3390-3R, add NOCHECK to ICKDSF INSPECT parameter. When the DKC emulation type is 2107, add NOCHECK to ICKDSF INSPECT parameter.
- *5: ① Execute File Backup for dataset including pinned track. Store the backed-up file to another media (tape or another dasd).
 - ② After executing NO PRESERVE INSPECT, restore the backed-up file to its original location.

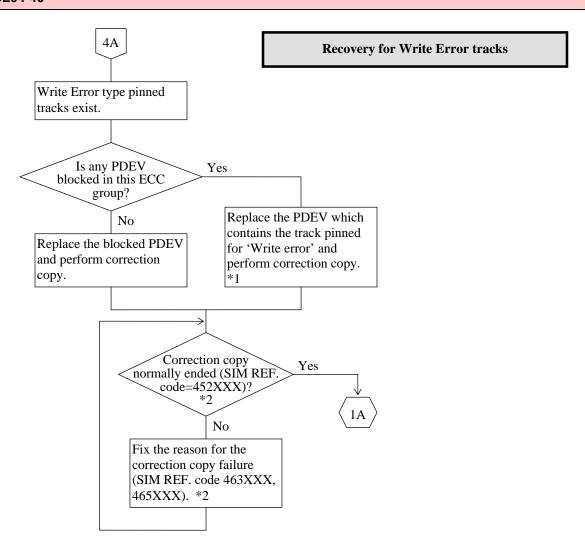
TRBL04-30



- *1: Repeat ICKDSF ANALYZE SCAN twice for the purpose verifying the data written on the physical device actually.
- *2: If Spare drives are available, you can perform Drive Copy instead of Correction copy.
- *3: If Drive copy ended abnormally, SIM REF. code is "463XXX" or "465XXX".

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

TRBL04-40



- *1: If spare drives are available, you can perform Drive copy instead of Correction copy.
- *2: If Drive copy ended abnormally, SIM REF. code is "463XXX" or "465XXX".

TRBL04-50

JCL example (under MVS)

A. Check if any pinned track by using DSF (ANALYZE).

[In case target LDEV to be recovered is ONLINE state]

```
//ANALYZE JOB MSGCLASS=x,MSGLEVEL=(1,1)
//STEP EXEC PGM=ICKDSF
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//DASD DD UNIT=DASD,VOL=SER=XXXXXX,DISP=SHR
//SYSIN DD *
ANALYZE DDNAME(DASD) SCAN
/*
//
```

[In case target LDEV to be recovered is OFFLINE state]

```
//ANALYZE JOB MSGCLASS=x,MSGLEVEL=(1,1)
//STEP EXEC PGM=ICKDSF
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSIN DD *
ANALYZE UNIT(cuu) SCAN
/*
//
```

B. Recover pinned tracks by using DSF (INSPECT).

When the drive emulation type is 3390-3R.

When the DKC emulation type is 2107.

[In case target LDEV to be recovered is ONLINE state]

```
//INSPECT JOB MSGCLASS=x,MSGLEVEL=(1,1)
//STEP EXEC PGM=ICKDSF
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//DASD DD UNIT=DASD,VOL=SER=xxxxxxx,DISP=SHR
//SYSIN DD *
INSPECT DDNAME(DASD) NOVERIFY NOPRESERVE NOCHECK -
TRACKS(X'ccc',X'h')
/*
//
```

[In case target LDEV to be recovered is OFFLINE state]

```
//INSPECT JOB MSGCLASS=x,MSGLEVEL=(1,1)
//STEP EXEC PGM=ICKDSF
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSIN DD *
INSPECT UNIT(cuu) NOVERIFY NOPRESERVE NOCHKCK -
TRACKS(X'ccc',X'h')
/*
//
```

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL04-60

C. Execute Destage Modified Tracks

```
//DESTDATA JOB MSGCLASS=x,MSGLEVEL=(1,1),REGION=nnnnK

//STEP1 EXEC PGM=IDCAMS

//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*

//SYSIN DD *

SETCACHE VOLUME(xxxxxx) unit(DASD) DESTAGE

/*
```

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

Operation example (under VM)

NOTE: This recovery procedure is executable only under VM/ESA 1.1 or higher release with DEVMAINT authority.

A. Check if any pinned track by using DSF (ANALYZE).

B. Recover pinned tracks by using DSF (INSPECT).

```
ickdsf
ICK030E DEFINE INPUT...
Console
CONSOLE
ICK031E DEFINE OUTPUT...
Console
CONSOLE
ICKDSF - CMS DEVICE SUPPORT FACILITY...

ENTER INPUT COMMAND:
inspect unit(cuu) norecovery nopriserve nocheck from(x'ccc',x'h')
to(x'ccc',x'h')
.
end
END
```

Hitachi Proprietary DKC810I Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL04-80

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

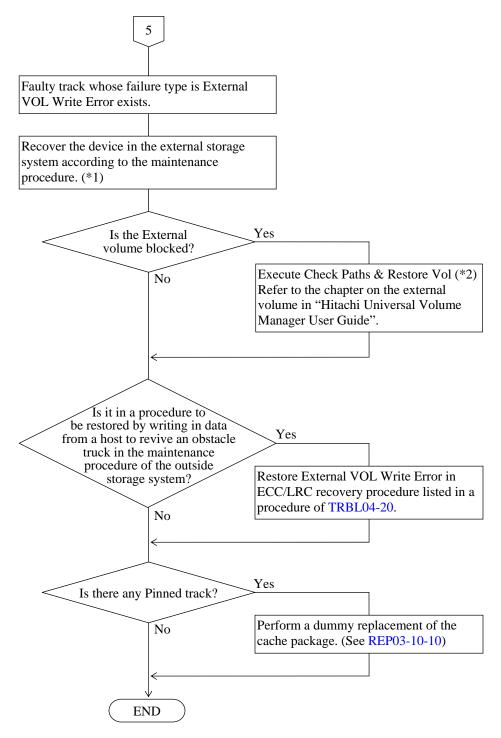
C. Execute Destage Modified Tracks

destage rdev

TRBL04-90

Recovery from External VOL Write Error

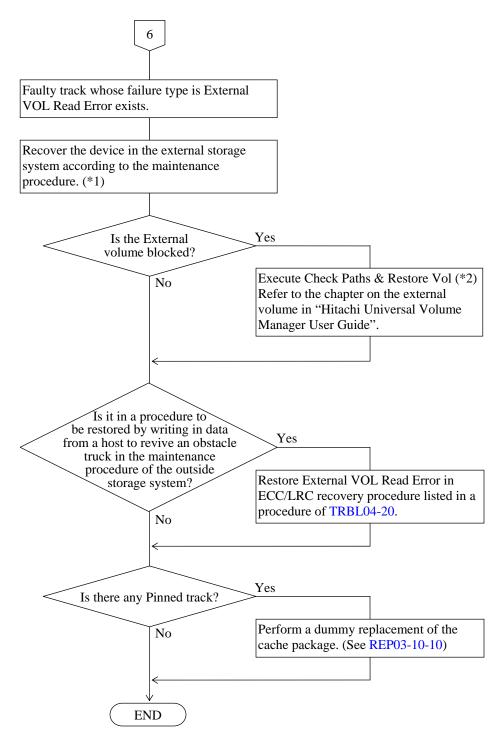
When an External VOL Write Error occurs, perform the following recovery procedure.



- *1: It should be done in the external storage system. The user needs to ask the service personnel of the external storage system to perform the maintenance operation of the storage system. (If the external storage system is Hitachi storage, recover the faulty part according to the maintenance manual.)
- *2: It should be done using Storage Navigator. Ask the customer to perform the recovery operation by using Storage Navigator according to the User Guide.

Recovery from External VOL Read Error

When an External VOL Read Error occurs, perform the following recovery procedure.



- *1: It should be done in the external storage system. The user needs to ask the service personnel of the external storage system to perform the maintenance operation of the storage system. (If the external storage system is Hitachi storage, recover the faulty part according to the maintenance manual.)
- *2: It should be done using Storage Navigator. Ask the customer to perform the recovery operation by using Storage Navigator according to the User Guide.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL04-110

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

4.2 Recovery Procedure When WDCP Information Is Lost (SIM = FFDE01, FFDE02, FFDE03)

(1) When only this SIM is reported

When this SIM is reported at the time of OFFLINE micro exchange performed, no maintenance is required.

When this SIM is reported at the time of the storage system powering on, (a) failure(s) may occur in the cache PCB or cache memory. Replace the failed part(s).

(2) When another SIM is reported together with this SIM

When the SIM concerning the cache, perform the maintenance of the failed part(s). When the SIM not concerning the above is reported at the same time, perform the maintenance of the failed part(s) and see "(1) When only this SIM is reported".

(3) WDCP system recovery procedure

For the procedure for recovering the WDCP system, see the instruction manual of the OS concerned.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-10

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

5. Recovery from Open Platform Failure

5.1 Recovery Procedure for a Failure on Host Fibre Channel Interface

5.1.1 Outline

This section describes trouble shooting of error on host Fibre channel interface.

5.1.1.1 Possible Failures and causes of them

Table 5.1.1.1-1 Possible error and cause

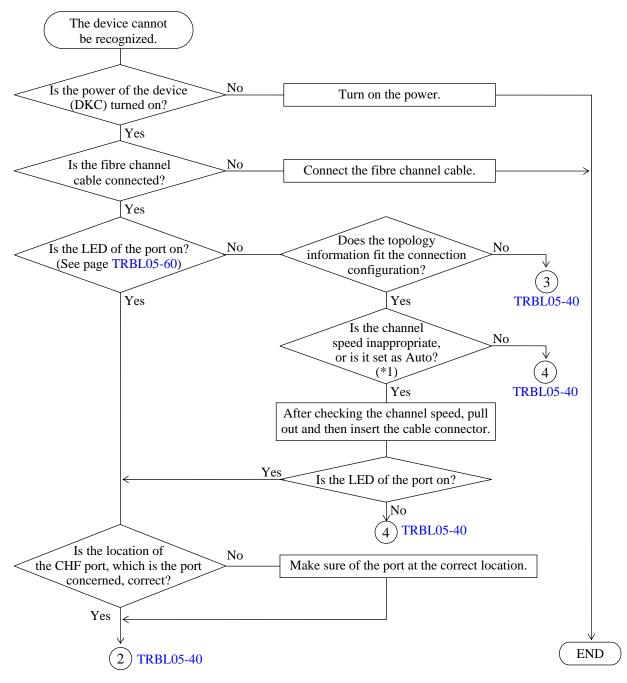
No.	Possible error	Cause
1	DKC810I LDEV is not recognized by Fibre initiator	 SCSI installation, i.e. recognition and connecting procedure from SCSI initiator is not executed correctly Problem of Fibre cable or connection Problem of Fibre initiator. Fibre board, device driver version, parameters, etc. SCSI path definition from SVP The Host Reserve status is left uncanceled. Other

5.1.1.2 Matters must be or desirable to be checked

Item	Checkpoint	Check method
1	Is the Ready LED on the DKC on?	Check the storage system visually.
2	Is the LED of the port, which corresponds to the failed SCSI port, on? Open the System window from Action menu of Storage Navigator main window and check whether the port status indicator is on.	Check the storage system visually.
3	Is the location of the CHF port correctly understood?	Refer to LOC04-10 ~ 30.
4	Is the status of the FCP corresponding to the failed SCSI path normal?	Check if the FCP is normal by selecting the PCB status in the 'Maintenance' Window and viewing the statuses of the FCP (see page TRBL05-70).
5	Is the fibre channel cable connected to the fibre channel board of the server firmly?	Pull out and then insert the cable connector.
6	Is it a problem of the cable?	Replace the cable.
7	Is the SFP of the PCB normal?	SIM: Check if the 21A8 is output. Make sure of the type and status (Short or Long) of the SFP through the CHA information concerned in the 'Maintenance' Window. Pull out and then inset the SFP.
8	Did not the AL-PA duplicate in the fibre channel?	SIM: Check if the 2190 is output.
9	Is the topology not wrong?	Turn on/off the Fabric setting. Make sure which is adopted, the FC-AL or Point to Point?
10	Is the path from the SVP set correctly?	Check the SCSI path of the port concerned.
11	Is the device defined as the SCSI path normal?	Check the LU status information in the 'Maintenance' Window.
12	Is the setting of the driver normal?	Check the setting of the driver.
13	Is the HBA normal?	Replace the HBA.
14	Is the fibre channel port correct?	Check the fibre channel information (on page TRBL05-90) of the SVP Monitor.
15	Are the combinations of PCB types and the equipment to be connected correct?	If the type of PCB is 16FC8, make sure the channel speed of the equipment (HBA, switch, etc.) to be connected is not 1Gbps.
		*: If the type of PCB is 16FC8, set the host channel speed from any one of 2G/4G/8Gbps since the channel speed of 1G is not supported.
		If the type of PCB is 8FC16, make sure the channel speed of the equipment (HBA, switch, etc) to be connected is not 1G/2Gbps.
		*: If the type of PCB is 8FC16, set the host channel speed from any one of 4G/8G/16Gbps since the channel speed of 1G/2Gbps is not supported.

DKC810I

5.1.2 Recovery Procedure When Device Is Not Recognized



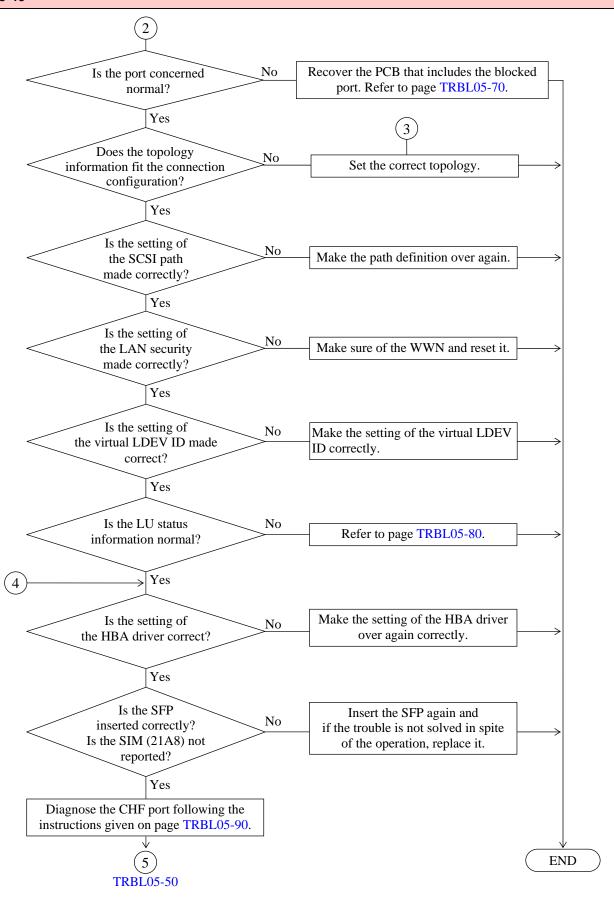
*1: If the type of PCB is 16FC8, make sure the channel speed of the equipment (HBA, switch, etc.) to be connected is not 1Gbps.

If the type of PCB is 16FC8, set the host channel speed from any one of 2G/4G/8Gbps since the channel speed of 1G is not supported.

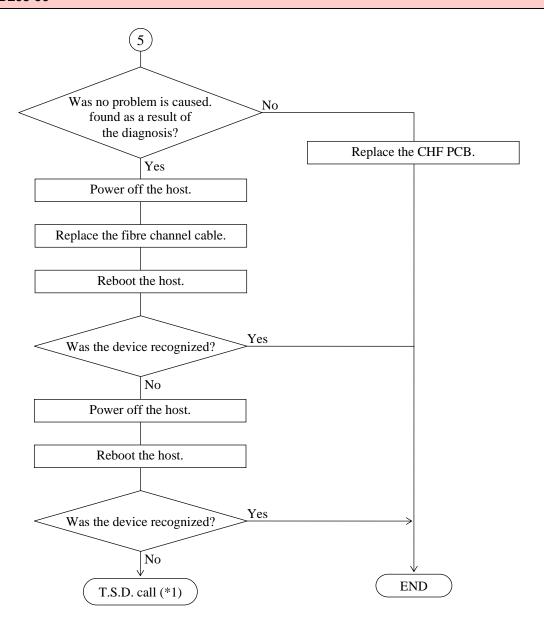
If the type of PCB is 8FC16, make sure the channel speed of the equipment (HBA, switch, etc.) to be connected is not 1G/2Gbps.

If the type of PCB is 8FC16, set the host channel speed from any one of 4G/8G/16Gbps since the channel speed of 1G/2Gbps is not supported.

TRBL05-40



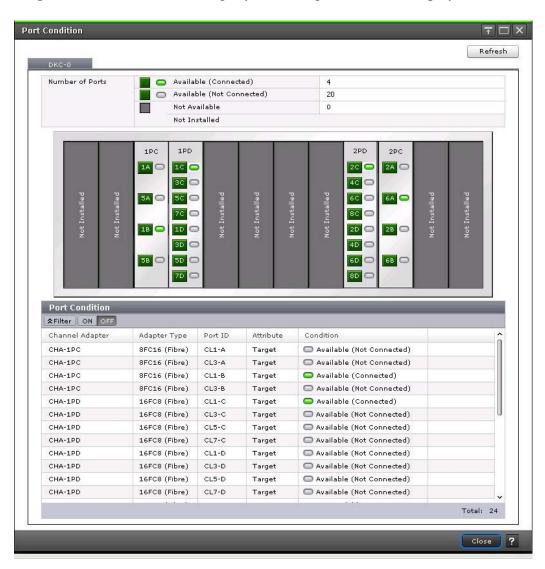
TRBL05-50



- *1: Send the following information to the Technical Support Division (T.S.D.).
 - Device configuration of the host
 - Version of the OS
 - Whether the OS is patched or not
 - Version of the driver
 - Model number of the fibre channel board
 - Dump information on the DKC
 - Syslogs and/or Messages
 - Logs of software when the alternative path exists
 - Fibre channel monitoring information if available

5.1.3 Procedure for Checking Storage System Port Status

In the "Port Condition" window ([Actions]-[Component]-[View Port Status]) of Storage Navigator, the port information of the storage system being connected is displayed.



In the "Port Condition" box, the statuses of the ports are displayed in the image of the practical storage system.

Channel Adapter, Adapter type, Port ID, Attribute and Condition are displayed for the each port. The statuses of the displays of the port status are explained below.

Port Condition	Means
Available (Connected)	The port is installed and in use.
Available (Not Connected)	The port is installed and ready for use.
Not Available	The port is installed and not ready for use (blocked).
Not Installed	The port is not installed or out of use.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

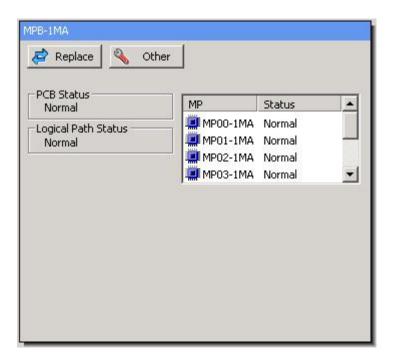
TRBL05-70

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

5.1.4 Procedure for Checking Normalcy of the Processor

Select the MPB in the 'Maintenance' Window, and check the normalcy of the processor in the following window.

When they are normal, "Normal" is displayed in the Status column as shown below.



Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-80

5.1.5 Procedure for Checking LUN Status Information

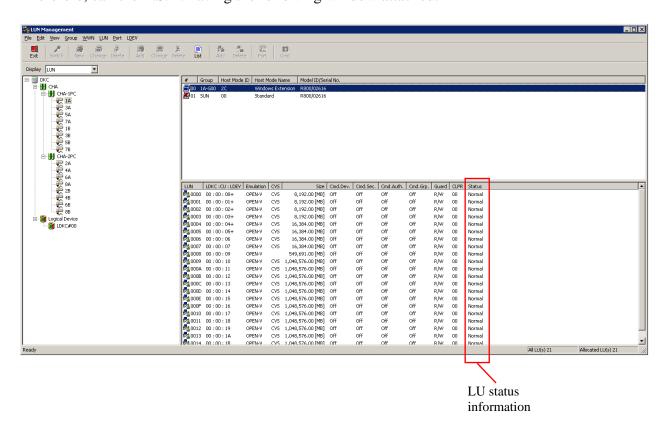
Select LUN Management in the 'Maintenance' Window.

Select View from the tabs at the top of the window and check off the LUN Status.

Then you can check the LU status information of each host group.

Check if the displayed status information is not Blockade or Reserve. If the displayed status is not Normal, it is highly possible that the device cannot be recognized because of the status.

Therefore, call the T.S.D. having the following window attached.



Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

5.1.6 Isolation Procedure for Fibre Channel Failure

Select the following items in the SVP Monitor window and check the counts at the time when the device recognition is executed.

When the count has been made, it is possible that a part of the path concerned has a problem.

Therefore, locate the part according to an estimation suggested by the port information.

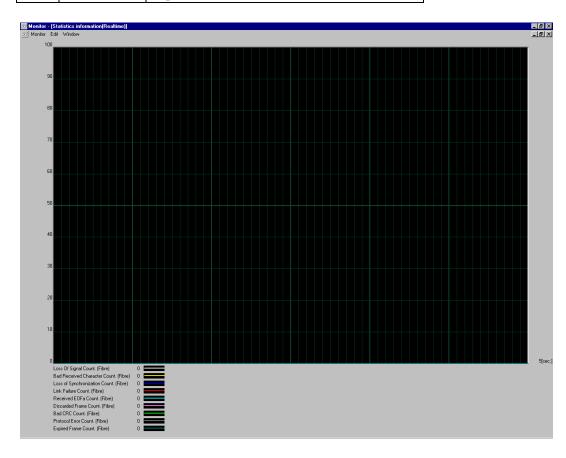
The counts are displayed at intervals of five seconds.

The counts are not advanced normally, but they are advanced when a link failure occurs or a problem occurs in the storage system port or a connected device.

Locate the failed part according to the actions listed for the count that has been advanced.

If the device cannot be recognized in spite of the locating actions, call the T.S.D.

	Monitor type	Information Monitor
1	Port	Loss of Signal Count (Fibre)
2		Bad Received Character Count (Fibre)
3		Loss of Synchronization Count (Fibre)
4		Link Failure Count (Fibre)
5		Received EOFa Count (Fibre)
6		Discarded Frame Count (Fibre)
7		Bad CRC Count (Fibre)
8		Protocol Error Count (Fibre)
9		Expired Frame Count (Fibre)



Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-100

Table 5.1.6-1 Table for Locating Part in which a Fibre Channel Failure Occurs

T4		Description		T
Item	Name	Description	Estimated cause	Actions to be taken
1	Loss Of Signal Count	This information shows the count of the losses of signals detected by the Fibre I/F controller. (The loss of signal: A state in which the optical input signal cannot be sensed.)	 The optical signal is not output from the connected port. Break of the connecting cable. The connecting cable connector is not inserted correctly. 	 Check whether the optical signal is emitted from the connected port. Pulling out and reinsertion of the connecting cable connector. Replacement of the SFP of the Switch. Replacement of the HBA. Replacement of the SFP of the CHF PCB. Replacement of the connecting cable. Replacement of the CHF PCB.
2	Bad Received Character Count	This information shows the count of failures in the 8-bit/10-bit conversion. (The failure: A state in which characters cannot be converted.)	 Degradation of the optical signal emitted from the connected port. Break of the connecting cable. (contact failure) Imperfect insertion of the connecting cable connector. Auto Negotiation of the connected port. [8FC16: 4-16Gb] [16FC8: 2-8Gb] (This is not a problem.) Pulling out and reinsertion of the cable connector. [8FC16: 4-16Gb] [16FC8: 2-8Gb] (This is not a problem.) Reboot or tuning on/off of the host/Switch. (This is not a problem.) 	 Pulling out and reinsertion of the connecting cable connector. Replacement of the connecting cable. Replacement of the SFP of the Switch. Replacement of the HBA. Replacement of the SFP of the CHF PCB. Replacement of the CHF PCB.
3	Loss of Synchronization Count	This information shows the count of failures in the signal synchronization. (The phenomenon: The optical signal can be sensed but no synchronization pattern can be sensed.)	•	 Pulling out and reinsertion of the connecting cable connector. Replacement of the connecting cable. Replacement of the SFP of the Switch. Replacement of the HBA. Replacement of the SFP of the CHF PCB. Replacement of the CHF PCB.

(To be continued)

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

(Continued from the preceding page)

(Con	Continued from the preceding page)						
Item	Name	Description	Estimated cause	Actions to be taken			
4	Link Failure Count	• This information shows the count of the link failures detected. (The phenomena: The optical signal cannot be sensed, the state, in which the synchronizing pattern cannot be sensed, has lasted longer than 100ms, or the Lip signal cannot be sensed when the loop is constructed. (the protocol on the other port side is abnormal))	 Degradation of the optical signal emitted from the connected port. Break of the connecting cable. (contact failure) Imperfect insertion of the connecting cable connector. Auto Negotiation of the connected port. [8FC16: 4-16Gb] [16FC8: 2-8Gb] (This is not a problem.) Pulling out and reinsertion of the cable connector. (This is not a problem.) Reboot or tuning on/off of the host/Switch. (This is not a problem.) 	 Pulling out and reinsertion of the connecting cable connector. Replacement of the connecting cable. Replacement of the SFP of the Switch. Replacement of the HBA. Replacement of the SFP of the CHF PCB. Replacement of the CHF PCB. 			
5	Received EOFa Count	• This information shows the count of reception of the EOFa's. (The phenomenon: A frame sent from the other port was received but it was invalidated by the delimiter.)	 A problem of the frame output from the host. A problem of the frame output from the Switch. A problem of the quality of the signals transmitted between the host and Switch. 	 Replacement of the SFP between the HBA and Switch. Replacement of the cable between the HBA and Switch. Replacement of the HBA. 			
6	Discarded Frame Count	• This information shows the count of discard of received frames that were illegal. (The phenomenon: A frame sent from the other port was received but it was invalid.)	 A problem of the quality of the signals transmitted between the host and Switch. A problem of the frame output from the host. A problem of the frame output from the Switch. 	An amount of flowing data between the host and Switch differs from that between the Switch and RAID. Reduce the amount of data that flows into the Switch.			
7	Bad CRC Count	• This information shows the count of frames, in which the CRC errors occurred when the valid EOF's were received. (The phenomenon: A CRC error occurred in the frame received from the other port.)	 A problem of the quality of the signals transmitted between the host and Switch. A problem of the frame output from the host. A problem of the frame output from the Switch. 	 Pulling out and reinsertion of the connecting cable. Replacement of the connecting cable. Replacement of the SFP of the Switch. Replacement of the HBA. Replacement of the SFP of the CHF PCB. Replacement of the CHF PCB. 			

(To be continued)

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-120

(Continued from the preceding page)

	1	Description	Estimated and	A -4: 4 - 1 - 4 - 1
Item	Name	Description	Estimated cause	Actions to be taken
8	Protocol Error Count	• This information shows the count of reception of the LRRs at the times of the linking up. (The phenomena: A protocol error in the communication with the other port or reception of a unexpected sequence in the linking up sequence.)	• A problem of the timing in the sequence of the linking up with the connected port. (This is not a problem if the linking up can be done.)	 Replacement of the SFP of the Switch. Replacement of the HBA. Replacement of the SFP of the CHF PCB. Replacement of the CHF PCB.
9	Expired Frame Count	• This information shows the count of frames each of which was discarded because a state in which it could not be sent lasted so long that the retention expired. (The state was such that the frame was waiting for the R-RDY of the other port.)	 A problem of the quality of the signals transmitted between the host and Switch. A problem of the frame output from the host. A problem of the frame output from the Switch. 	 Replacement of the SFP between the HBA and Switch. Replacement of the cable between the HBA and Switch. Replacement of the HBA. An examination of the host/Switch. (An inquiry of the manufacturer.)

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

5.2 Recovery Procedure for Open Volume Pinned Track

This chapter shows about the explanation and the recovery procedure for faulty tracks in the OPEN-VOL.

5.2.1 Pinned Tracks

Hardware error sometimes causes pinned track to occur.

The following reports are to inform pinned track occurrence.

- The read-error report or the time-out error report from Application occurs.
- SIM report of pinned track occurrence.

SIM REF.CODE	Meaning	Comment
EF4X-XX	Unable to write to PDEV on a track.	X-XX : CU-LDEV number
FF4X-XX	Unable to read from cache on a track.	X-XX : CU-LDEV number
EF5X-XX	Unable to write a track to a device in the external storage system.	X-XX : CU-LDEV number
FF5X-XX	Unable to read a track from a device in the external storage system.	X-XX : CU-LDEV number

To recover pinned tracks, the following information about the pinned track to be recovered are necessary.

- Address in LDEV (LDEV number)
- First and last LBA of stripe including the pinned track (*1)
- Error type of the pinned track
- PDEV number including the pinned track

These information can be obtained by "Pinned Data indication" (SVP02-11-10) in SVP.

*1: LBA : Logical Block Address

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-140

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

5.2.2 Error Types

Pinned track has 4 error types as follows.

Display on SVP		Meaning	Cause	Recovery method
Slot	Reason			
_	Write Error	Unable to write to PDEV.	Drive error	Replacement of PDEV
DATA	ECC/LRC Error	Unable to read from Cache.	Cache error	File recovery
PRTY	ECC/LRC Error	Unable to generate parity	Cache error	_
DATA	External VOL Write Error	Unable to write a track to a device in the external storage system	Device failure of external storage system	After recovering the external storage system, perform a dummy replacement of the cache package
DATA	External VOL Read Error	Unable to read a track from a device in the external storage system	Device failure of external storage system	After recovering the external storage system, perform a dummy replacement of the cache package

The following document explains each error type of the pinned track and shows the recovery flow chart for the ECC/LRC Error in the OPEN-VOL and for the External VOL Read Error of the external storage system device. As for the pinned track except the ECC/LRC error condition in the OPEN-VOL and External VOL Read Error, refer to TRBL03-42-10 section.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-150

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

5.2.2.1 ECC/LRC Error

Cause

- (1) An ECC/LRC type of a pinned track occurs when a CHK2 error occurs during data transfer between cache and channel, or between cache and drive. If it is a temporary error, such as transfer timeout, the error may be recovered and the PIN may be deleted by retrying the operation. When the retry operation fails because the track is the dirty data, Permanent Data Check may occur, and data will be lost. The host has to reconstruct the data using the backup file
- (2) An ECC/LRC type of a pinned track occurs when the host failed to write data to the cache due to the failures in two or more drives (In RAID6, 3 or more drives). If it is a temporary failure, the PIN may be deleted when the host retries the operation. However, data check will be reported to the host.
- (3) When a parity track cannot be created due to a drive failure etc., an ECC/LRC type of a pinned track occurs, and only the data will be destaged. The ECC/LRC type of a pinned track will be recovered when the entire stripe is written.
- (4) When the data cannot be read from the source drive during correction copy, the target track cannot be recovered. As a result, the track will become an ECC/LRC pinned track. This will lead to Permanent Data Check, and the original data will be lost.
- (5) This error occurs when the emergency destage, which is performed because of a cache failure or a cache maintenance operation or PS OFF, failed due to TOV etc., and the error could not be recovered despite retrying. If the error occurs when the power is being turned off (PS OFF), the power will be turned off while the dirty data is still stored in the cache. The data will be retained by the battery. The emergency destage will be performed again when the power is turned on (PS ON), and the pinned track will be recovered.

Result of host I/O operation

When a track with an ECC/LRC Error is accessed, the result of the host I/O operation is as follows;

- (a) If the read in the track is possible, the host I/O operation ends normally.
- (b) If it isn't possible to read a track, "(03)h: Medium Error" or "(0b)h: Abort" to I/O operation is reported to the host. In this case, data is lost.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-160

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

The outline of the recovery procedure

A track with ECC/LRC Error means that the original data for the track may be lost. Therefore, we recommend to a customer that a recovery of the data for the track with ECC/LRC Error in the OPEN-VOL should be performed from a backup file etc.

A recovery method for the track with ECC/LRC Error in the OPEN-VOL is as follows;

- (1) It change into the state that I/O is not issued from connection server. (It changes into the state that there is not a process/JOB on a server. Details apply to the procedure of each servers side.)
- (2) Check whether a blocked CHA part exists or not. Restore a blocked CHA part if it exist.
- (3) Obtains the LDKC number and the CU-LDEV number which the pinned track occurred by "Pinned Data Indication" (SVP02-11-10) in SVP and the head and the last LBAs of the pinned track.
- (4) Executes the "showrel" tool and examine the relation in fault LDEV and the device which the file system recognizes.
- (5) Checks a volume on the file system which is composed of the device and also checks data in the volume. (Using the command like sum)
- (6) Requests the customer the recovery of the data with "I/O error" or "read error" from a backup file, etc.
- (7) Confirms pinned track information by "Pinned Data Indication" (SVP02-11-10) in SVP. If there is not a display of the pinned track and the system test result is normal, the recovery is ended. If a new pinned track occurs, back to the process of hard error recovery.
- (8) If an old pinned track display is left, executes the Pin Track Tool.
- (9) For the "slot:PRTY" display, the Pin Track Tool isn't necessary.

 It is automatically recovered when the pinned track of the "slot:DATA" display is recovered.
- (10) If "Pinned Data Indication" (SVP02-11-10) in SVP doesn't indicate LBAs of pinned track, this indicates that a pinned track occurred OPEN-VOL other than the user area. After backing up the user data, use the LDEV Format to clear the pinned track.

The cancellation of the faulty tracks

When data is written to the whole stripe, the whole stripe data is fixed and the fault track is canceled.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-170

5.2.2.2 Write Error

Cause

Write Error type of a pinned track is caused when the data de-staging process to the PDEV failed due to a drive failure. When a drive failure occurs, the drive itself and the DKC perform the following recovery procedure. A write Error occurs when the following recovery procedure failed.

- (1) Medium failure: Automatic reallocation of alternate sector.
- (2) Other failure : Alternate path retry.

Write Error count information per PDEV is stored in DKC. When a Write Error count exceeds the threshold value, the PDEV is blocked. One PDEV blocked per parity group will not stop the DKC operation to the parity group. When a track with Write Error is accessed by the host after the PDEV is blocked, the Write Error status will reset.

Result of host I/O operation

Any access to a track with Write Error will be successful.

Recovery Method

The PDEV containing a track with Write Error is replaced. At this time, if the blocked PDEV already exist within the parity group, first replace the blocked PDEV which already exists. Next, replace the PDEV containing a track with Write Error. Also, if there are many PDEVs containing a track with Write Error, check the ORM Display on the SVP Panel, then replace the PDEV with the Highest Error Rate. A track with Write Error is recovered by a correction copy.

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-180

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

5.2.2.3 External VOL Write Error

<u>Cause</u>

When write processing is performed for a device in an external storage system, and Check Condition (Medium Error) is received due to a drive failure of the external storage system, External VOL Write Error is set.

How to recover

After recovering the device in the external storage system, perform a dummy replacement of the cache package.

In addition, after recovering the device in the external storage system, you can remove pinned track of the external devices by writing I/O from the host. However, please note that the customer data stored in external devices is destroyed. Because the data will be overwritten by the I/O.

5.2.2.4 External VOL Read Error

Cause

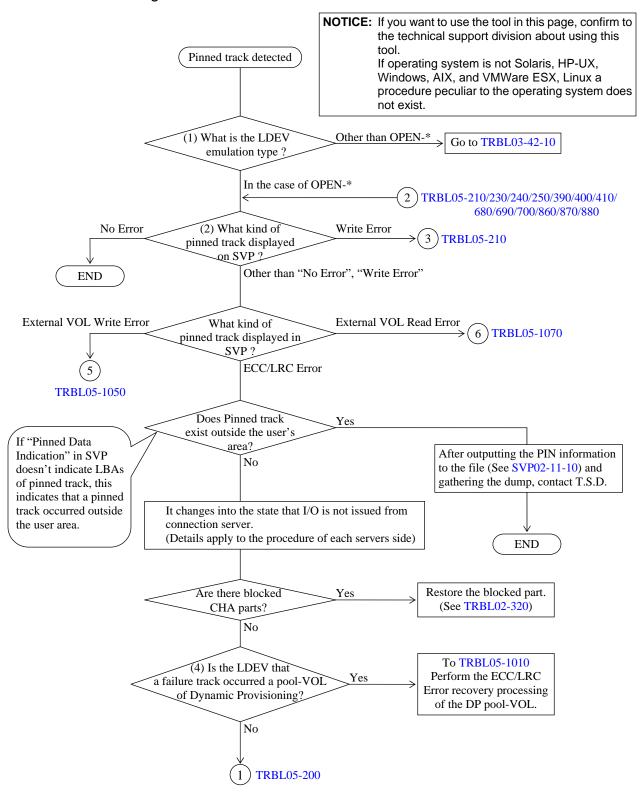
When read processing from the device in the external storage system is performed, and Check Condition (Medium Error) is received due to a drive failure in the external storage system, External VOL Read Error is set.

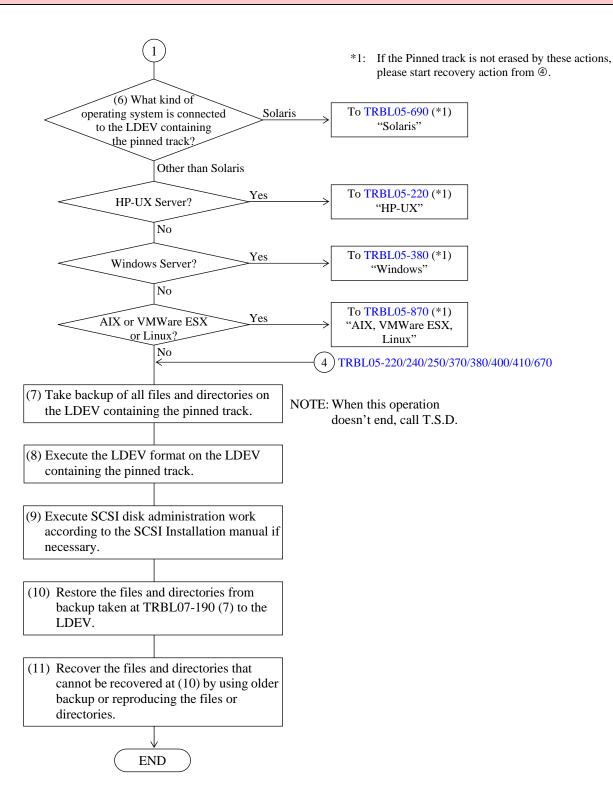
How to recover

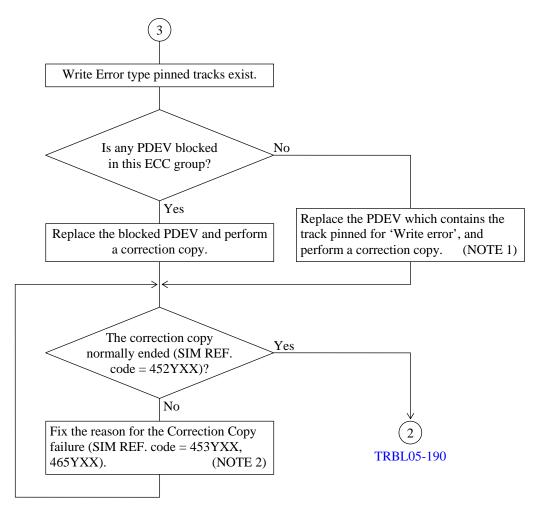
After recovering the device in the external storage system, perform a dummy replacement of the cache package.

In addition, after recovering the device in the external storage system, you can remove pinned track of the external devices by writing I/O from the host. However, please note that the customer data stored in external devices is destroyed. Because the data will be overwritten by the I/O.

5.2.3 Procedure for Erasing Pinned Track





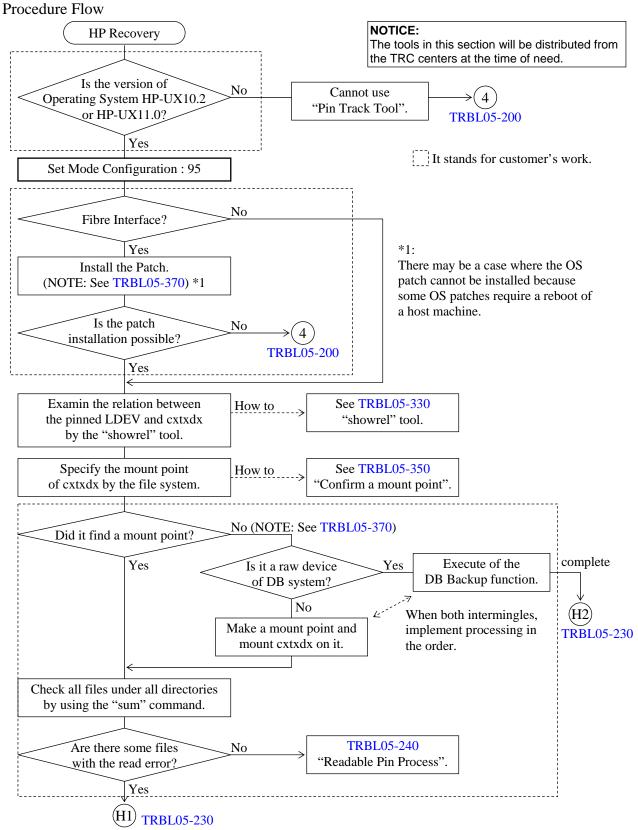


NOTE1: If spare drives are available, you can perform Drive copy instead of Correction copy.

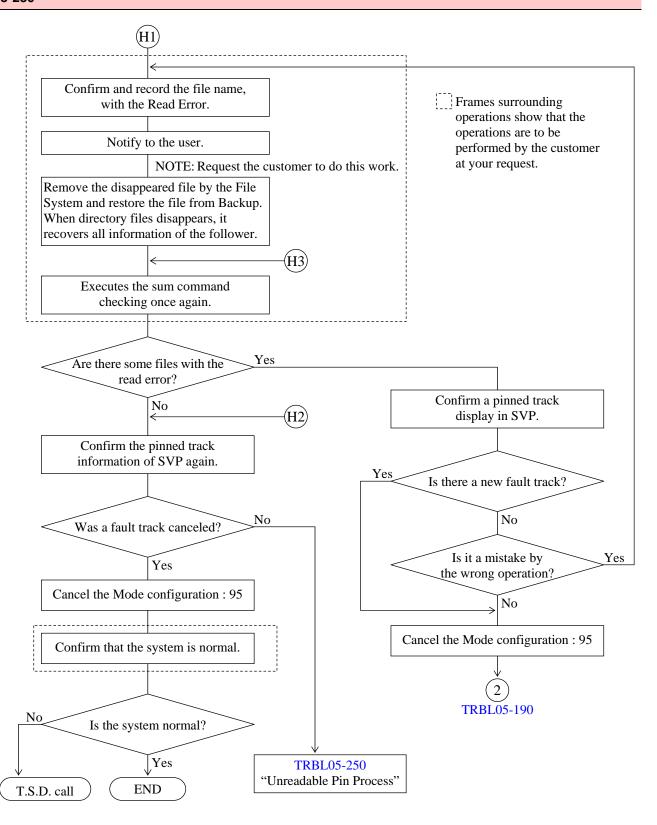
NOTE2: If Drive copy abnormally ended, the SIM REF. code is "453YXX" or "465YXX".

5.2.3.1 HP-UX Procedure

This chapter shows the pinned track erasing flow about the HP-UX system.

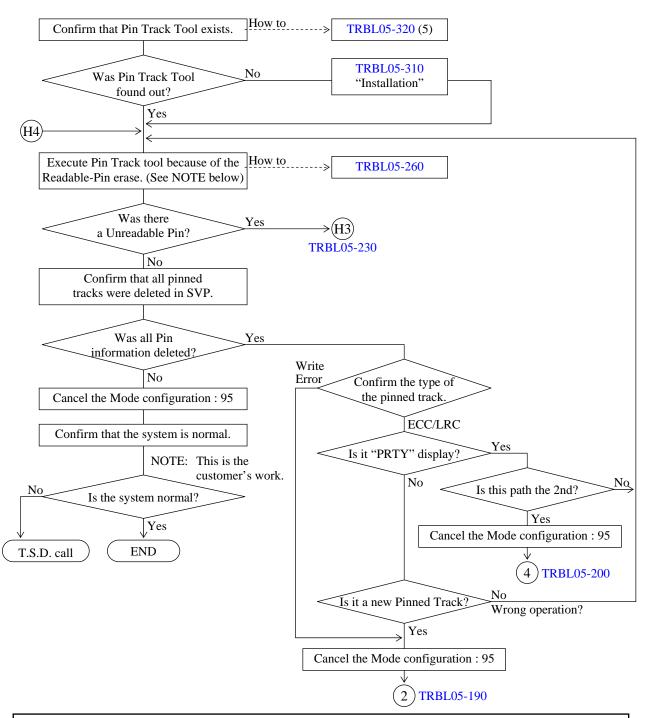


TRBL05-230



Readable Pin Process

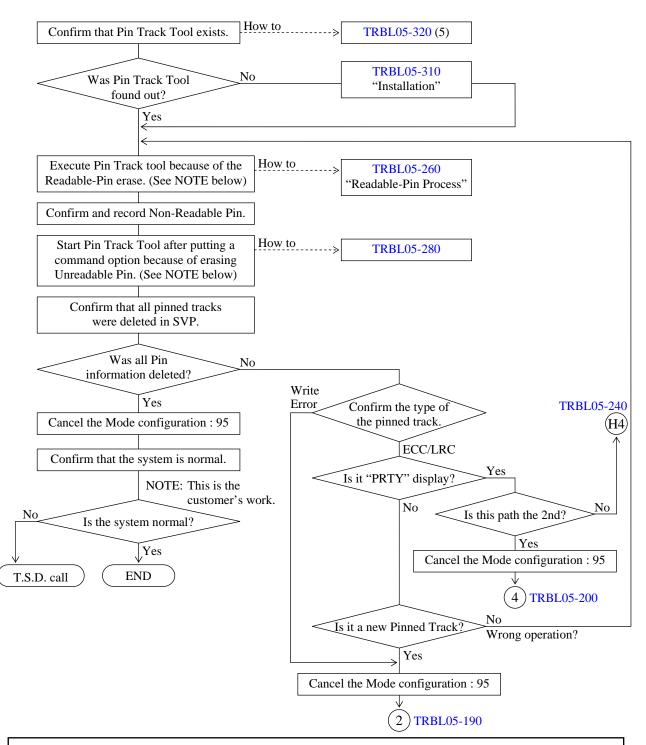
The erasing flow in the readable pinned track by Pin Track Tool is as follows.



NOTE: — On an SIM reported owing to a use of the Pin Track Tool —
When two or more Pins have been generated in the LBAs adjacent in the same LU, a generation of a new temporary Pin caused by the parity calculation performed in the Pin Track process may occur and a SIM may be reported. Since this Pin is erased at the same time when the erasing process of the Pin concerned completes, complete the SIM when the erasure of all the Pins by the Pin Track Tool is confirmed.

Unreadable Pin Process

The erasing flow in the unreadable pinned track by Pin Track Tool is as follows.



NOTE: — On an SIM reported owing to a use of the Pin Track Tool —
When two or more Pins have been generated in the LBAs adjacent in the same LU, a generation of a new temporary Pin caused by the parity calculation performed in the Pin Track process may occur and a SIM may be reported. Since this Pin is erased at the same time when the erasing process of the Pin concerned completes, complete the SIM when the erasure of all the Pins by the Pin Track Tool is confirmed.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-260

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

Operation of Readable-Pin Process (HP-UX)

This clause describes how to operate the Pin Track Tool to erase Readable-Pin.

<Operation>

(1) Move to the directory of the Pin Track Tool.

cd /usr/raidopen/pinhp

(2) Execute the Pin Track Tool without a command option.

./pinhp.exe -log (Put pass "./")

NOTE: This option "-log" collects detailed logs.

However, when processing LBA with (60)h length, the log becomes about 400KB.

Be careful of the available capacity of the disk. (refer to TRBL05-340)

(3) According to the question, input the appropriate information.

./pinhp.exe -log

Input Device Name -> /dev/rdsk/c3t0d0

Input Start LBA Data -> 180 \ _____ (Input the LBA number which was acquired from SVP.

Input End LBA Data \rightarrow 1df Do not input the LBA of the "slot:PRTY" display.)

Input Next LBA $?(Y/N) \rightarrow \mathbf{n}$ (When there still is a fault track in the same Device, it inputs "y".)

Input Next Device $?(Y/N) \rightarrow \mathbf{n}$ (When erasing different Device at the same time, it inputs "y".)

(4) Because an input data list is displayed, check the input information.

Device Name Start LBA End LBA

/dev/rdsk/c3t0d0 000000000000180 000000000001DF

Before you try to proceed the readable pin,

please check the pin information on SVP.

If the pin data has been cleared, please do not try to proceed the pin data again.

Do you want to do the process of the readable Pin?

Please input[y/n(default n)] : y

When the input is not collect, input "n" or just hit [Return] and then start the procedure again from (2).

Confirm whether or not a pinned track is deleted from the display of SVP.

When the data is already deleted, input "n" or just hit [return]. When canceled, input "y" and [return].

Rev.0 / Mar.2014 Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

TRBL05-270

(5) When the Pin is judged, Unreadable through the pin type judgment, go to TRBL05-280. Unreadable Pin:

Device Name Start LBA End LBA

/dev/rdsk/c3t0d0 000000000000180 000000000001DF

NOTE: This tool recognizes an inputted range as the 1 processing unit.

Therefore, the range where Unreadable pin exists is displayed in the inputted range.

(6) When Pin Track Tool ends, a log file (month -day -hour -minute -second .log) is made on the same directory. (Eg:0614200552.log)

As for the log file, the execution result of the Pin Track processing is recorded.

Confirm that processing was normally ended (there is "Pin Track Process completed" in the log file).

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-280

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

Operation of Unreadable Pin Process (HP-UX)

This clause describes how to operate the Pin Track Tool to erase Unreadable Pin. <Operation>

(1) Move to the directory of the Pin Track Tool.

cd /usr/raidopen/pinhp

(2) Put a command option and execute a pin recovery tool.

#./pinhp.exe -f -log (Put command option "-f")

NOTE: This option "-log" collects detailed logs.

However, when processing LBA with (60)h length, the log becomes about 400KB.

Be careful of the available capacity of the disk. (refer to TRBL05-340)

(3) According to the question, input the appropriate information.

./pinhp.exe -f -log

Input Device Name -> /dev/rdsk/c3t0d0

Input Start LBA Data-> **180** \ _____ Input the LBA number which was acquired from SVP.

Input End LBA Data \rightarrow **1df** Do not input the LBA of the "slot:PRTY" display.

Input Next LBA $?(Y/N) \rightarrow \mathbf{n}$ (when there still is a fault track in the same device, it input "y".)

Input Next Device $?(Y/N) \rightarrow \mathbf{n}$ (When erasing different device at the same time, it inputs "y".)

(4) Because an input data list is displayed, check the input information.

Device Name Start LBA End LBA

/dev/rdsk/c3t0d0 000000000000180 000000000001DF

Before you try to proceed the readable pin,

please check the pin information on SVP.

If the pin data has been cleared, please do not try to proceed the pin data again.

Do you want to do the process of the readable Pin?

Please input[y/n(default n)]: y

When the Input is not correct, input "n" or just hit [Return] and then start the procedure again From (2).

Confirm whether or not a pinned track is deleted from the display of SVP.

When the data is already deleted, input "n" or just hit [return]. When canceled, input "y" and [return].

DKC810I Hitachi Proprietary

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-290

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

(5) When Unreadable Pin is judged, the following message is displayed.

Unreadable Pin:

Device Name Start LBA End LBA

/dev/rdsk/c3t0d0 000000000000180 0000000000001DF

Do you want to do the process of the unreadable Pin?

WARNING! if you input 'y', Pin Blocks will be over written by '0'.

Please input[y/n(default n)]: y

When erasing by the "0" writing to Unreadable Pin, input "y" and [Return].

NOTE: This tool recognizes an inputted range as the 1 processing unit. Therefore, the range where Unreadable pin exists is displayed in the inputted range.

(6) When "y" is chosen by (5), the check message is displayed at once for every number of inputs. In case of plural number input, an operator can cancel the pin recovery processing for the device which you does not want to execute.

Unreadable Pin:

Device Name Start LBA End LBA

/dev/rdsk/c3t0d0 000000000000180 0000000000001DF

Do you want to do the process of the unreadable Pin?

WARNING! if you input 'y', Pin Blocks will be over written by '0'.

Please input[y/n(default n)]:y

Do you want to do the process of the unreadable Pin? (The strip of LBA is

000000000000180-0000000000001DF). (Y/N)

(7) When Pin Track Tool ends, a log file (month -day -hour -minute -second .log) is made on the same directory. (Eg:0614200552.log)

As for the log file, the execution result of the Pin Track processing is recorded.

Confirm that processing was normally ended (there is "Pin Track Process completed" in the log file).

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-300

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

How to read the Read Test for whole of a disk (HP-UX)

This chapter describes how to discover the Unreadable Pin on select device. This processing requires long time.

(1) Move to the directory of the Pin Track Tool.

cd /usr/raidopen/pinhp

(2) Execute the Pin Track Tool without a command option.

#./pinhp.exe -all (The "-f" will become invalid if this option is used.)

(3) According to the question, input the appropriate information.

./pinhp.exe –all

Input Device Name -> /dev/rdsk/c3t0d0

Input Next Device ?(Y/N) ->n (Recommend to "n") (When erasing different Device at the same time, it inputs "y")

(4) The Input data list is displayed.

Device Name	Start LBA	End LBA
/dev/rdsk/c3t0d0	0000000000000000	0000000001F2285

Show all domain of LAB which is specified device, and execute.

(5) When Pin Track Tool ends, a log file (month -day -hour -minute -second .log) is made on the same directory. (Eg:0614200552.log)

The log when two area (120-17F, 1E023F) of Unreadable Pin exists in specified DeviceName becomes as follows.

Input Device Name = /dev/rdsk/c3t0d0

ERROR: Read Error LBA 00000000000120-00000000000017F ERROR: Read Error LBA 000000000001E0-0000000000003F

NOTE: The area and number of Unreadable Pin listed by other factors here may differ from the area and number of Unreadable Pin displayed by SVP.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-310

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

Installation of Pin Track Tool (HP-UX)

This clause describes the installation of Pin Track Tool.

The preliminary preparation

If work logs need to be collected by the Pin Track Tool, confirm that there is the disk capacity for collecting in the work log.

An installation procedure from the tape device (Eg: 4mmDDS-DAT) is shown below.

Installation

- (1) Login to the host as "root".
- (2) Move to the install area by the "cd" command and make a directory "raidopen".

cd /usr (Eg: Move to the "/usr")

mkdir raidopen (Eg: Make the directory "raidopen")

(3) Move to the created directory and copy a file from the tape by the "tar" command.

cd raidopen (Eg: Move to the "raidopen")

-In case of DDS-DAT-(Devide Name depends on each host)

mt -t /dev/rmt/0m rew (Eg: Rewing a tape)

tar -xvf /dev/rmt/0m (Eg: copy a file from the tape.)
tar -xvf ./pinhpXX.tar (Eg: copy the tar file for HP-UX)

-In case of CD-ROM-(Devide Name depends on each host)

mount -F cdfs -o cdcase /dev/dsk/c2t6d0 SD CDROM (Eg: mount the CD-ROM)

tar -xvf /SD_CDROM/program/ment/pintrack/hp_ux/pinhpXX.tar

(Eg: copy a file from the CD-ROM.)

(4) After the thawing is complete, confirm a file name.

cd ./pinhp (Eg: Move to the directory made by the thawing.)

ls -l (Eg: Display a file list.)

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-320

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

(5) Refer to the contents of "Ver-Rev.txt" file and confirm each file size of the list.

more /usr/raidopen/pinhp/Ver-Rev.txt display contents of the file

```
HITACHI RAID storage system PinTrackTool for HP-UX

Ver XX-YY-/Z (Revision ID)

All right reserved, Copyright (c) 1999,2014, Hitachi Ltd.

File size (Bytes) pinhp.exe (Module ID)

File size (Bytes) showrelh.exe (Module ID)
```

Confirm that the contents of "Ver-Rev.txt" and a list of the "ls -l" command are identical.

File preservation and the way of removing Pin Track Tool

- Log-File preservation
- (1) Compress the log file made by the pin recovery.

```
# cd /usr/raidopen/pinhp (Eg: Move to the working directory.)
# mkdir ./log (Eg: Make to the directory for Log-file.)
```

mv *.log ./log (Eg: Move logfiles to the directory for Log-file.)

tar -cvf pinlog.tar ./log (Eg: Make the tar file from logdir.)
compress pinlog.tar (Eg: Compress the "pinlog.tar" file.)

(2) Preserve the log file at the tape and rewind it.

```
# tar -cvf /dev/rmt/0m pinlog.tar.Z (Eg: Preserve log file)
# mt -t /dev/rmt/0m rew (Eg: rewind the tape)
```

The way of removing Pin Track Tool

The removal of the Pin Track Tool deletes all bottoms of the installed directory.

```
# cd / (Eg: Move to the root directory.)
```

#\rm -r /usr/raidopen/pinhp* (Eg: Deletes all bottoms of the installed directory)

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

The acquisition of the device information (HP-UX)

This chapter describes the tool "showrel" to acquire the device information.

(1) Move to the installed directory.

cd /usr/raidopen/pinhp

(2) Input commands as follows.

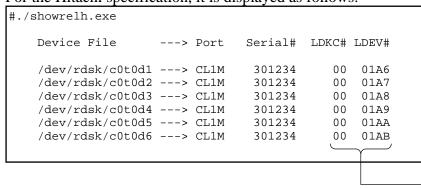
./showrelh.exe

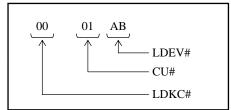
(Put the path "./")

<Display Example>

The display depends on the specification of the storage system.

For the Hitachi specification, it is displayed as follows.





For the OEM specification, it is displayed as follows.

The point of view of LDKC:CU:LDEV# is the same.

```
#./showrelh.exe
   Device File
                    ---> Port
                                Serial# LDKC# LDEV#
    /dev/rdsk/c7t2d1 ---> CL2E
                               00310028
                                            00 03C0
    /dev/rdsk/c7t2d2 ---> CL2E
                               00310028
                                            00 03C1
                                            00 03C2
    /dev/rdsk/c7t2d3 ---> CL2E
                               00310028
    /dev/rdsk/c7t2d4 ---> CL2E
                                            00 03C3
                               00310028
    /dev/rdsk/c7t2d5 ---> CL2E
                               00310028
                                            00 03C4
    /dev/rdsk/c7t2d6 ---> CL2E
                               00310028
                                            00 03C5
```

"LDEV#" is composed of the CU number and the LDEV number. Confirm LDKC#, CU# and LDEV# with the pinned track displayed in SVP and specify a clearing device file. Device File name is input information to Pin Track Tool.

(Example)

Above mentioned "For the Hitachi specification",

LDKC# = 00, LDEV# = 01AB \rightarrow Device File = $\frac{\text{dev}}{\text{rdsk}} \cdot c0t0d6$

NOTE: In the case of HP-UX, If there is LDEV that is non given LUN#, LDKC#= 00 / LDEV#= 159F or LDKC#= FF / LDEV#= FFFF are displayed to LUN# non-given a definition by showrelh.exe.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-340

The way of collecting detailed information (HP-UX)

It is possible to collect the detailed information of the erasing process when putting a command option to Pin Track Tool and starting the process.

./ pinhp.exe (-f) -log

Like the following, it outputs read data and write data in the log file.

<Display Example>

Unreadable LBA is displayed by "*".

```
Input Device Name = /dev/rdsk/c1t0d0
Input Start LBA = 000000000000180
Input End LBA = 0000000000001DF Unreadable data!
Execute LBA!
Read Data: Top Pin No = 0000000000000180
00000000: ** ** ** ** ** ** ** ** ** **
00000010: **
00000020: ** ** ** ** ** ** ** ** ** ** **
 00000030: ** ** ** ** ** ** ** ** ** ** **
00000040: ** ** ** ** ** **
                            NOTE: In the processed range, log
Read Data: Top Pin No=000000000000181
                              information is recorded.
Read Data: Top Pin No=000000000000182
Read Data: Top Pin No=0000000000000183
                            This log is executing read
                            processing by the 1 LBA unit.
Read Data: Top Pin No=0000000000001DF
Read Data (After Writing): Top Pin No=00000000000001DF
                            It is indicated data which is read,
written, and compared.
 Write Data: Top Pin No=000000000000180
This log shows to have processed all
 ranges in the writing at once.
 /dev/rdsk/c1t0d0, Start LBA=00000000000000000000000 End LBA=0000000000000DF Pin Track Process
completed!!
```

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

The way of examining Mount Point which has a Pinned Track (HP-UX)

NOTE: As for the following work, request a system administrator to operate.

- (1) Input the "vgdisplay" command and to display a Volume Group list. # vgdisplay -v
- (2) Specify "lvol(/dev/vgx/lvolx)" which is composed of Physical Volume(cxtxdx) with the Pinned Track.

<Display Example> --- Volume groups ---VG Name /dev/vg11 VG Write Access read/write Volume Group Name VG Status available 255 Max LV Cur LV 1 1 Open LV Max PV 16 Cur PV 4 Act. PV 4 Max PE per PV 1016 VGDA 8 PE Size (Mbytes) 4 Total PE 2344 2000 Alloc PE Free PE 344 Total PVG 0 Total Spare PVs Total Spare PVs in use "/dev/vgl1/lvol1" is made in a Volume Group ("/dev/vgl1") --- Logical volumes ---LV Name /dev/vg11/lvol1 LV Status available/syncd LV Size (Mbytes) 8000 Current LE 2000 Allocated PE 2000 Used PV 4 --- Physical volumes ---PV Name /dev/dsk/c9t1d0 PV Status available Total PE 586 Free PE 0 PV(cxtxdx) which composes volume /dev/dsk/c9t1d1 PV Name group "/dev/vgl1" is displayed. PV Status available Total PE 586 Free PE PV Name /dev/dsk/c9t1d2 available PV Status Total PE 586 Free PE 0 PV Name /dev/dsk/c9t1d3 PV Status available Total PE 586 344 Free PE

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-360

(3) Check if "./etc/fstab" is displayed. #cat /etc/fstab

(4) Specify all the mount points for PV which was confirmed in "vgdisplay".

<Display Example>

```
# System /etc/fstab file. Static information about the file systems
# See fstab(4) and sam(1M) for further details on configuring devices.
/dev/vg00/lvol3 / vxfs delaylog 0 1
/dev/vg00/lvol1 / stand hfs defaults 0 1
/dev/vg00/lvol4 / tmp vxfs delaylog 0 2
/dev/vg00/lvol5 / home vxfs delaylog 0 2
/dev/vg00/lvol6 / opt vxfs delaylog 0 2
/dev/vg00/lvol7 / usr vxfs delaylog 0 2
/dev/vg00/lvol8 / var vxfs delaylog 0 2
/dev/vg00/lvol10 / home1 vxfs rw,suid,nolargefiles,delaylog,datainlog 0 2
/dev/vg11/lvol1 / open3 vxfs delaylog 0 4

mount point (in bold)
```

(5) Input the "bdf" command and confirm the mount point. #bdf

<Display Example>

Bisping Emmipres					
Filesystem	kbytes	used	avail	%used	Mounted on
/dev/vg00/lvol3	86016	26109	56212	32%	/
/dev/vg00/lvol1	67733	31932	29027	52%	/stand
/dev/vg00/lvol8	512000	159876	331072	33%	/var
/dev/vg00/lvol7	614400	428475	174362	71%	/usr
/dev/vg00/lvol4	32768	1131	29663	4%	/tmp
/dev/vg00/lvol6	258048	102174	146171	41%	/opt
/dev/vg00/lvol10	1544192	2858	1445062	0%	/home1
/dev/vg00/lvol5	20480	6078	13595	31%	/home
/dev/vg11/lvol1	8192000	3149893	4726982	40%	/open3

(6) Determine Mount Point to check by the "sum" command.

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-370

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

The attention item for HP-UX

This clause explains notes when using Pin Track Tool.

The notes for use of the Pin Track Tool

- (1) Specify the start and end LBAs ^(*1) in SVP for the setting range of Pin Track Tool. 1 slot is composed of 96 LBAs ((60)h LBA).
 - *1: One slot of OPEN-VOL is composed of 96LBAs except for OPEN-V and 512LBAs for OPEN-V.
- (2) Pin Track Tool is not a tool to recover data. Therefore, when Unreadable Pin occurs, it is necessary to be restored using the backup data of the customer.
- (3) There is a case that O/S patch is prepared which has an influence to the fault track read operation. For HP Server which has Fibre Interface, the following patch is necessary.
 - PHSS_18326 Fibre Channel Mass Storage Driver Patch. (HP-UX10.2)
 - PHSS_18652 Fibre Channel Mass Storage Driver Patch. (HP-UX11.0)
 - or XSWGR1100 HP-UX General Release Patches, June 2001 XSWHWCR1100 HP-UX Hardware Enablement and Critical Patches, June 2001 : (HP-UX11.0)
 - PHCO_18217 Cumulative SAM/ObAM Patch. (HP-UX10.2)
 - PHKL_16751 SIG_IGN/SIGCLD,LVM,JFS,PCI/SCSI cumulative patch. (HP-UX10.2)

The patch information of OS may change at frequent intervals. Confirm the latest information. Request the system administrator to install patch.

When the system administrator judges this action may impact on the system, cancel the Mode Configuration:95 and return to TRBL05-200 ④.

- (4) When it isn't possible to use Pin Track Tool, use the LDEV Format to clear.
- (5) Because HP-UX executing retry to read the pinned track where it isn't possible to read many times, It sometimes takes 12 hours maximum about processing 1 slot.

The erasing process of Pinned Track on the DB (HP-UX, Solaris)

DB has two types of the Pinned Track erasing.

(1) Raw device-based Data Base type:

Without passing O/S, by the physical level, the data base soft wear manages a disk. (It is managed by the LBA unit on the physical level.)

The device of local type isn't mounted on File System. Then, it has a powerful backup function.

(2) File system-based Data Base type:

Mounted an File System.

In case of (2), it is necessary to be restored from the backup data.

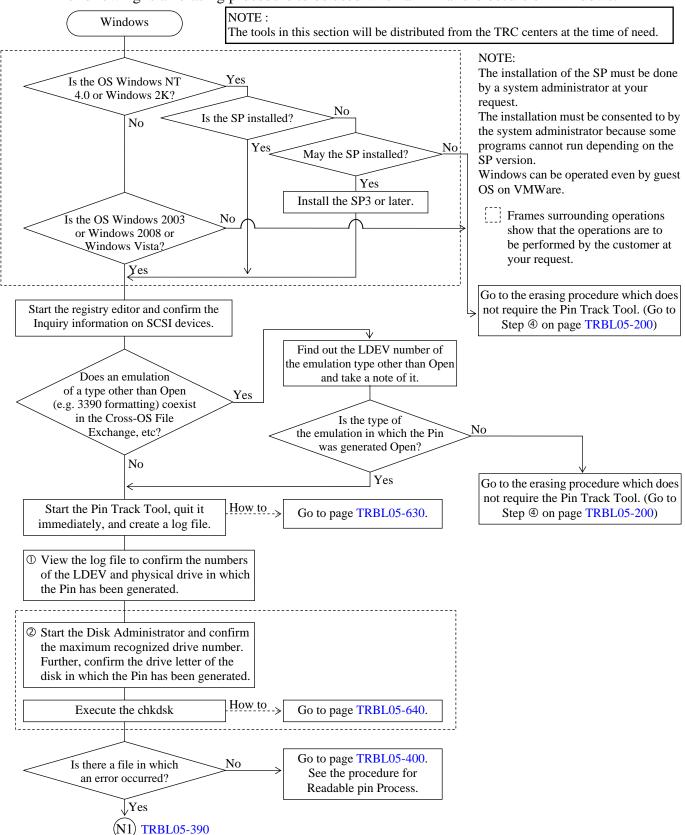
In case of (1), it be restored by the backup-restore feature of the DBMS.

If a pin is left after the data recovers, erase a pin by the Pin Track Tool.

The most important thing is to execute the recovery function in the DB software.

5.2.3.2 Procedure on Windows

• The following is an erasing procedure to be used when a Pin failure occurs on Windows.



Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-390

Frames surrounding operations show that the

operations are to be performed by the customer

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

at your request.

NOTICE:

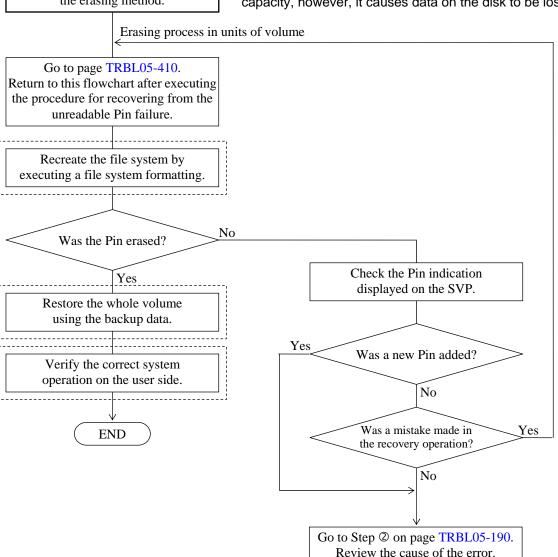
Confirm the name of the file (including the directory) in which the error occurred.

Contact the user to obtain consent to the erasing method.

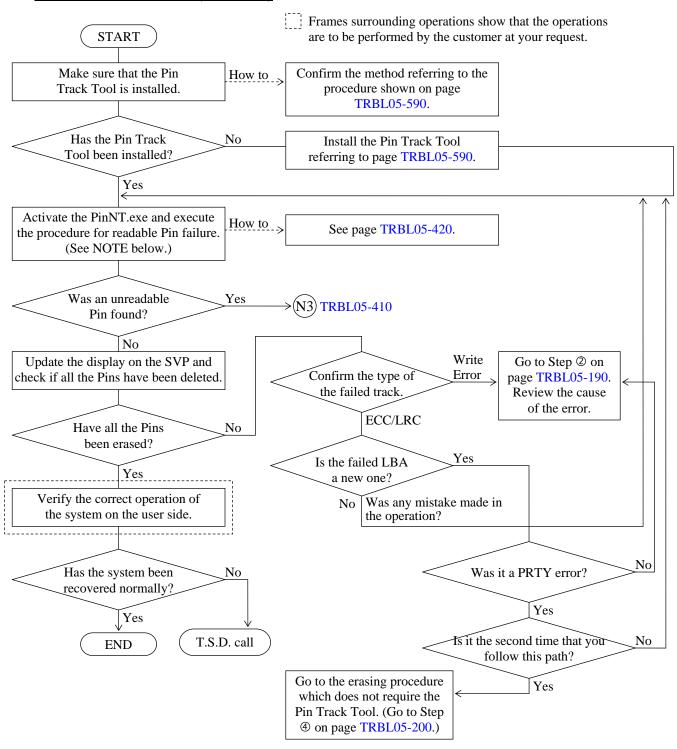
When the Chkdsk is executed, the sector (equivalent to one LBA) with a Pin failure is treated as a faulty sector.

Therefore, the effective capacity is decreased because the sector is treated as an unusable one under the control of Windows even after the Pin information is cleared by the Pin Track Tool.

Only the formatting of the disk concerned can recover the effective capacity, however, it causes data on the disk to be lost.



Readable Pin Process (Windows)

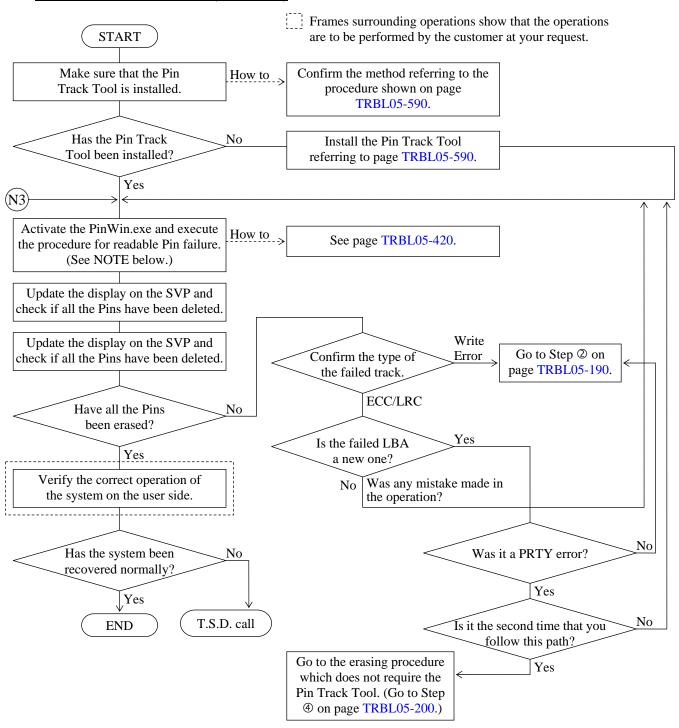


NOTE: — On an SIM reported owing to a use of the Pin Track Tool —

When two or more Pins have been generated in the LBAs adjacent in the same LU, a generation of a new temporary Pin caused by the parity calculation performed in the Pin Track process may occur and an SIM may be reported. Since this Pin is erased at the same time when the erasing process of the Pin concerned completes, complete the SIM when the erasure of all the Pins by the Pin Track Tool is confirmed.

TRBL05-410

Unreadable Pin Process (Windows)



NOTE: — On an SIM reported owing to a use of the Pin Track Tool —

When two or more Pins have been generated in the LBAs adjacent in the same LU, a generation of a new temporary Pin caused by the parity calculation performed in the Pin Track process may occur and an SIM may be reported. Since this Pin is erased at the same time when the erasing process of the Pin concerned completes, complete the SIM when it is confirmed that all the Pins have been erased by the Pin Track Tool.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-420

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

Operation of Readable Pin Process (Windows)

The following explains how to operate the Pin Track Tool for erasing a readable Pin.

The procedure for erasing a readable Pin is to be firstly applied to all types of Pins.

A Pin which cannot be erased by the readable Pin erasing process will be erased by a process which treats it as an unreadable Pin.

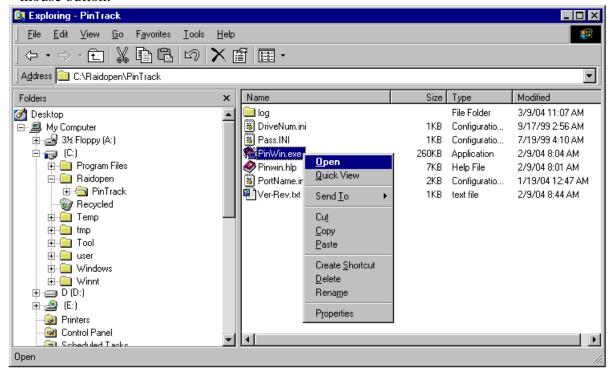
NOTE: — On an SIM reported owing to a use of the Pin Track Tool —

When two or more Pins have been generated in the LBAs adjacent in the same LU, a generation of a new temporary Pin caused by the parity calculation performed in the Pin Track process may occur and an SIM may be reported.

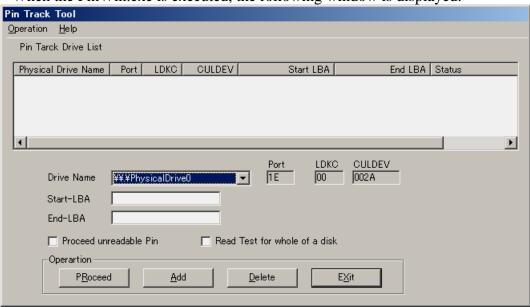
Since this Pin is erased at the same time when the erasing process of the Pin concerned completes, complete the SIM when it is confirmed that all the Pins have been erased by the Pin Track Tool.

(1) Activate the PinWin.exe

• Execute the PinWin.exe in the folder in which the tool is installed after activating it by selecting "Open" by clicking it with the right mouse button or double-clicking it with the left mouse button.



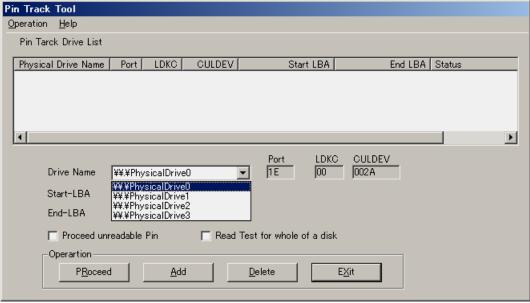
• When the PinWin.exe is executed, the following window is displayed.



(2) Input the information, which has been got from the SVP, on the device from which the Pin is to be erased.

NOTE: You can enter two or more Pins in order.

- ① Find a name of a drive to which the LDEV in which the Pin has been generated is allocated.
 - Select a physical drive for which the LDEV number of the device in which the Pin has been generated is displayed using an acquired port number (e.g. 1J for CL1J).

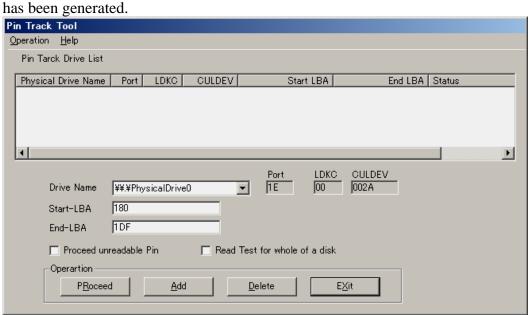


NOTE: The drive names are not sorted in order of the drive numbers.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-440

Input the Start LBA and End LBA of the drive input in Step ① to specify the range where the Pin



• When specifying the LBAs, the allowable range for them is as follows.

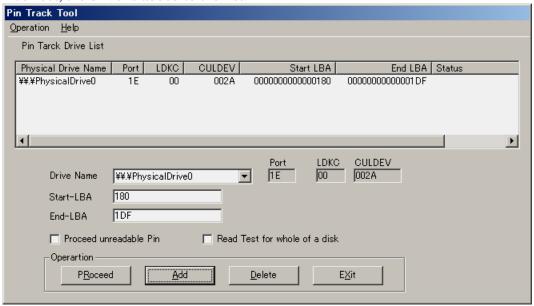
 $Other \ than \ OPEN-V \qquad [End \ LBA - Start \ LBA \leq 0x5F]$

OPEN-V [End LBA - Start LBA \leq 0x1FF]

Input the range of the 0x5F (except for OPEN-V) or 0x1FF (OPEN-V) shown on the SVP.

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

- (3) Add the input device to the Pin Track Device List.
 - When the "Add" button is clicked after making sure that the selected and input items are correct, the drive is added to the list.



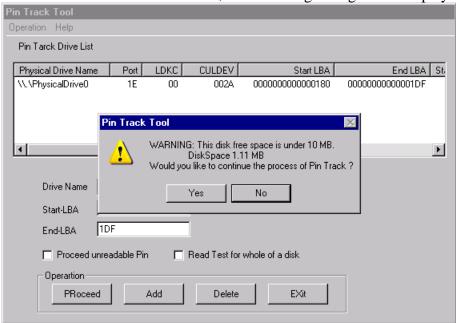
- (4) Erase the readable Pin.
 - Check if the input information is correct. When correcting it, select the device and input the LBA over again by selecting the item concerned from the list and clicking the "Delete" button.
 - When you want to add two or more devices, you can do it by repeating the input. When they are added, the Pin erasing process is applied to them in an ascending order of the listing.

NOTE: Since the readable Pin is to be erased here, do not check off the check box of the Unreadable PIN.

• When no wrong input is found, click the "PRoceed" button to erase the readable Pin.

When the "PRoceed" button is clicked, the program checks whether a free area for outputting a log is ensured in the current drive in which the Pin Track Tool is installed.

If the free area is less than 10 MB, the following dialog box is displayed to warn it.



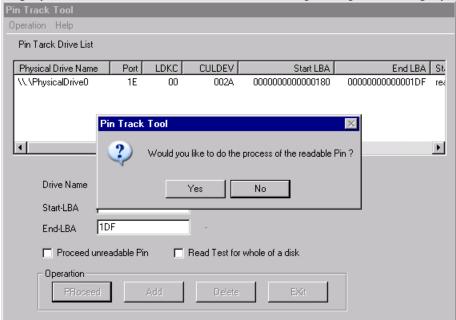
The current free area on the disk is displayed in the dialog box. A free area of approximately 400KB is required for (60)h length SLOT to erase a Pin. When the necessary free area is provided, the processing can be continued.

NOTE: Install the program in a drive in which the enough free area can be ensured.

When "Yes" is selected, the processing is continued. If the disk capacity is less than that required for the log, as large log file as can be accommodated is acquired. Normally, select "Yes" only when the free area is enough.

When "No" is selected, the routine is returned to the main window. If the option has been checked off, it is cancelled. Ensure a free area in the drive, put the collected log file in order, or install the program in another drive.

When the "PRoceed" button is clicked to continue the processing, status of each drive is displayed in the main window and the following dialog box is displayed.



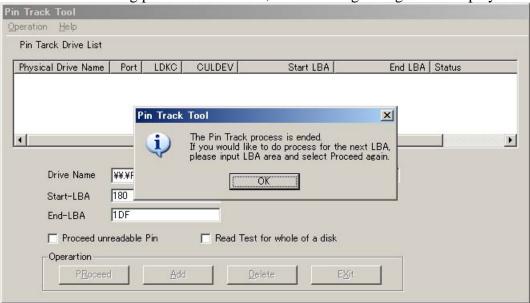
When "readable-pin" is displayed in the "Status" column, it shows that the slot is a readable Pin. When "Unreadable-pin" is displayed in the "Status" column, it shows that the slot is an unreadable Pin.

- Update the display on the SVP before executing the erasing process and check if the Pin of the input device has been erased.
 - When the Pin has already been erased, click the "No" button to return to the main window. When the Pin has not been erased, click the "Yes" button to erase the readable Pin.

TRBL05-480

(5) The Pin erasing process is executed.

When the Pin erasing process is executed, the following dialog box is displayed.



When the Pin erasing process completes normally, the items are deleted from the list automatically. Confirm the execution result of the Pin erasing process in the log file.

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-490

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

• Open the PinTrack.log file in the folder in which the tool is installed by using a memo pad, etc.

```
2000/03/27 13:22:16 Pin Track Tool started.
\\.\PhysicalDrive0
            No information
\\.\PhysicalDrivel
            Product Serial R500 50330036 0042
            Port Number
                    1E
            LDKC Number
            LDEV Number
                     002A
            Disk Capacity 2461040640 bytes
            Maximum LBA 00000000049583F
\\.\PhysicalDrive2
\\.\PhysicalDrive3
\\.\PhysicalDrive4
\\.\PhysicalDrive9
            Product Serial R500 50330036 0023
            Port Number
                     2 F
            LDKC Number
                     00
            LDEV Number
                     0017
            Disk Capacity 2461040640 bytes
            Maximum LBA
                     000000000049583F
Read Data: Top Pin No=0000000000000180
 0000BFE0:00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 3E BC 12 E6
 Read Data (After Writing): Top Pin No=000000000000180
 0000BFE0:00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 3E BC 12 E6
 Write Data: Top Pin No=000000000000180
 0000BFE0:00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 3E BC 12 E6
 2000/03/27 13:23:13
\\.\PhysicalDrive9,Start LBA=000000000000180,End LBA=000000000001DF,The Pin Track
process is completed.
2000/03/27 13:23:48 Pin Track Tool is exited.
```

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

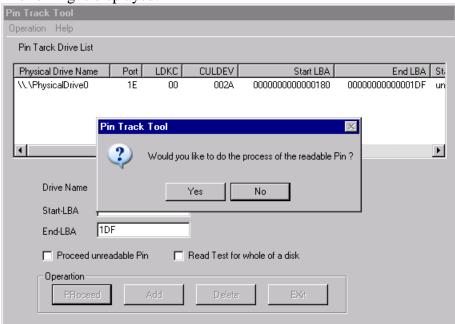
TRBL05-500

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

The log file is backed up to the log folder under the directory in which the tool is installed with a name given as "PinTrack-year-month-date-hours-minutes-seconds.log".

- When "The Pin Track process is completed." is displayed in the log file, it means that the Pin has been erased. View the display on the SVP to confirm that the Pin has been erased.
- (6) When you erase another readable Pin successively, repeat the procedure from Step (2).
 - When an unreadable Pin exists in the device added to the list.

 When the "PRoceed" button is pressed in the case where an unreadable Pin exists in the list, the following is displayed.



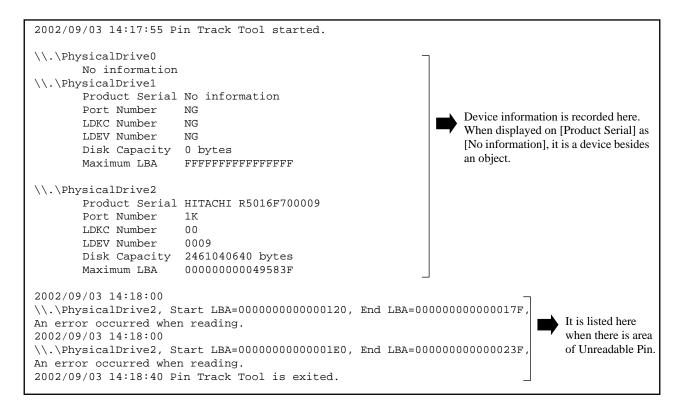
"unreadable" is displayed in the "Status" column showing that the slot is an unreadable Pin. In this case, the Pin is not erased even if the procedure for erasing a readable Pin is executed and the device is not deleted from the list as follows.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-510

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

The log when two area (120-17F, 1E023F) of Unreadable Pin exists in specified Drive Name (PhysicalDrive2) becomes as follows.



Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-520

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.



When the status is changed to "read error" and the device remains in the list, go to Subsection TRBL05-530, "Operation of Unreadable Pin Process".

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-530

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

Operation of Unreadable Pin Process (Windows)

The following explains how to operate the Pin Track Tool for erasing an unreadable Pin. Since the procedure for erasing a readable Pin is to be applied to all the Pins first,

follow the procedure below after executing the procedure given in Subsection TRBL05-420, "Operation of Readable Pin Process".

NOTE: — On an SIM reported owing to a use of the Pin Track tool —

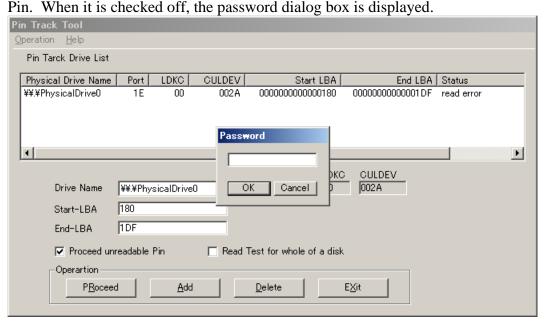
When two or more Pins have been generated in the LBAs adjacent in the same LU, a generation of a new temporary Pin caused by the parity calculation performed in the Pin Track process may occur and an SIM may be reported.

Since this Pin is erased at the same time when the erasing process of the Pin concerned completes, complete the SIM when it is confirmed that all the Pins have been erased by the Pin Track Tool.

- (1) When the log file (PinTrack.log) is open, close it.
- (2) Reconfirm the device, which was not deleted from the list when the readable Pin erasing process was executed, and the display on the SVP.
- (3) Specify the unreadable Pin erasing process.

 After confirming that the input information is correct, check off the check box of the Unreadable

 Pin When it is should off the password dialog how is displayed.



The password is to be obtained from the Technical Support Division. Without the password, the unreadable Pin cannot be erased.

Input the password and click the "OK" button.

When the correct password is input, the check box is checked off.

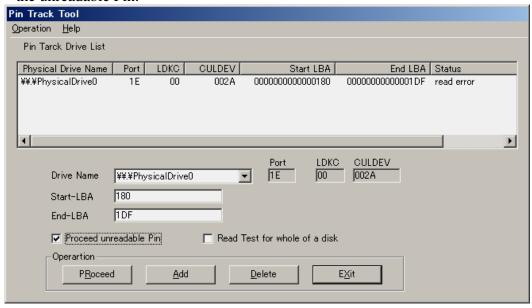
If the box is not checked off although the correct password has been input, copy the Pass.INI file in the folder in which the tool is installed from the media for installation again.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-540

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

- (3) Erase the unreadable Pin.
 - Check off the check box. When no wrong input is found, click the "PRoceed" button to erase the unreadable Pin.



When the "PRoceed" button is clicked, the program checks whether a free area for outputting a log is ensured in the current drive in which the Pin Track Tool is installed.

If the free area is less than 10 MB, the following dialog box is displayed to warn it.



The current free area on the disk is displayed in the dialog box. A free area of approximately 400KB is required for (60)h length SLOT to erase a Pin. When the necessary free area is provided, the processing can be continued.

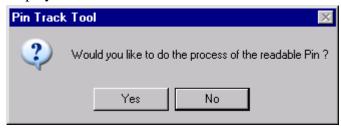
NOTE: Install the program in a drive in which the enough free area can be ensured.

When "Yes" is selected, the processing is continued. If the disk capacity is less than that required for the log, as large log file as can be accommodated is acquired. Normally, select "Yes" only when the free area is enough.

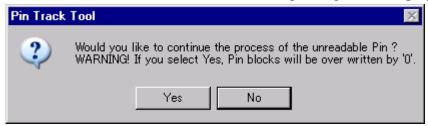
When "No" is selected, the routine is returned to the main window. If the option has been checked off, it is cancelled. Ensure a free area in the drive, put the collected log file in order, or install the program in another drive.

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

When the "PRoceed" button is clicked to continue the processing, the following dialog box is displayed.

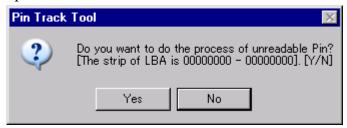


Try to erase the readable Pin first. When the readable Pin Track process cannot be executed when the "Yes" is clicked here, the following dialog box is displayed.



A dialog box for confirming whether to execute the unreadable Pin Track process is displayed. Execution of the unreadable Pin Track process must be decided carefully because it overwrites the Pin blocks with "0" data.

In case of the unreadable pin erasing operation, Confirmation of execution is demanded every contents in the pin track drive list. Operator can select execution or cancellation for each operation.



Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

• Update the display on the SVP before executing the unreadable Pin Track process and check if the Pin of the input device has been erased. When the Pin has already been erased, click the "No" button to return to the main window.

• When the Pin has not been erased, click the "Yes" button to erase the unreadable Pin. When the "Yes" button is clicked, the unreadable Pin Track process is executed and the following window is displayed.



- (4) Check the log of the Pin Track Tool.
 - Open the PinTrack.log file in the folder in which the tool is installed by using a memo pad, etc. The log file is backed up to the log folder under the directory in which the tool is installed with a name given as "PinTrack-year-month-date-hours-minutes-seconds.log".
 - When "Pin Track process is completed" is displayed in the log file, it means that the Pin has been erased.
 - View the display on the SVP to confirm that the Pin has been erased.
- (5) When you proceed another Pin successively, repeat the "Operation of Readable Pin Process" in TRBL05-420.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-570

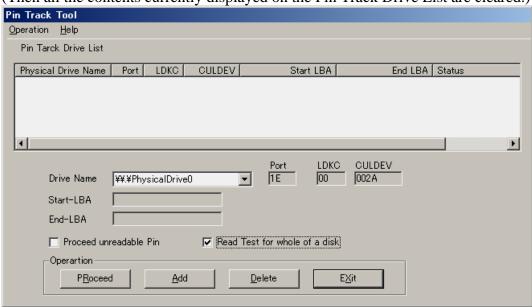
Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

How to Read Test for whole of a disk (Windows)

This chapter describes how to discover the Unreadable Pin on select device. This processing requires long time.

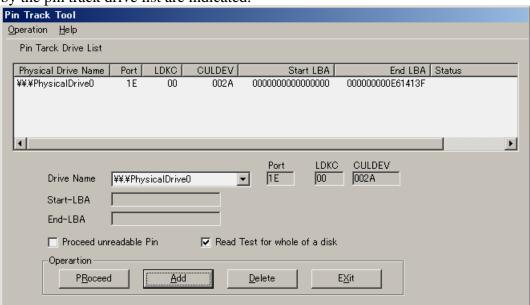
(1) If a check box "Read Test for whole of a disk" is clicked, It becomes impossible to input "Start LBA" and "End LBA".

(Then all the contents currently displayed on the Pin Track Drive List are cleared.)



TRBL05-580

(2) Select device name and click the add button, Drive and all domain of LBA which are specified by the pin track drive list are indicated.



(3) All LBA in the selected device is started by clicking "PRoceed" button. (This function is only reading and writing is not performed.)

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

TRBL05-590

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

Installation of Pin Track Tool (Windows)

NOTE: Perform the installation only when it is required.

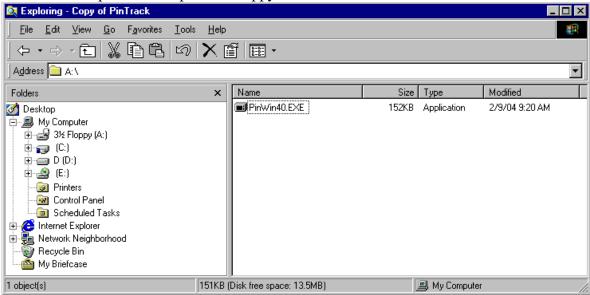
<Preparation>

The Pin Track Tool is provided being contained in one 3.5-inch floppy disk or CD-ROM. A free area of more than 10 MB is required on the disk on which the program is to be installed as the area for collecting a log. The size of the log file is approximately 400 KB per one erasing process for (60)h length SLOT. The log is collected in the log folder under the folder in which the tool is to be installed each time the Pin erasing process completes.

Since the log is collected after the processing, prepare an empty floppy disk.

<Copying from floppy disk to local disk>

- (1) Logon to the Windows system as administrator permission.
- (2) Execute the Explorer, and open the Floppy disk or CD-ROM



For CD-ROM, the path is different.

(Example : X:\Program\Ment\PINTRACK\WIN\)

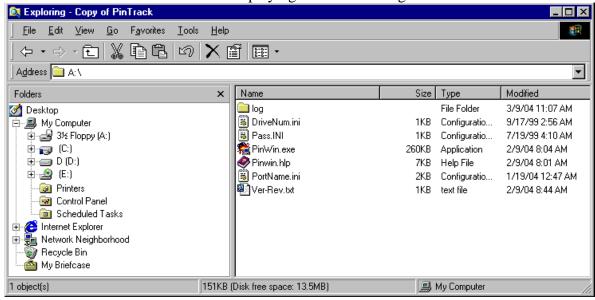
(3) When executing the PinWinxx.exe., the following dialog is displayed.



(4) If you specify an extracting folder and click the [OK] button, Pin Track Tool are extracted by itself.

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

• Check the file name and file size displaying on the following windows.



The execution file name is PinWin.exe. When the PinWin.exe is executed, a log file, PinTrack.log, is created in the folder in which the tool has been installed. When the program is quit, the log file is copied to the log folder with a name given as

"PinTrack-year-month-date-hours-minutes-seconds.log".

Log file
 In the log file, only the head LBA of Read/Write data of specified device is recorded. It can also record Read/Write data of all the LBAs.

NOTE: When logs of all the LBAs are recorded, a log file of approximately 400 KB is created for (60)h length SLOT for each erasing process in the list. Therefore, be careful of the free capacity on the disk on which the tool is installed.

When a log of only the head LBA is recorded, open the DriveNum.ini file in the folder in which the tool is installed and replace "LogMode=1" with "LogMode=0".

DKC810I Hitachi Proprietary

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-610

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

Data in the log file is recorded in the format shown below.

```
2000/03/27 13:22:16 Pin Track Tool started
\\.\PhysicalDrive0
                No information
\\.\PhysicalDrive1
                Product Serial R500 50330036 0042
                Port Number
                           1E
                LDKC Number
                           0.0
                LDEV Number 002A
                Disk Capacity 2461040640 bytes
                Maximum LBA 00000000049583F
2000/03/27 13:23:13
\\.\PhysicalDrive1,Start LBA=00000000000180, LBA=000000000001DF,An error occurred when
reading.
Read Data: Top Pin No=0000000000000180
 00000000:** ** ** ** ** ** ** **
 00000010:** ** ** ** ** ** ** ** ** ** **
 00000020:** ** ** ** ** ** ** ** **
 0000BFE0:** ** ** ** ** ** ** ** ** **
 0000BFF0:** ** ** ** ** ** ** ** ** ** **
Read Data: Top Pin No=0000000000000181
Read Data: Top Pin No=000000000000182
Read Data: Top Pin No=00000000000001DF
 0000BFE0:** ** ** ** ** ** ** ** ** ** ** ** **
 0000BFF0:** ** ** ** ** ** ** ** ** ** **
Write Data: Top Pin No=000000000000180
 2000/03/27 13:24:13
\\.\PhysicalDrive9,Start LBA=000000000000180,End LBA=000000000001DF,The Pin Track
process is completed.
2000/03/27 13:24:48 Pin Track Tool is exited.
```

[Displayed items]

Time when the program was started: Date and time are indicated.

SCSI device information : Port No., LDKC No., LDEV No., disk capacity, maximum

LBA, etc. are displayed.

: Readable Pins in a specified LBA range are displayed in the Read log

lump. Unreadable Pins are displayed for each LBA. Each

unreadable Pin is recorded with an asterisk (*).

Write log : Pins in a specified LBA range are displayed in the lump.

Entered information : Selected devices, Start LBA, and End LBA are displayed.

Error information : When a Pin is unreadable, "read error" is displayed. Besides,

when an error occurs in the program, details of it are displayed.

: Date and time are displayed. Time when the program is quit

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-620

Log file saving and de-installation

NOTE: Perform the de-installation only when it is required.

<Saving of log file>

- (1) Save the log file which executed Pin Track Tool.

 Execute Explorer to open the folder in which the tool is installed.
- (2) Insert the empty floppy disk prepared for the log collection and copy the whole log directory to the floppy disk.
- (3) Delete the files under the log directory if they are not necessary.

<De-installation of Pin Track Tool>

To uninstall the Pin Track Tool, delete all the files concerned by deleting the whole PinTrack folder in which the tool is installed.

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-630

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

Acquisition of disk information

You can confirm information of the disk connected to windows by viewing the log file.

- (1) Execute the PinWin.exe.
- (2) When the window is displayed, open the PinTrack.log file.
- (3) A list of the connected devices is recorded in the file.

<Log file>

- For disks other than the storage system, "No Information" is displayed.
- Since the disk information is acquired using the OS function, the recording order in the log may vary.

< Variation of device information >

The display in the log file varies depending on the storage system configuration.

```
For the HITACHI Specification
\\.\PhysicalDrive14
Product Serial HITACHI 5033ABE0108
Port Number 2N
LDKC Number 00
LDEV Number 0108
Disk Capacity 2461040640 bytes
Maximum LBA 000000000049583F
```

The "LDEV Number" is the intact "Product Serial" expressed in hexadecimal.

```
For the OEM Specification
\\.\PhysicalDrive13
Product Serial R500 50315038 0012
Port Number 1J
LDKC Number 00
LDEV Number 000C
Disk Capacity 1874903040 bytes
Maximum LBA 000000000037E05F
```

The "LDEV Number" is the "Product Serial" converted from hexadecimal to decimal.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-640

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

Identification of files affected by Pin failure

When a drive letter possible to have a Pin failure is found, identify files affected by the failure using the chkdsk command.

- (1) Execute Explorer, click the drive concerned by the right mouse button, and display the property.
- (2) Open the tool tab and click "Check" in the "Error Check".
- (3) Check off all the check disk options and click the "Start" button.
- (4) When the dialog box is displayed, follow the instruction given in it.
- (5) Perform the above operations for all the drives concerned.

Verification of files and recovery of them using backup

When a file is repaired or partially deleted by the chkdsk command, verify whether the file is normal. When the file was partially deleted or broken, delete the file and restore it using the backup.

After the file is recovered normally, check the Pin status. If a Pin remains, erase it by executing the readable Pin Track process first.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-650

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

5.2.3.3 Procedure on Solaris

The following is an erasing procedure to be used when a Pin failure occurs on Solaris.

A CAUTION

In Solaris, disk device is shown as cXtYdZsN, which denotes controller, SCSI target ID, logical unit number, and slice (partition). One LDEV can be logically divided into eight portions, s0 to s7, and the each portion can be used as a disk drive. For a slice, a capacity can be set in units of cylinder, and the user accesses each slice treating it as a disk drive having LBAs starting from LBA 0.

In Solaris, note that some restrictions on the Pin erasing are induced by handling the disk drive as cXtYdZsN.

- Ensure a free capacity on the disk on which the Pin Track Tool is to be installed.
 The showrel tool, which identifies device files of Solaris according to the LDEV and LBA range shown on the SVP, creates a temporary file on the disk in order to acquire device information. If the free capacity on the disk is insufficient, the information cannot be displayed accurately.
- The Pin erasing process cannot be applied to all the LBAs. In Solaris, the last two cylinders are not allocated to the file system because they are reserved as alternate cylinders. For example, in OPEN-3, the two of the total 3338 cylinders (a range of the LBA from 0x494D00 to 0x49583F out of LBAs maximum LBA number in which is 0x495840) are not allocated to the data cylinders. Therefore, if a Pin including such a range is generated, the Pin shown on the SVP cannot be erased because I/Os cannot be issued. The remedy for it is limited to an elimination of unreadable LBAs in the file system.
- The Pin Track Tool cannot be used against a Pin including the inaccessible cylinder. In the case where cylinders are divided to be allocated to slices and there exist cylinders which are not allocated to any of the slices, if a Pin including such a range is generated, the Pin shown on the SVP cannot be erased because I/Os cannot be issued. The remedy for it is limited to an elimination of unreadable LBAs in the file system.
- When an unreadable Pin is generated in the head LBA, the Pin cannot be erased.
 The management information including the device geometry is recorded in the range of LBA0x0 to 0x5F (except for OPEN-V), LBA0x0 to 0x1FF (OPEN-V), to the slot#15. If a Pin including this range is generated, the device cannot be recognized to be a disk by the OS. Format the LDEV following the maintenance manual.

(To be continued)

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-660

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

A CAUTION

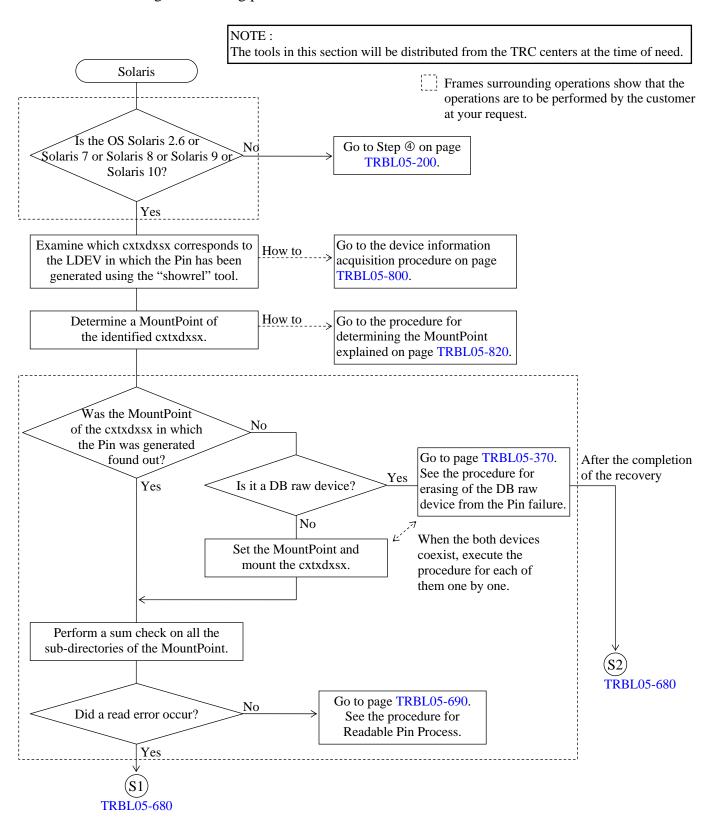
(Continued from the preceding page)

- Specify the LBA to be input in the Pin Track Tool correctly.
 When the input LBA is wrong, Solaris judges the specified range to be an unreadable Pin.
 Even if you try to apply the unreadable Pin Track process to it specifying the range, a write error will be caused and it is not erased. Make sure that the input LBA is correct before executing the process.
- After executing the Pin Track process, verify that the processing has completed normally referring to a log.
 - To verify the execution result of the Pin Track process, refer to the log file. Read/write errors are not displayed on the screen. Furthermore, check if the input information was correct when a write error occurred as described above.

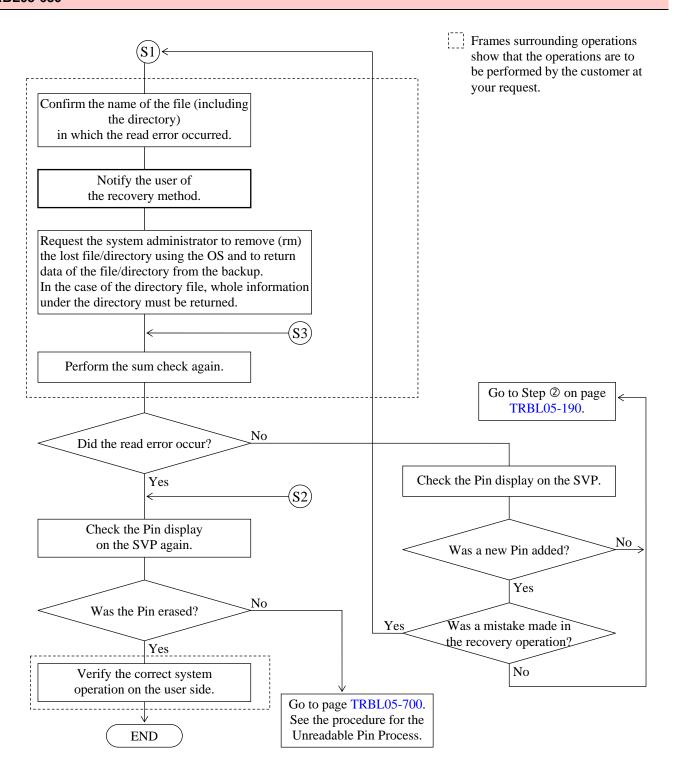
When you have to eliminate the unreadable LBA in the file system on the above conditions, operate according to the flowchart on the following pages.

TRBL05-670

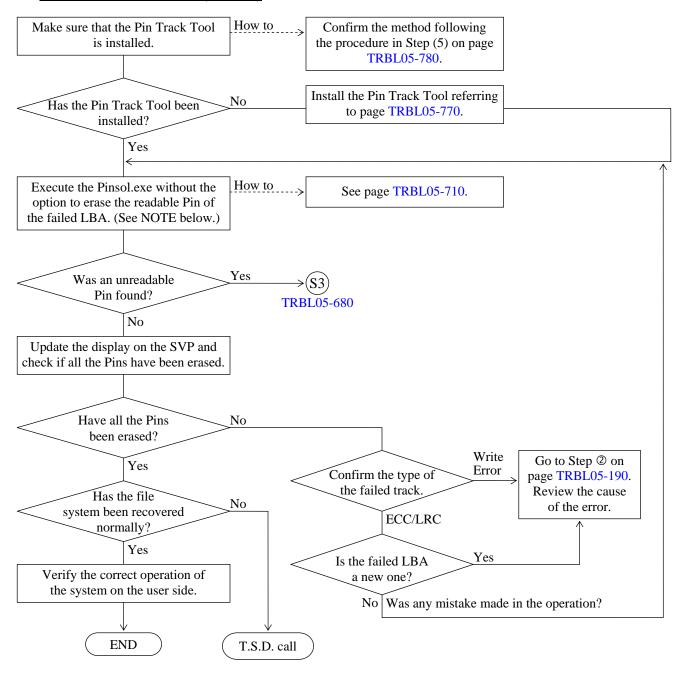
O The following is an erasing procedure to be used when a Pin failure occurs on Solaris.



TRBL05-680

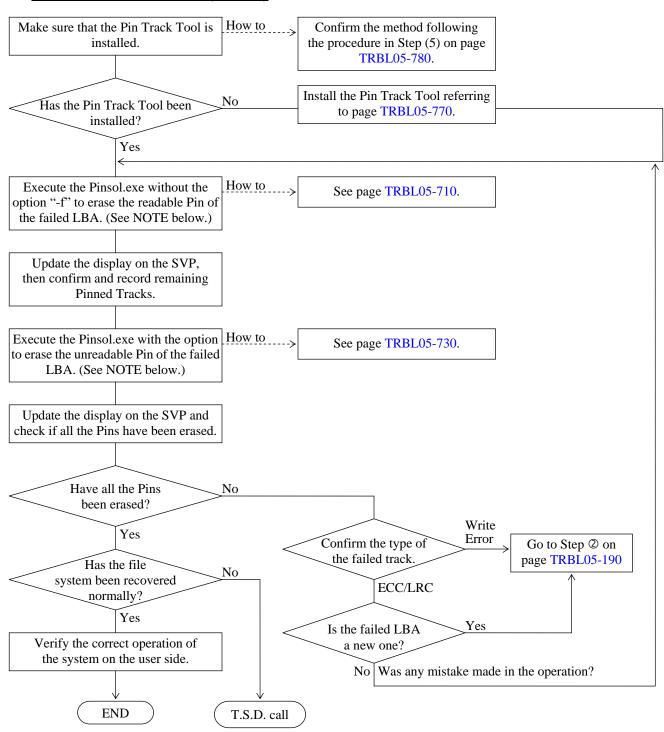


Readable Pin Process (Solaris)



NOTE: — On an SIM reported owing to a use of the Pin Track Tool —
When two or more Pins have been generated in the LBAs adjacent in the same LU, a generation of a new temporary Pin caused by the parity calculation performed in the Pin Track process may occur and a SIM may be reported. Since this Pin is erased at the same time when the erasing process of the Pin concerned completes, complete the SIM when the erasure of all the Pins by the Pin Track Tool is confirmed.

Unreadable Pin Process (Solaris)



NOTE: — On an SIM reported owing to a use of the Pin Track Tool —

When two or more Pins have been generated in the LBAs adjacent in the same LU, a generation of a new temporary Pin caused by the parity calculation performed in the Pin Track process may occur and a SIM may be reported. Since this Pin is erased at the same time when the erasing process of the Pin concerned completes, complete the SIM when it is confirmed that all the Pins have been erased by the Pin Track Tool.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-710

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

Operation of Readable Pin Process (Solaris)

The following explains how to operate the Pin Track Tool for erasing a readable Pin.

NOTE: — On an SIM reported owing to a use of the Pin Track Tool —

When two or more Pins have been generated in the LBAs adjacent in the same LU, a generation of a new Pin caused by the parity calculation performed in the Pin Track process may occur and an SIM may be reported.

Since this Pin is erased at the same time when the erasing process of the Pin concerned completes, complete the SIM when it is confirmed that all the Pins have been erased by the Pin Track Tool.

- (1) Move to the directory of the installed Pin Track Tool. #cd /usr/raidopen/pinsol
- (2) Execute the pinsol.exe without the option.

./pinsol.exe -log Execute with a path "./".

(3) Input the following information in response to questions.

./pinsol.exe -log

Input Device Name -> /dev/rdsk/c3t0d0s2 Input the cxtydzsn.
Input Start LBA Data-> 180 Input the Start LBA.
Input End LBA Data-> 1df Input the End LBA.

Input Next LBA? (Y/N) ->n When two or more LBAs exist in the same

device, input "y".

Input Next Device ? (Y/N) ->n (Input of "n" is recommended.)

When erasing Pins of two or more devices

simultaneously, input "y".

To input the LBA, convert the LBA of the LDEV shown by the SVP into the slice of Solaris the device file of which corresponds to the LBA, and input the slice. For the conversion of indication between the LBA and slice, refer to "Acquisition of Device Information" (TRBL05-800). The showrel tool may display the two or more corresponding LBAs depending on the slice structure. In this case, the same LBA range is possible to be designated as different slices. Execute the Pin erasing process for the LBAs in the list shown by the showrel one by one in a descending order, and check the display on the SVP each time.

NOTE: When the input LBA does not exist in the device file of the specified slice, it is judged to be an unreadable Pin and causes a write error if the operation is continued leaving it as it is. Make sure that the input information is correct before starting the processing and that the Pin has been erased normally referring to the log after the processing terminates.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-720

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

(4) Since the input data and a message for confirming whether to erase the Pin, check if the input data is correct.

Device Name Start LBA End LBA

/dev/rdsk/c3t0d0s2 000000000000180 0000000000001DF

Before you try to proceed the readable pin,

please check the pin information on SVP.

If the pin data have been created, please do not try to proceed the pin track again.

Do you want to do the process of the readable Pin?

Please input[y/n(default n)]:y

If the input data is incorrect, input "n" or simply press the "Return" key and perform the data input over again from Step (2).

Update the display on the SVP and check if the Pin concerned has been erased following the message.

When the Pin has already been erased, terminate the processing by inputting "n" or simply press the "Return" key.

When the Pin has not been erased, input "y" and press the "Return" key.

(5) When the Pin is judged unreadable through the Pin type judgment, go to TRBL05-730. Unreadable Pin:

Device Name Start LBA End LBA

/dev/rdsk/c3t0d0s2 000000000000180 00000000000001DF

(6) When the Pin Track Tool is quit, a log file is created on the same directory.

The log file name is given as "mm-dd-hh-m'm'-ss.log" (m: month; d: date; h: hours; m': minutes; s: seconds).

Example:

0614200552.log means a log file created at 5minutes and 52 seconds after 20 o'clock on June 14.

In the log file, the execution result of the Pin Track process is recorded. Make sure that the process has completed normally by checking if "pin track process complete" is displayed.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-730

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

Operation of Unreadable Pin Process (Solaris)

The following explains how to operate the Pin Track Tool for erasing an unreadable Pin.

NOTE: — On an SIM reported owing to a use of the Pin Track Tool —

When two or more Pins have been generated in the LBAs adjacent in the same LU, a generation of a new temporary Pin caused by the parity calculation performed in the Pin Track process may occur and an SIM may be reported.

Since this Pin is erased at the same time when the erasing process of the Pin concerned completes, complete the SIM when it is confirmed that all the Pins have been erased by the Pin Track Tool.

(1) Move to the directory of the installed Pin Track Tool.

cd /usr/raidopen/pinsol

(2) Execute the pinsol.exe with the option.

./pinsol.exe -f -log

When "-f" is added, the unreadable LBA is overwritten with "0" data.

(3) Input the following information in response to questions.

./pinsol.exe -f -log

Input Device Name -> /dev/rdsk/c3t0d0s2 Input the cxtydzsn.

Input Start LBA Data-> 180 Input the Start LBA.

Input End LBA Data-> 1df Input the End LBA.

Input Next LBA ?(Y/N) -> n When two or more LBAs exist in the same

device, input "y".

Input Next Device $?(Y/N) \rightarrow n$ (Input of "n" is recommended.)

When erasing Pins of two or more devices

simultaneously, input "y".

To input the LBA, convert the LBA of the LDEV shown by the SVP into the slice of Solaris the device file of which corresponds to the LBA, and input the slice. For the conversion of indication between the LBA and slice, refer to "Acquisition of device information" (TRBL05-800). The showrel tool may display the two or more corresponding LBAs depending on the slice structure. In this case, the same LBA range is possible to be designated as different slices. Execute the Pin erasing process for the LBAs in the list shown by the showrel one by one in a descending order, and check the display on the SVP each time.

NOTE: When the input LBA does not exist in the device file of the specified slice, it is judged to be an unreadable Pin and causes a write error if the operation is continued leaving it as it is. Make sure that the input information is correct before starting the processing and that the Pin has been erased normally referring to the log after the processing terminates.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-740

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

(4) Since the input data and a message for confirming whether to erase the Pin, check if the input data is correct.

Device Name Start LBA End LBA

/dev/rdsk/c3t0d0s2 000000000000180 000000000001DF

Before you try to proceed the readable pin, please check the pin information on SVP.

If the pin data have been created, please do not try to proceed the pin track again.

Do you want to do the process of the readable Pin?

Please input[y/n(default n)]:y

If the input data is incorrect, input "n" or simply press the "Return" key and perform the data input over again from Step (2).

Update the display on the SVP and check if the Pin concerned has been erased following the message.

When the Pin has already been erased, terminate the processing by inputting "n" or simply press the "Return" key.

When the Pin has not been erased, input "y" and press the "Return" key.

(5) The following message is displayed and the Pin is judged unreadable through the Pin type judgment.

Unreadable Pin:

Device Name Start LBA End LBA

/dev/rdsk/c3t0d0s2 000000000000180 000000000001DF

Do you want to do the process of the unreadable Pin?

WARNING! if you input 'y', Pin Blocks will be over written by '0'.

Please input[y/n(default n)]:y

In the Pin Track Process, the window may be changed into monochrome, and the following message may be showed on the window. In the case, please do not pay attention to them. After 3 minutes or so, the window will back to originally status.

Example:

This is a message which it is displayed on the monochromic window.

WARNING: /sbus@if, 0/fc0@1, 0/sd@0, 0(sd15)

Error for Command: read Error Level: Retryable (or Fatal)

Requested Block: 766560 Error Block: 766560

Vender: HP Serial Number: 0450F4290000

Sense key: Media Error

ASC: 0x11 (unrecovered read error), ASCQ: 0x0, FRU: 0x0

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-750

(6) When "y" is chosen by (5), the check message is displayed at once for every number of inputs. In case of plural number input, an operator can cancel the pin recovery processing for the device which you does not want to execute.

Unreadable Pin:

Device Name Start LBA End LBA

/dev/rdsk/c3t0d0s2 000000000000180 000000000001DF

Do you want to do the process of the unreadable Pin?

WARNING! if you input 'y', Pin Blocks will be over written by '0'.

Please input[y/n(default n)]:y

Do you want to do the process of the unreadable Pin? (The strip of LBA is

000000000000180-0000000000001DF). (Y/N)

(7) When Pin Track Tool ends, a log file (month -day -hour -minute -second .log) is made on the same directory. (Eg:0614200552.log)

As for the log file, the execution result of the Pin Track processing is recorded. Make sure that the process has completed normally by checking if "pin track process complete" is displayed.

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-760

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

How to read the Read Test for whole of a disk (Solaris)

This chapter describes how to discover the Unreadable Pin on select device.

This processing requires long time.

(1) Move to the directory of the Pin Track Tool.

cd /usr/raidopen/pinsol

(2) Execute the Pin Track Tool without a command option.

./pinsol.exe -all (The "-f" will become invalid if this option is used.)

(3) According to the question, input the appropriate information.

./pinsol.exe –all

Input Device Name -> /dev/rdsk/c3t0d0s2

(Please input the slice which indicate the whole device.) (Usually indicated "s2".)

Input Next Device ?(Y/N) ->n

(Recommend to "n") (When erasing different Device at the same time, it inputs "y")

(4) The Input data list is displayed.

Device Name	Start LBA	End LBA
/dev/rdsk/c3t0d0s2	00000000000000000	0000000001F2285

Show all domain of LAB which is specified device, and execute.

(5) When Pin Track Tool ends, a log file (month -day -hour -minute -second .log) is made on the same directory. (Eg:0614200552.log)

The log when two area (120-17F, 1E023F) of Unreadable Pin exists in specified DeviceName becomes as follows.

Input Device Name = /dev/rdsk/c3t0d0s2

ERROR: Read Error LBA 00000000000120-00000000000017F ERROR: Read Error LBA 000000000001E0-00000000000033F

NOTE: The area and number of Unreadable Pin listed by other factors here may differ from the area and number of Unreadable Pin displayed by SVP.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-770

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

<u>Installation of Pin Track Tool (Solaris)</u>

NOTICE: Perform the installation only when it is required.

<Preparation>

Since the Pin Track Tool is provided being contained in a 4-mm DDS DAT or 3.5-inch floppy disks, a drive for installing it is necessary in the host device which controls the Pin erasing operation or on the network which includes the device concerned.

Acquire a name for the device beforehand.

Besides, ensure a free area on the disk necessary for a log collection because a log of approximately 400 bytes per failed track is output for (60)h length SLOT when the log is collected using the pintool.

NOTE: If the free capacity on the disk is insufficient, the whole information cannot be collected.

The showrel tool for LBA-slice conversion ensures a memory and creates a temporary file in order to acquire device information. Make sure that the memory capacity (larger than 128MB/CPU) and the disk free capacity (larger than 10MB) sufficient for the server are ensured.

<Copying from media to disk>

- (1) Login to the host as "root".
- (2) Move to the install directory by the "cd" command and make a directory "raidopen".

cd /usr (Move to the "/usr")

mkdir raidopen (Make the directory "raidopen")

cd raidopen (Move to the "raidopen")

(3) Move to the created directory and copy the files from the distribution medium.

mt -t /dev/rmt/0 rew (Rewind a tape.)

tar -xvf /dev/rmt/0 (Copy a file from the tape.)
tar -xvf pinsolXX.tar (Copy the tar file for Solalis.)

<In case of the Floppy disk or CD-ROM>

volcheck recognize a floppy disk or CD-ROM

confirm the label, and copy the files from the distribution medium.

tar -xvf /floppy/no_name/PINSOLxx.TAR (Floppy)

tar -xvf /cdrom/zzzz/program/ment/pintrack/solaris/pinsolXX.tar (CD-ROM)

NOTE: (The volume label (no_name) and directory name (ZZZZ) is depend on the system.)

If the copy from the floppy disk to the disk ends, it takes out a floppy disk.

eject Eject the medium.

If necessary, it pushes an eject button and it takes out a floppy disk.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014 Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

TRBL05-780

(4) After the thawing is complete, confirm the file name.

cd ./pinsol (Move to the directory made by the thawing.)

ls -l (Display a file list.)

(5) Refer to the contents of the "Ver-Rev.txt" file and confirm each file size of the list. # more /usr/raidopen/pisol/Ver-Rev.txt display contents of the file

HITACHI RAID storage system PinTrackTool for Solaris

Ver XX-YY-/Z (Revision ID)

All right reserved, Copyright (c) 1999,2014, Hitachi Ltd.

File Size (Bytes) pinsol.exe (Module ID)

File Size (Bytes) showrels.exe (Module ID)

File Size (Bytes) port.dat (Module ID)

Refer to the contents of "Ver-Rev.txt" file and confirm each file size of the list.

Saving of log file and de-installation of Pin erasing tool

NOTICE: Perform the de-installation only when it is required.

<Saving of log file>

In order to save the log file created through the Pin erasure, compress the file.

cd /usr/raidopen/pinsol Move to the execution directory.

mkdir ./log Create a directory for the log file.

mv *.log ./log Move the log file to the logdir.

tar -cvf pinlog.tar ./log Create the tar file.
compress pinlog.tar Compress the tar file.

Save the log file to the media.

tar -cvf /dev/rmt/0 pinlog.tar.Z (In the case of DDS DAT)

tar -cvf /vol/dev/rdiskette0/unlabeled pinlog.tar.Z (In the case of floppy disk (tar))
cp pinlog pinlog.tar.Z /vol/dev/rdiskette0/raidopen (In the case of floppy disk (DOS))

<De-installation of Pin Track Tool>

To uninstall the Pin Track Tool, delete all the files concerned by deleting the whole directory in which the tool is installed.

cd / Move to the root directory.

#\rm -r /usr/raidopen/pinsol* Delete files created under the /usr/raidopen.

When "\" is added, the alias is invalidated.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-790

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

Procedure for collecting detail log

You can acquire detailed information on the erasing process from the Pin failure by adding the option to the Pin Track Tool.

Method of use: ./pinsd.exe(-f) -log

By executing the above, you can acquire data which was read and written in the process for erasing from the Pin failure.

Example:

```
Input Device Name = /dev/rdsk/c1t0d0s2
Input Start LBA = 0000000000000180
Input End LBA = 0000000000001DF
/dev/rdsk/c1t0d0s2, Start LBA=000000000000000180, End LBA=0000000000001df readable Pin Track
read error
Read Data: Top Pin No=0000000000000180
Read Data: Top Pin No=000000000000181
Read Data: Top Pin No=0000000000000182
. . .
Read Data: Top Pin No=0000000000000183
Read Data: Top Pin No=0000000000001DF
Write Data: Top Pin No=000000000000180
/dev/rdsk/c1t0d0s2, Start LBA=00000000000000180, End LBA=0000000000001DF Pin Track Process
is complete!!
```

The log size is approximately 400 KB per one Pin erasure for (60)h length SLOT. When the -log option is not added, data for each LBA is recorded for each of reading and writing.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-800

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

Acquisition of device information (how to use showrel tool) on Solaris

When the program has been installed, confirm the failed track information.

(1) Move to the installed directory. # cd /usr/raidopen/pinsol

Moving of the directory

(2) Execute the following program

```
# ./showrels.exe
Input LDKC -> 00
Input LDEV -> 000A
Input LBA -> 0000000000044000
Input End LBA -> 000000000004405F
Add the ./ path and execute.
Input the LDKC# shown on the SVP.
Input the CU:LDEV# shown on the SVP.
Input the start LBA shown on the SVP.
Input the End LBA shown on the SVP.
```

Input example and output result.

```
#./showrels.exe
Input LDKC -> 00
Input LDEV -> 0123
Input Start LBA -> 000000000000ABE0
Input End LBA -> 00000000000AC3F

DeviceName=c0tld0s6 Port=1A LDKC=00 LDEV=0123
Start=00000000000000FA0 End=00000000000FF
```

The LDKC number is indicated with the number of two figures. The LDEV number is indicated with the CU:LDEV number of four figures. Confirm the LDKC number, CU number and LDEV number of the Pin displayed on the SVP and identify the slice of the device file. The device file name identified here is used as the input information in the process for the Pin failure.

- NOTE: The showrel tool issues commands peculiar to the storage system to all the disk devices in order to acquire device information. Therefore, when the command is issued to a disk other than the storage system such as a built-in disk, an error (Illegal Request) may be reported to the system. It is not a problem, though.
 - When an unreadable Pin is generated in the slot#15 including the head LBA in which
 the disk management information is recorded, the device information cannot be
 acquired because the disk becomes unable to respond to the OS.
 - The disk device of the object may not be labeled when "Error: Target devices do not exist." is output.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-810

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

The following may be displayed depending on the setting of the slice.

When there is no information of the input LDEV in the device management table.

LDKC=00,LDEV=010C This is not a target disk.

Check if the input LDEV number is correct.

When an LDEV which does not belong to any slice is input

DeviceName=c2t3d0s6 Port=1D LDKC=00 LDEV=0189 The target LBA is missing or invalid.

In this case, the Pin shown on the SVP cannot be erased. However, it does not have any effect on the file system.

When a Pin extends over multiple slices

When it is displayed that a Pin extends over multiple slices, specify the LBA displayed for each slice when executing the pinsol.exe. The Pin cannot be erased unless all the range concerned are processed by the pinsol.exe.

When an LDEV is allocated to multiple ports

DeviceName=c1t1d0s6 Port=1A LDKC=00 LDEV=0123
Start=00000000000FA0 End=000000000FFF
DeviceName=c0t3d0s6 Port=1C LDKC=00 LDEV=0123
Start=00000000000FA0 End=00000000000FFF

When an LDEV is displayed at the different ports with the same LBA range of the slice, a single LDEV is allocated to multiple ports. In this case, specify any one of the devices to execute the pinsol.exe.

When multiple LBAs are displayed for an LDEV

DeviceName=c0t3d0s2 Port=1A LDKC=00 LDEV=0123 Start=00000000000FA0 End=0000000000FFF DeviceName=c0t3d0s6 Port=1A LDKC=00 LDEV=0123 Start=0000000000FA0 End=00000000000FFF

When two slices are displayed with the same LBA range for an LDEV, a slice to which the same cylinder is allocated may exist. Normally one of the slices is 2. In this case, specify a device described ahead in order to execute the pinsol.exe. If the Pin is not erased when the SVP display is checked after the Pin erasing process has terminated normally, execute the pinsol.exe for another device.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-820

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

Procedure for determining MountPoint (on Solaris)

NOTICE: The following operation must be performed by the system administrator at your request checking result at each step.

Display by the showrel

When the showrel explained in TRBL05-800 is used, the LDKC number, and the LDEV number shown on the SVP and to which device file the range between the Start LBA and End LBA corresponds are displayed. Refer to TRBL05-800, "How to use showrel tool".

Display by prtvtoc

Input "#prtvtoc <raw-device-name>" to display the slice list and find out all the slices in which Pins have been generated.

```
/dev/rdsk/c0t1d0s5 partition map
* Dimension:
 512 bytes/sector
* 80 sectors/tarck
* 9 tracks/cylinder
* 720 sectors/cylinders
* 2500 cylinders
* 1151 accsessible cylinders
* Flags:
* 1: unmountable
* 10: read-only
                   First Sector Last
* Partition Tag Flags Sector
                                  Count
                                           Sector Mount Directory
   0
                 00
                         0
                                76320 76319
                 01 76320142480 208799
    1
            3
   2
            5
                 00 0
                                828720 828719
    5
            6
                 00
                        208800 131760
                                         340559
                                                  /opt
    6
            4
                  00
                        340560
                                 447120
                                         787679
                                                  /usr
                  00
                        787680
                                 41040
                                         828719
                                                  /export/home
```

You can confirm the current MountPoint by viewing the display of the Mount Directory.

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

Determination using /etc/vfstab

Find out the MountPoint where the /dev/dsk/cxtydzsn is mounted using the #cat/etc/fstab.

```
# cat /etc/vfstab
#device
                 device
                                    mount
                                                      FS
                                                               fsck
                                                                        mount
                                                                                 mount
#to mount
                to fsck
                                   point
                                                      type
                                                               pass
                                                                        at boot options
      - /dev/fd fd
fd
                                   - no
             /proc proc -
/proc
                                            no
/dev/dsk/c0t3d0s1
- swap
//dev/dsk/c0t3d0s0 /dev/rdsk/c0t3d0s0
/dev/dsk/c0t3d0s6 /dev/rdsk/c0t3d0s6
/dev/dsk/c0t3d0s3 /dev/rdsk/c0t3d0s3
/dev/dsk/c0t3d0s7
                                             swap
                                                               no
                                                               ufs
                                                                        1
                                                                            no
                                                                        1
                                                      /usr
                                                               ufs
                                                                            no
                                                                        1 no
                          /dev/rdsk/c0t3d0s3
                                                      /var
                                                               ufs
/dev/dsk/c0t3d0s7 /dev/rdsk/c0t3d0s7 /dev/dsk/c0t1d0s7 /dev/rdsk/c0t1d0s7
                                                      /export/home
                                                                       ufs
                                                                                      yes
                                                      /export/home1 ufs
                                                                                      yes
                 /tmp tmpfs
#
```

You can make sure whether the object device is mounted automatically or not.

Determination using df

Reconfirm the "Ivol name" and "mount point" recognized by the filesystem using the #df -k.

# df -k					
Filesystem	kbytes	used	avail	capacity	Mounted on
/dev/dsk/c0t3d0s0	76767	17735	58956	24%	/
/dev/dsk/c0t3d0s6	738902	552048	185931	75%	/usr
/proc	0	0	0	0%	/proc
fd	0	0	0	0%	/dev/fd
/dev/dsk/c0t3d0s3	30807	17911	12866	59%	/var
/dev/dsk/c0t3d0s7	53535	7923	45559	15%	/export/home
/dev/dsk/c0t1d0s7	489702	189635	299578	39%	/export/home1
swap	121856	212	121644	1%	/tmp
/dev/dsk/c1t0d0s0	7095037	2163405	4860682	31%	/open9-0
/dev/dsk/c1t1d0s0	7095757	2049632	4975168	30%	/open9-1
#					

You can make sure whether the object device is being mounted currently or not.

Decide the MountPoint to be checked by the "sum" command following the procedure above.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-840

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

5.2.3.4 Procedure on AIX, VMWare ESX, Linux

The following shows how to erase a pin failure on AIX, VMWare ESX, Linux.

A CAUTION

- Ensure a free capacity on the disk on which the Pin Track Tool is to be installed.
- When an unreadable pin is generated in the head LBA, the pin cannot be erased.
 The management information including the device geometry is recorded in the range of
 LBA0x0 to 0x5F (except for OPEN-V), LBA0x0 to 0x1FF (OPEN-V), to the slot#15. If a
 pin including this range is generated, the device cannot be recognized to be a disk by the
 OS. Format the LDEV following the maintenance manual.
- Specify the LBA to be input in the Pin Track Tool correctly.
 The host cannot determine whether or not a pin has been generated in the input LBA. It performs a pin recovery or erases an unreadable pin for the input LBA. Therefore, if you input information improperly, data may be lost.
- After executing the pin track process, see the log to confirm that it has completed normally.

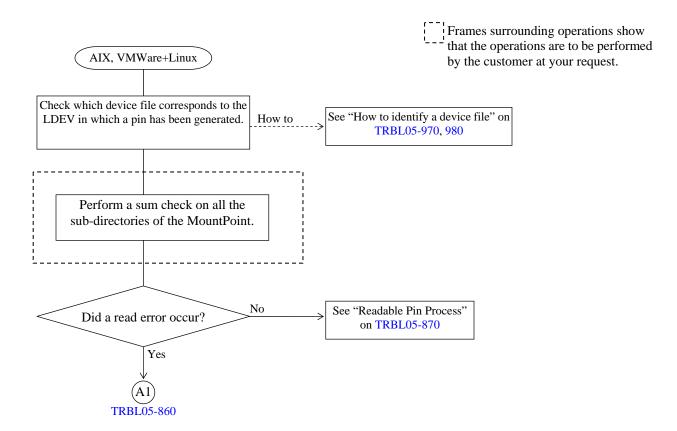
To delete the unreadable LBA in the file system under the above-described conditions, perform operations according to the flowchart on the following pages.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

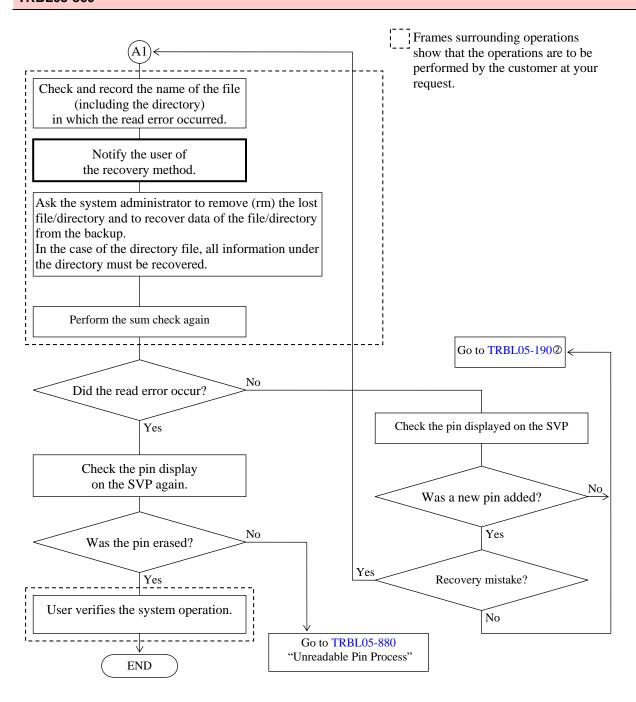
TRBL05-850

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

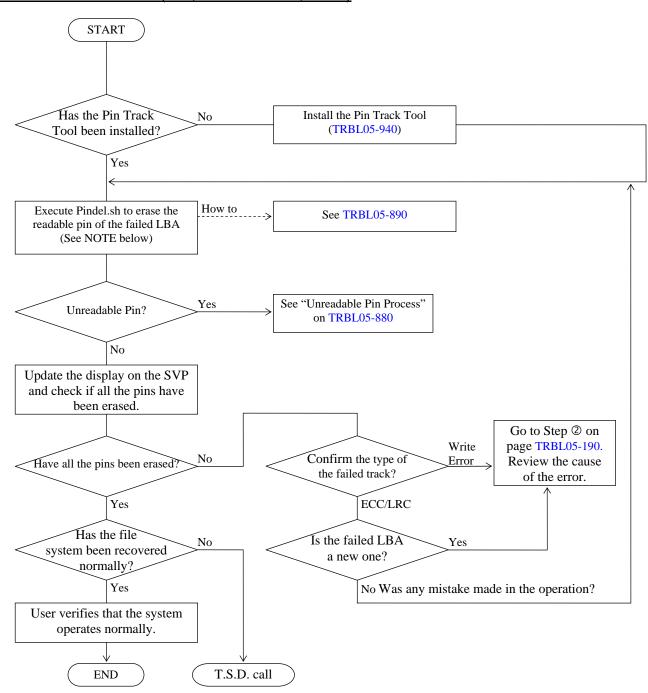
O The flow shows the procedure in the case a pin failure occurs on AIX, VMWare ESX, Linux.



TRBL05-860



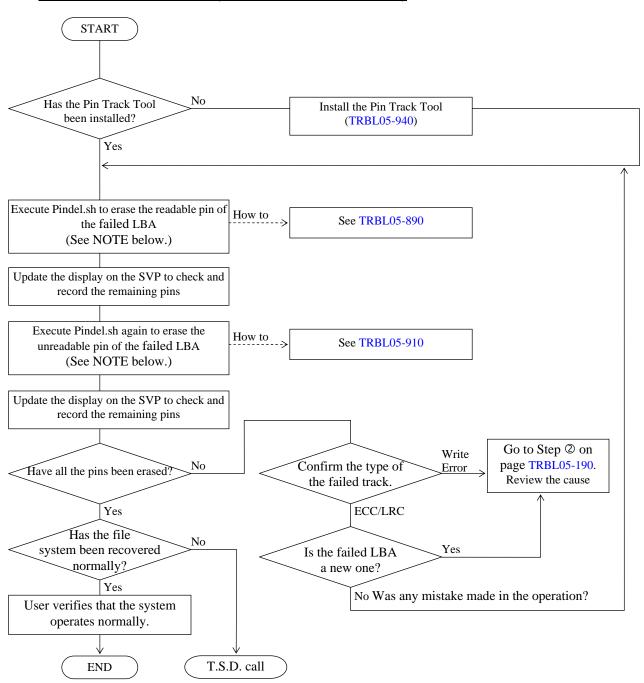
Readable Pin Process (AIX, VMWare ESX, Linux)



NOTE: — On an SIM reported owing to a use of the Pin Track Tool —

When two or more pins have been generated in the LBAs adjacent in the same LU, a generation of a new temporary pin caused by the parity calculation performed in the Pin Track process may occur and a SIM may be reported. Since this pin is erased at the same time when the erasing process of the pin concerned completes, complete the SIM when the erasure of all the pins by the Pin Track Tool is confirmed.

Unreadable Pin Process (AIX, VMWare ESX, Linux)



NOTE: — On an SIM reported owing to a use of the Pin Track Tool —

When two or more Pins have been generated in the LBAs adjacent in the same LU, a generation of a new temporary Pin caused by the parity calculation performed in the Pin Track process may occur and a SIM may be reported. Since this Pin is erased at the same time when the erasing process of the Pin concerned completes, complete the SIM when it is confirmed that all the Pins have been erased by the Pin Track Tool.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-890

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

How to erase Readable Pin (AIX, VMWare ESX, Linux)

The following explains how to operate the Pin Track Tool to erase a readable pin. (The tool is available also on Tru64.)

NOTE: — On an SIM reported owing to a use of the Pin Track Tool —

When two or more Pins have been generated in the LBAs adjacent in the same LU, a generation of a new Pin caused by the parity calculation performed in the Pin Track process may occur and an SIM may be reported.

Since this Pin is erased at the same time when the erasing process of the Pin concerned completes, complete the SIM when it is confirmed that all the Pins have been erased by the Pin Track Tool.

- (1) Move to the directory of the installed Pin Track Tool. # cd /usr/raidopen/pinsh
- (2) Execute the pindel.sh without the option.

./Pindel.sh

(3) Input the following information in response to questions.

./Pindel.sh

Pin Recovery Tool Ver. 01-03 start.

(If you want to cancel the program, please input "q".)

Input Device Name ->/dev/rhdisk69 Input the RAW device file name (/dev/rhdiskXX)

Input Start LBA Data -> 20000 Input the Start LBA Input End LBA Data -> 201ff Input the End LBA

When you make an input mistake and want to redo it from the start, enter "q". The program will stop.

Before inputting an LBA, check which device file on the AIX host corresponds to the LBA of the LDEV displayed on the SVP. See TRBL05-970 "How to identify a device file".

A CAUTION

Make sure to specify a RAW device file (rhdiskXX) as a device file. Do not specify a block device (hdiskXX).

Input the LBA to the Pin Track Tool accurately.

If you input it improperly, data loss may occur.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-900

(4) When the LBA is read successfully, the following messages are displayed.

Please wait. Now Reading Pin...

Finished.

Before you try to proceed the readable pin,

please check the pin information on SVP.

If the pin track has been cleared,

please do not try to proceed the pin recovery again.

Do you want to do the process of the readable Pin? (Y/N)

Follow the messages and refresh the display on the SVP to see if the pin has been cleared.

If it has been cleared, enter "n" to exit.

If not, enter "y".

(5) When the pin is judged as an "unreadable pin" through the pin type judgment as follows, go to TRBL05-910.

Please wait. Now Reading Pin...

Failed.

Do you want to do the process of the unreadable Pin? (The strip of LBA is 0x20000-0x201ff) (Y/N)

(6) When the pindel.sh starts, a log file will be created on the same directory.

The log file name is given as "MM-dd-hh-mm-ss.log".

<Example>

 $0614200552.\log \rightarrow \text{Log file created on June } 14 \text{ at } 20:05:52 \text{ (hour:minutes:seconds)}.$

In the log file, the execution result of erasing the pin is recorded. Make sure that the process has completed normally by confirming that "Pin Recovery process completed!!" is displayed.

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-910

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

How to erase unreadable pin (AIX, VMWare ESX, Linux)

The following explains how to operate the Pin Track Tool to erase an unreadable pin. (The tool is available also on Tru64.)

NOTE: — On an SIM reported owing to a use of the Pin Track Tool —

When two or more Pins have been generated in the LBAs adjacent in the same LU, a generation of a new temporary Pin caused by the parity calculation performed in the Pin Track process may occur and an SIM may be reported.

Since this Pin is erased at the same time when the erasing process of the Pin concerned completes, complete the SIM when it is confirmed that all the Pins have been erased by the Pin Track Tool.

- (1) Move to the directory of the installed Pin Track Tool. # cd /usr/raidopen/pinsh
- r
- (2) Execute the pindel.sh
 - # ./pindel.sh
- (3) Input the following information in response to questions.

./Pindel.sh

Pin Recovery Tool Ver. 01-03 start.

(If you want to cancel the program, please input "q".)

Input Device Name ->/dev/rhdisk69 Input the RAW device file name (/dev/rhdiskXX)

Input Start LBA Data -> 20000 Input the Start LBA Input End LBA Data -> 201ff Input the End LBA

When you make an input mistake and want to redo it from the start, enter "q". The program will stop.

Before inputting an LBA, check which device file on the AIX corresponds to the LBA of the LDEV displayed on the SVP. See TRBL05-970 "How to identify a device file".

A CAUTION

Make sure to specify a RAW device file (rhdiskXX) as a device file. Do not specify a block device (hdiskXX).

Input the LBA to the Pin Track Tool accurately.

If you input it improperly, data loss may occur.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-920

(4) When the LBA is read successfully, the following messages are displayed.

Please wait. Now Reading Pin...

Finished.

Before you try to proceed the readable pin,

please check the pin information on SVP.

If the pin track has been cleared,

please do not try to proceed the pin recovery again.

Do you want to do the process of the readable Pin? (Y/N)

Follow the messages and refresh the display on the SVP to see if the pin has been cleared.

If it has been cleared, enter "n" to exit.

If not, enter "y".

(5) When the pin is judged as an "unreadable pin" through the pin type judgment as follows, the following message is displayed.

Please wait. Now Reading Pin...

Failed.

Do you want to do the process of the unreadable Pin? (The strip of LBA is 0x20000-0x201ff) (Y/N)

(6) "Y" is selected in (5), data will be erased for the LBA area in which a pin is generated. When it succeeds, the following message will be displayed.

When an error occurs, follow the procedure described in TRBL05-880 to review the cause of the failure.

Please wait. Now Clearing Pin ...

Finished.

Pin Recovery process completed!! (unreadable Pin)

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-930

(7) When the pindel.sh ends, a log file will be created on the same directory.

The log file name is given as "mm-dd-hh-mm-ss.log".

<Example>

0614200552.log → Log file created on June 14 at 20:05:52 (Hour:Minutes:Seconds).

In the log file, the execution result of erasing the pin is recorded. Make sure that the process has completed normally by confirming that "Pin Recovery process completed!!" is displayed.

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

Installation of Pin Track Tool

NOTICE: Perform the installation only when it is required.

<Preparation>

Since the Pin Track Tool is provided being contained in a 4-mm DDS DAT or 3.5-inch floppy disks, a drive for installing it is necessary in the host device which controls the Pin erasing operation or on the network which includes the device concerned.

Acquire a name for the device beforehand.

Besides, ensure a free area on the disk necessary for a log collection because a log of approximately 400 bytes per failed track is output for (60)h length SLOT when the log is collected using the pintool.

NOTE: If the free capacity on the disk is insufficient, the whole information cannot be collected.

<Copying from media to disk>

- (1) Login to the AIX machine as "root".
- (2) Move to the install directory by the "cd" command and make a directory "raidopen".

cd /usr (Move to the "/usr")

mkdir raidopen (Make the directory "raidopen")

cd raidopen (Move to the "raidopen")

(3) Execute the following command to decompress pinshXX.tar and copy the files from the medium to the created directory.

tar -xvf /cdrom/zzzz/program/ment/pintrack/sh/pinshXX.tar (CD-ROM)

NOTE: The directory name (ZZZZ) may be different.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014 Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

TRBL05-950

(4) After the file is decompressed, confirm the file name.

cd ./pinsh (Move to the directory created as a result of the

decompression)

ls -l (Display a file list.)

(5) Specify the –ver option and execute Pindel.sh to confirm the version.

./Pindel.sh -ver

```
HITACHI RAID storage system Pin Track Tool for AIX,Tru64,VMWare ESX,Linux
Ver XX-YY
All right reserved, Copyright (c) 2007-2014, Hitachi Ltd.
File size(Bytes) Pindel.sh (Module ID)
```

Confirm that the contents of the file above and the data displayed with the ls command are consistent.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-960

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

Saving the log file and uninstalling Pin Track Tool

NOTICE: Perform the uninstallation only when it is required.

<Saving the log file>

To save the log file created through the pin recovery, compress the file.

cd /usr/raidopen/pinsh Move to the execution directory.

mkdir ./log Create a directory for the log file.

mv *.log ./log Move the log file to logdir.

tar -cvf pinlog.tar ./log Create a tar file.

Save the log file to the media.

tar -cvf /dev/rmt/0 pinlog.tar.Z (In the case of DDS DAT)

tar -cvf /vol/dev/rdiskette0/unlabeled pinlog.tar.Z (In the case of floppy disk (tar))

cp_pinlog_pinlog.tar.Z_/vol/dev/rdiskette0/raidopen (In the case of floppy disk(DOS))

<Uninstalling the Pin Track Tool>

To uninstall the Pin Track Tool, delete all the files concerned by deleting the whole directory in which the tool is installed.

cd / Move to the root directory.

#\rm -r /usr/raidopen/pinsh* Delete files created under /usr/raidopen.

When "\" is added, the alias is invalidated.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-970

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

How to identify a device file (AIX)

The following shows an example of associating a device file, which is to be the input information of the Pin Track Tool, with the LDEV in which a pin is generated.

(1) Execute the following command to display a list of disk devices that are enabled on the AIX.

The result of execution is as follows. "Available" devices are the disk devices that can receive I/Os.

# lsdev -C -c disk	
hdisk65 Defined 06-08-02	Hitachi Disk Array (Fibre)
hdisk66 Defined 06-08-02	Hitachi Disk Array (Fibre)
hdisk67 Defined 06-08-02	Hitachi Disk Array (Fibre)
hdisk68 Available 06-08-02	Hitachi Disk Array (Fibre)
hdisk69 Available 06-08-02	Hitachi Disk Array (Fibre)
hdisk70 Available 06-08-02	Hitachi Disk Array (Fibre)

(2) Next, execute the following command to check the details of the "Available" devices (Example for hdisk69).

```
lsattr -E -l hdisk69|grep lun_id
```

The result of execution is as follows.

```
# lsattr -E -l hdisk69|grep lun_id lun_id 0x100000000000 Logical Unit Number ID
```

The result shows that the LDEV of the LUN = 1 is associated with hdisk69.

When the LDEV with the pin is LDKC:CU:LDEV = 00:08:05 and LUN = 1, the corresponding device file is hdisk69.

You can check LUN in the LUNM window on the SVP or Web Console.

In this case, specify a RAW device file <u>/dev/rhdisk69</u> to the Pin Track Tool. (Do not specify a block device (/dev/hdisk69). Data loss may occur.)

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-980

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

How to identify a device file (VMWare ESX, Linux)

The following shows an example of associating a device file, which is to be the input information of the Pin Track Tool, with the LDEV in which a pin is generated.

(1) Execute the following command to display a list of disk devices that are enabled on the VMWare ESX. Linux.

cat /proc/scsi/scsi

The result of execution is as follows. The one whose "Model" is "OPEN-* (etc. OPEN-V)" are the LU devices that can receive I/Os.

cat /proc/scsi/scsi

.....

Host: scsi3 Channel: 00 Id: 00 Lun: 00

Vendor: HITACHI Model: OPEN-V Rev: 5008

Type: Direct-Access ANSI SCSI revision: 03

Host: scsi3 Channel: 00 Id: 00 Lun: 01

Vendor: HITACHI Model: OPEN-V Rev: 5008
Type: Direct-Access ANSI SCSI revision: 03

(2) Next, the disk device name corresponding to a peculiar Lun number is confirmed by the following commands. First of all, the file to which it refers by the following commands is confirmed.

```
# ls -la /var/log/messages*
```

The result of execution is as follows.

-rw	1 root	root	18423 Jun	11 10:11 /var/log/messages
-rw	1 root	root	36883 Jun	8 04:03 /var/log/messages.1
-rw	1 root	root	1560 Jun	1 04:03 /var/log/messages.2
-rw	1 root	root	19539 May	25 04:03 /var/log/messages.3
-rw	1 root	root	2604 May	18 04:03 /var/log/messages.4

The file date looks for the latest one by the above-mentioned. /var/log/messages is the latest here.

Next, the following commands are executed.

more /var/log/messages

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-990

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

The result of execution is as follows.

```
# more /var/log/messages
.......

Jun 11 10:09:32 x86AS30 kernel: Attached scsi disk sdb at scsi3, channel 0, id 0, lun 0
Jun 11 10:09:32 x86AS30 kernel: Attached scsi disk sdc at scsi3, channel 0, id 0, lun 1
.......
```

The result shows that the LDEV of the LUN = 1 is associated with sdb from "Attached scsi disk". When the LDEV with the pin is LDKC:CU:LDEV = 00:08:05 and LUN = 1, the corresponding device file is sdb.

You can check LUN in the LUNM window on the SVP or Web Console.

In this case, because the block device file of the object becomes /dev/sdb, the device file specified for Pin Track Tool becomes RAW device file linked with /dev/sdb. (Do not specify a block device (/dev/sdb). Data loss may occur.)

First of all, to confirm linked the RAW device files, the following commands are executed.

```
# raw -qa
```

The execution result is as follows.

```
/dev/raw/raw1: bound to major 8, minor 0 /dev/raw/raw2: bound to major 8, minor 1 .......
```

Next, the following commands are executed. It corresponds to the numerical value of major that the figure that is behind "disk" is respectively in the above-mentioned result and minor.

```
# ls -1/dev/sdb
```

The execution result is as follows.

```
brw-rw---- 1 root disk 8, 0 May 6 2008 sdb
```

Therefore, the RAW device file becomes /dev/raw/raw1.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-1000

5.2.3.5 List of Pin Track Tool Directories

- /program/MENT/pintrack/readme-e.txt
- /program/MENT/pintrack/HP-UX/pinhpXX.tar
- /program/MENT/pintrack /Sh/pinshXX.tar
- /program/MENT/pintrack /Solaris/pinsolXX.tar
- /program/MENT/pintrack /Windows/PinWinxx.exe

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-1010

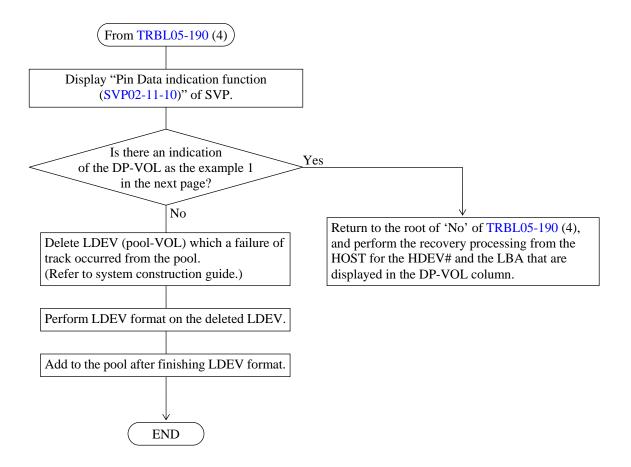
Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

5.2.3.6 ECC/LRC Error Recovery Processing of DP pool-VOL

When an ECC/LRC Error occurs in a pool-VOL, perform the following recovery method because an I/O cannot be issued directly from the HOST for the track concerned.

- *1: In case of a Write Error, perform TRBL05-210 as well as the normal VOL and recover it.
- *2: The LDEV that a POOL ID is displayed on the logical device window of the maintenance window is a pool-VOL.

TRBL05-1020

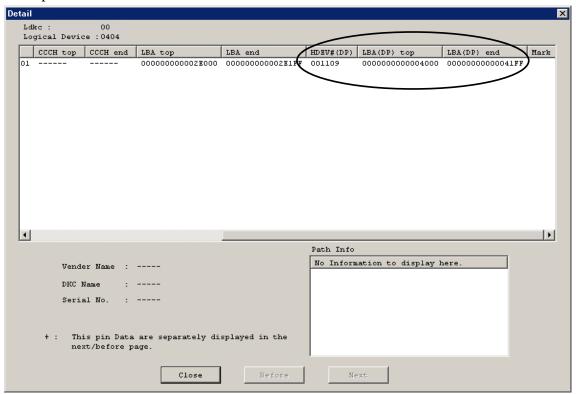


Rev.1 / Mar.2014, Jul.2014

TRBL05-1030

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

Example 1: When there is an indication of a DP-VOL

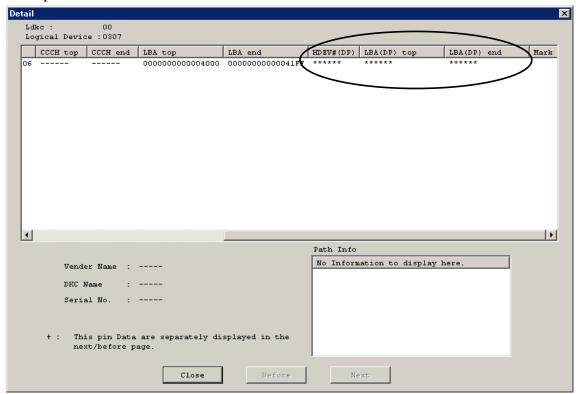


Rev.1 / Mar.2014, Jul.2014

TRBL05-1040

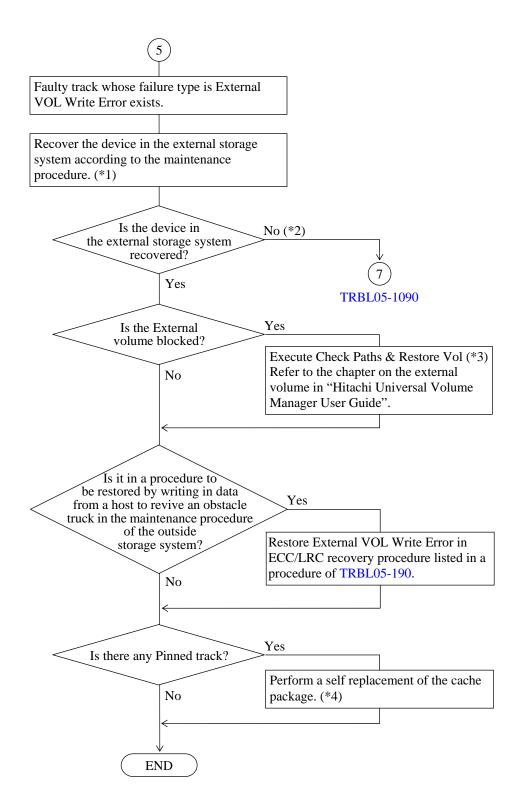
Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

Example 2: When there is no indication of a DP-VOL



5.2.3.7 Recovery from External VOL Write Error

When an External VOL Write Error occurs, perform the following recovery procedure.

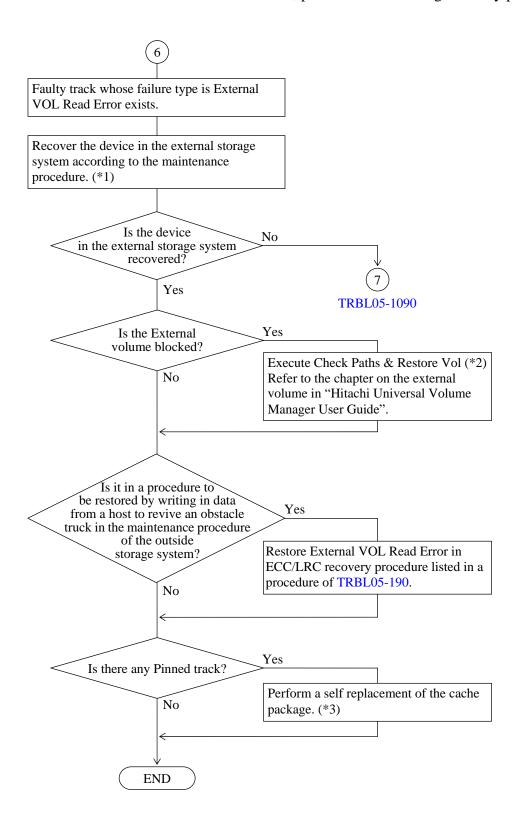


Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

- *1: It should be done in the external storage system. The user needs to ask the service personnel of the external storage system to perform the maintenance operation of the storage system. (If the external storage system is Hitachi storage, recover the faulty part according to the maintenance manual.)
- *2: Because data on device of external storage system cannot be secured with this case, it is not possible to recommend it. However, because the maintenance (Example: micro-program exchange) of VSP controlled so that pinned track may exist can be executed, it is likely to execute it in an urgent case to give priority to the recovery of hardware failure of VSP unit.
- *3: It should be done using Storage Navigator. Ask the customer to perform the recovery operation by using Storage Navigator according to the User Guide.
- *4: Please perform a self replacement of the cache package according to the either (1) or (2) following procedures. Please refer to REP03-10-10 to know how to replace.
 - (1) If you know the cache package which PIN exists, please self replacement of the cache package.
 - (2) If you don't know the cache package which PIN exists, please execute the following procedures.
 - When Cache-1CB/2CD is not installed, perform (a) in order on one of either side (*5). (a) Perform self replacement of Cache- Basic PCB.
 - When Cache-1CB/2CD is installed, perform (a) to (e) in order on one of either side (*5).
 - (a) Change the SVP mode to mode.
 - (b) Block Cache-1CB.
 - (c) Perform self replacement of Cache-Basic PCB. (Because there is a blocked Cache package, it is necessary to perform it forcibly by entering the password.)
 - (d) Perform self replacement of Cache-Option 1 PCB.
 - (e) Restore the SVP mode to the original one.
- *5: In case of A side, Cache-Basic PCB = Cache-1CA, Cache-Option1 PCB = Cache-1CB In case of B side, Cache-Basic PCB = Cache-2CC, Cache-Option1 PCB = Cache-2CD

5.2.3.8 Recovery from External VOL Read Error

When an External VOL Read Error occurs, perform the following recovery procedure.



Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

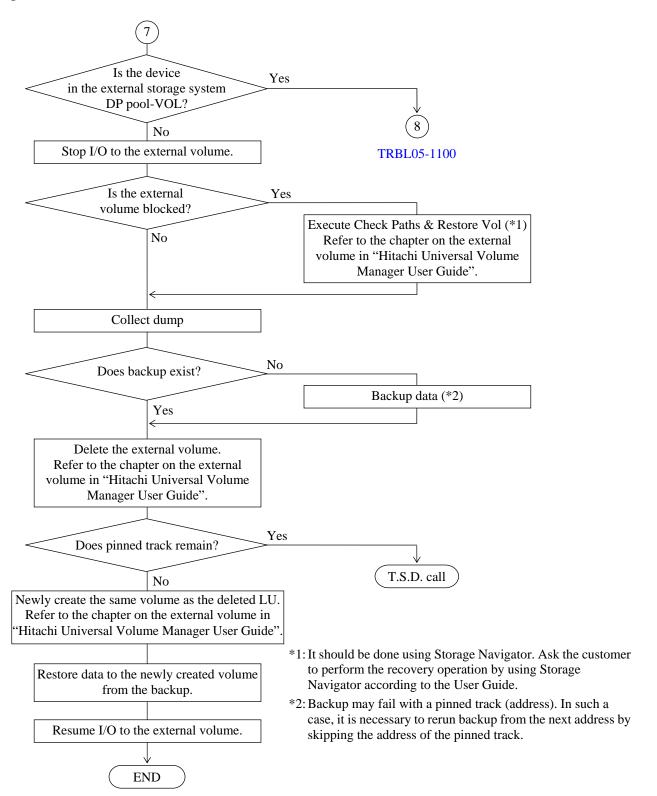
- *1: It should be done in the external storage system. The user needs to ask the service personnel of the external storage system to perform the maintenance operation of the storage system. (If the external storage system is Hitachi storage, recover the faulty part according to the maintenance manual.)
- *2: It should be done using Storage Navigator. Ask the customer to perform the recovery operation by using Storage Navigator according to the User Guide.
- *3: Please perform a self replacement of the cache package according to the either (1) or (2) following procedures. Please refer to REP03-10-10 to know how to replace.
 - (1) If you know the cache package which PIN exists, please self replacement of the cache package.
 - (2) If you don't know the cache package which PIN exists, please execute the following procedures.
 - When Cache-1CB/2CD is not installed, perform (a) in order on one of either side (*4). (a) Perform self replacement of Cache-Basic PCB.
 - When Cache-1CB/2CD is installed, perform (a) to (e) in order on one of either side (*4).
 - (a) Change the SVP mode to mode.
 - (b) Block Cache-1CB.
 - (c) Perform self replacement of Cache-Basic PCB. (Because there is a blocked Cache package, it is necessary to perform it forcibly by entering the password.)
 - (d) Perform self replacement of Cache-Option 1 PCB.
 - (e) Restore the SVP mode to the original one.
- *4: In case of A side, Cache-Basic PCB = Cache-1CA, Cache-Option1 PCB = Cache-1CB In case of B side, Cache-Basic PCB = Cache-2CC, Cache-Option1 PCB = Cache-2CD

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

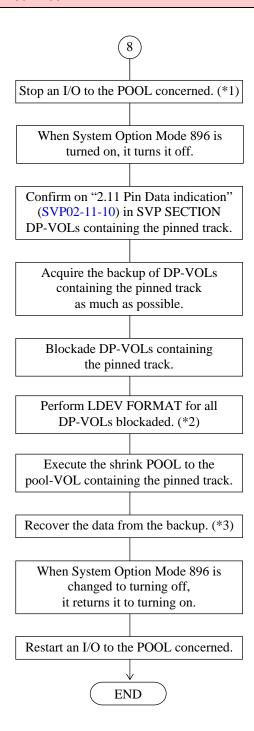
TRBL05-1090

5.2.3.9 Recovery Processing of the Device in the External Storage System

When the device of an external storage system is not recovered, perform the following recovery procedure.



TRBL05-1100



Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL05-1110

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

*1: It is necessary to stop an I/O, so that other DP-VOLs should not use the area released by LDEV FORMAT again.

- *2: The area of pool-VOL allocated in DP-VOL is released by turning on System Option Mode 867 and performing LDEV FORMAT to DP-VOL.

 As a result, the area where pinned track occurred is separated from DP-VOL.
- *3: Please be careful when restoring data from a backup.

 If data is backed up per volume (DP-VOL), unallocated areas in the volume are also backed up. Therefore when the data is restored, a write operation is performed also for the unallocated areas, and the areas become allocated (though with zero data), resulting in an increase in the used pool capacity. If many DP-VOLs are restored at a time, the pool may become full.

To restore DP-VOLs, perform the following procedure for each of all DP-VOLs.

- (1) Restore the data from the backup
- (2) Perform the Reclaim Zero Pages processing

Note: When data is restored per file from the backup, only the consumed (allocated) areas are restored from the backup, so you do not have to perform the Reclaim Zero Pages processing.

5.3 Procedure for Getting Dump and Recovering CHA in the case of CHA Protocol Control LSI Failure

5.3.1 Outline

If a system failure of the protocol control LSI that is installed in 8FC16 (16G) CHA occurs, a port failure (SIM=2120XX) that blocks the 16G channel port that is controlled by the LSI occurs. In this case, the SSB code that shows the protocol control LSI failure is reported from DKC, and you need to get the dump information to analyze the system failure of the protocol control LSI. This section describes the procedure for getting dump and recovering the faulty part.

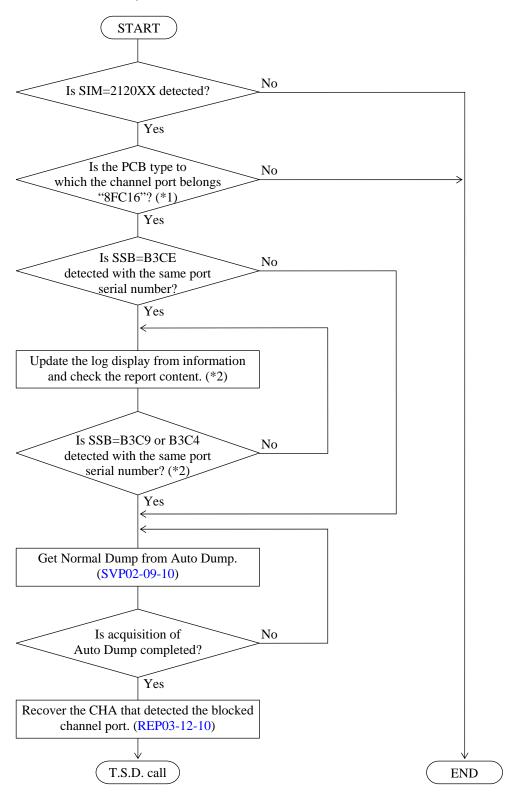
Table 7.3.1-1 SSB code reported when CHA protocol LSI failure occurs

#	SSB code	Description	Remarks	
1	В3СЕ	A system failure of the protocol control LSI was detected	It is reported when a protocol control LSI failure is detected. Collection of dump information starts in DKC.	
2	B3C4	Dump collection of the protocol control LSI is stopped, and you can get dump	It may be reported when an MP failure is detected, or a power cycle, MP maintenance, micro-program exchange, or 8FC16 CHA maintenance is performed during dump collection of the protocol control LSI.	
3	B3C9	Dump collection of the protocol control LSI is completed, and you can get dump	It is reported when dump collection of the protocol control LSI is completed. After that, if acquisition of Normal Dump is not completed, or if 8FC16 that detected the failure is not recovered, dump collection of the protocol control LSI is not performed when a new failure is detected.	

Table 7.3.1-2 Matters must be or desirable to be checked

#	Check point	Check method
1	Is the channel port serial number that detected a blocked channel port (SIM reference code=2120XX) an 16G channel port?	Confirm that the channel port serial number shown in SIM=2120XX in Information is consistent with the faulty channel port serial number shown in Maintenance and the PCB type is 8FC16.
2	Is a blocked channel port detected, and is SSB code=B3CE detected around the same time?	See SIM and Log in Information to check if SIM: 2120XX and SSB: B3CE were detected in the same channel port around the same time.

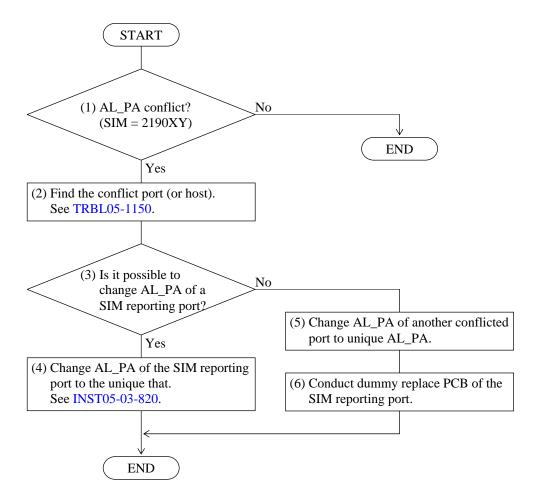
5.3.2 Method to Get Dump and Recover CHA in the case of Protocol Control LSI Failure



- *1: If it is not 8FC16, check the type of PCB that detected the failure and the applicable action item.
- *2: The time required from when the blocked channel port is detected until the SSB code that shows the end of Dump collection is reported in the case of the protocol control LSI failure of 8FC16 is about 20 minutes.

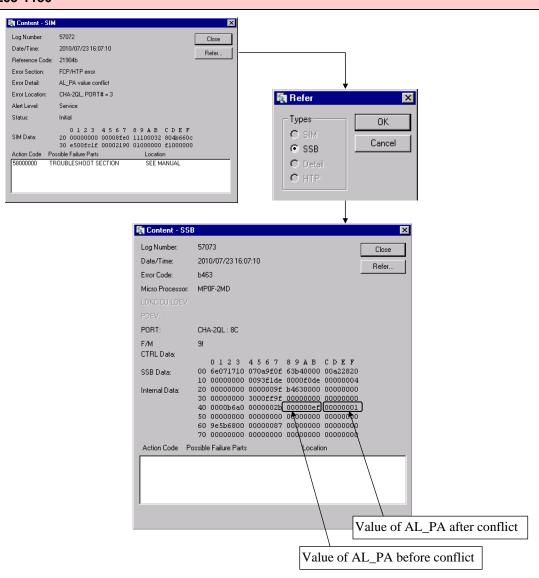
5.4. Recovery Procedure for AL_PA Conflict (SIM = 2190XY)

The following flow chart is a recovery procedure in the case where AL_PA of the nodes (CHF port, Host's Fibre channel port) which exist on the same loop overlaps. Before performing the following recovery procedure, the AL_PA of a SIM reporting port is automatically changed into an other AL_PA from previously given AL_PA. But AL_PA doesn't affect the values on SVP.



NOTE: Whether AL_PA of (3) is changed or not depends on the condition under operation.

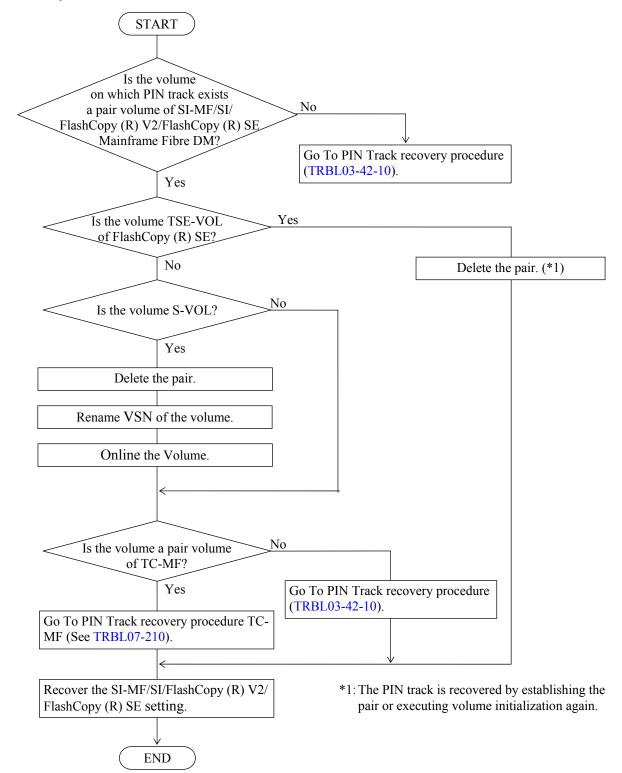
TRBL05-1150



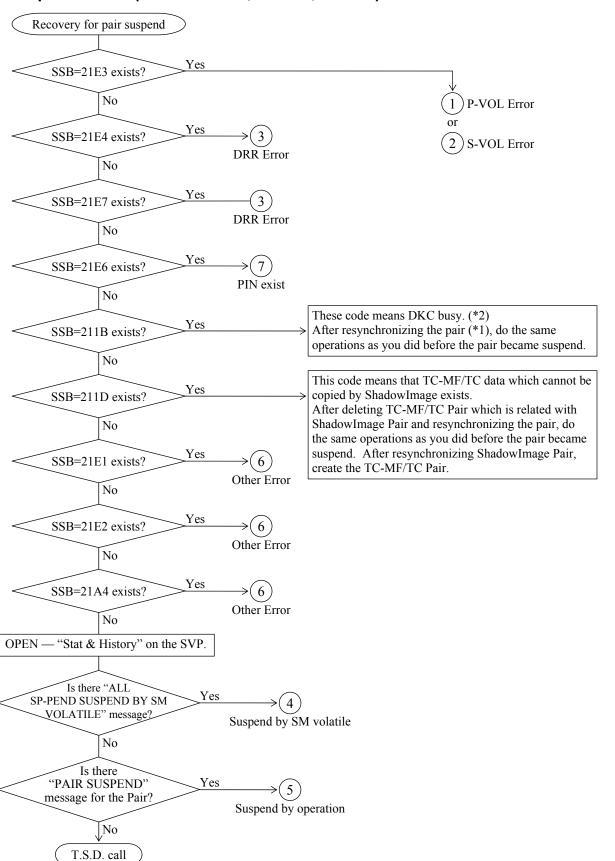
- 1. Please refer to the SSB corresponded to the SIM (=2190XY) to specify values of AL_PA before/after conflict.
- 2. When the value of AL_PA before conflict is determined, please find CHF port or Host's Fibre channel port whose AL_PA conflicts with this port.

6. Recovery from ShadowImage for Mainframe/ShadowImage/FlashCopy (R) V2/FlashCopy (R) SE Failure

6.1 Recovery Procedure for Pinned Track



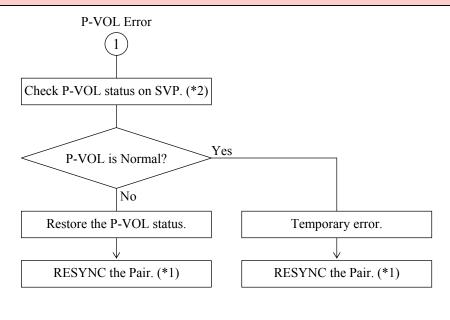
6.2 Recovery Procedure for ShadowImage for Mainframe/ShadowImage/Mainframe Fibre DM Suspended Pair (SIM = 47DXYY, 7FF102, 47E700)

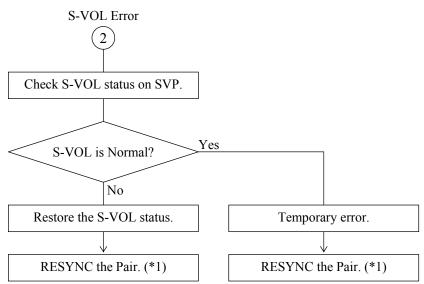


Rev.0 / Mar.2014

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

TRBL06-30

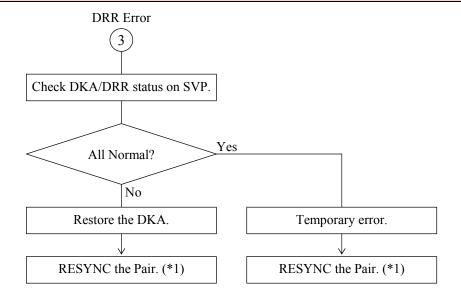




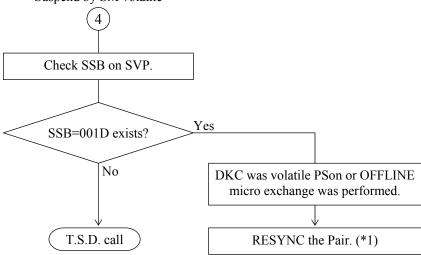
Rev.0 / Mar.2014

ar.2014 Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

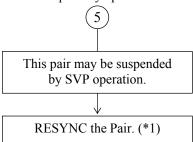
TRBL06-40



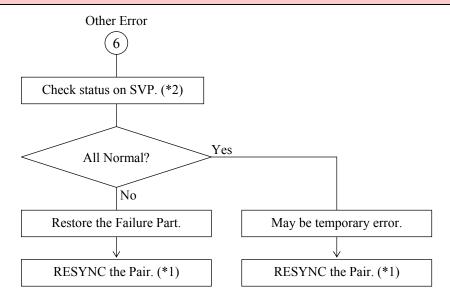
Suspend by SM volatile

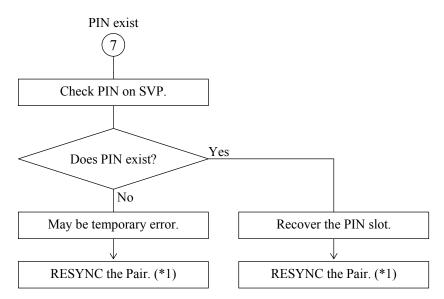


Suspend by operation



TRBL06-50



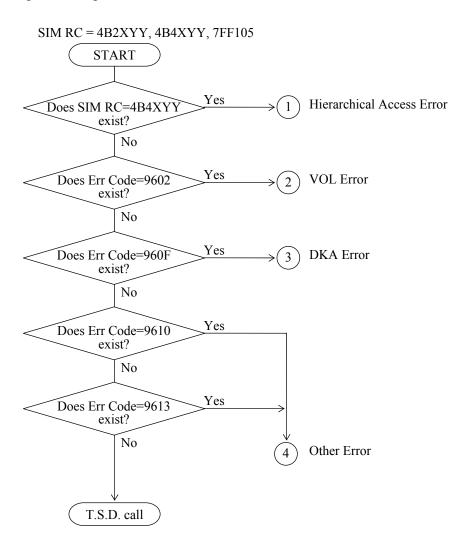


- *1: In the case of Mainframe Fibre DM pair, resync the pair if pair status is Suspend (Mig) or create the pair again after deleting the pair if pair status is Suspend.
- *2: In the case of Mainframe Fibre DM pair, follow the Mainframe Fibre DM recovery procedure.

(See TRBL12-10.)

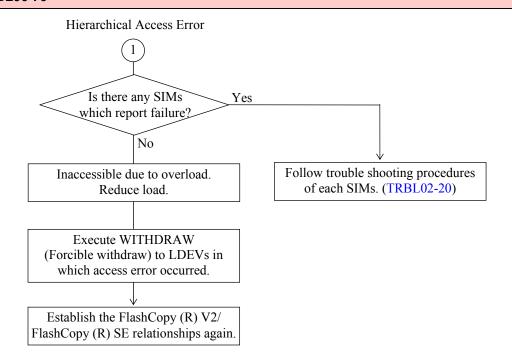
6.3 Recovery Procedure for FlashCopy (R) V2/FlashCopy (R) SE Option Failure (SIM = 4B2XYY, 4B4XYY, 7FF105, 47E500)

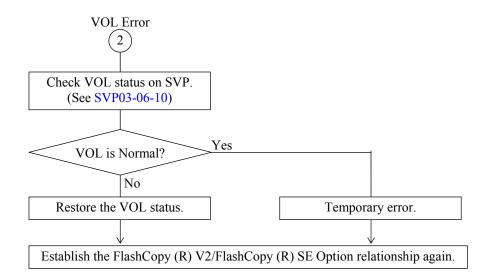
The procedure for recovery from a failure occurs in a pair of FlashCopy (R) V2/FlashCopy (R) SE Option is explained below.



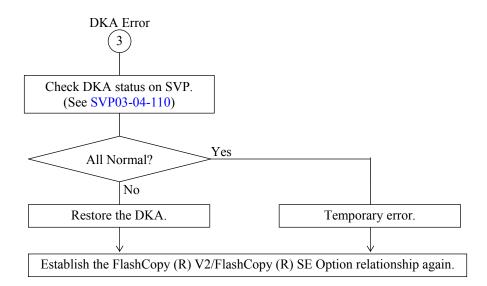
Rev.0 / Mar.2014

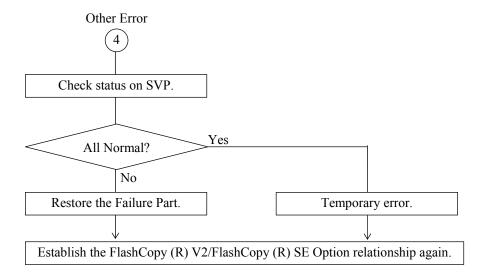
TRBL06-70





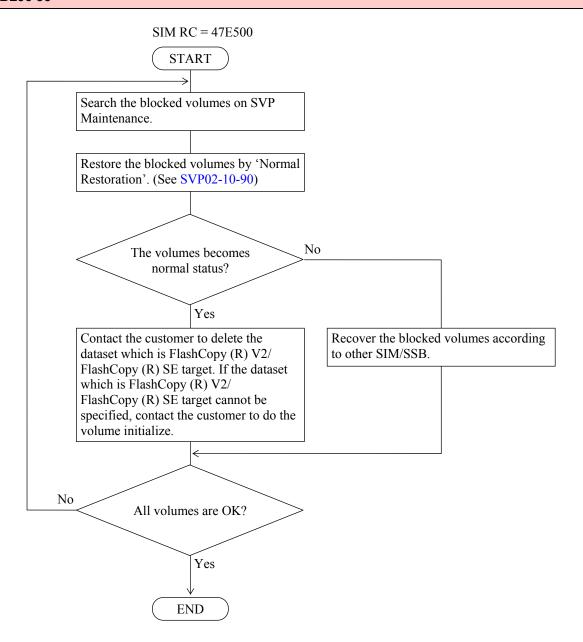
TRBL06-80





Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL06-90

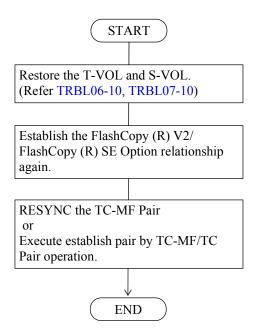


Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL06-100

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

6.3.1 Recovery Procedure for a Failure When FlashCopy (R) V2/FlashCopy (R) SE Cooperated with TrueCopy for Mainframe (SIM = 4B2XYY, 47E500)



Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

6.4 Output of Online Path Information (SSB EC= 2084)

There is a case where the following commands such as the P.P. pair operation become a command reject and cannot be executed because the target device is online.

ShadowImage, ShadowImage for Mainframe, FlashCopy (R) V2, FlashCopy (R) SE

When they become a command reject, specify the online path from the contents of SSB=2084, and make the target path offline.

NOTE: The number of SSB=2084 is limited by about 1 in ten seconds. Therefore, after taking paths offline by way of Fig. 6.4.2-1, P.P. command operation might fail with SSB=2084 again. If this happens, repeat steps of Fig. 6.4.2-1.

6.4.1 Output Information

Display SSB=2084 from the SSB log referring to SVP02-02-10. The information shown below is output to Internal Data of SSB=2084.

- The maximum of seven PIDs are output with SSB=2084 to be output.
- The total number of online paths of the device shown in the byte $0x40 \sim 0x43$ is output.

Table 6.4.1-1 SSB=2084: Details of output information

Byte	Contents	Remarks	
$0x40 \sim 0x43$	Device number (CU: LDEV number) of which the online path check was performed		
0x44	The number $(1 \sim 7)$ of effective PIDs output in SSB concerned		
$0x45 \sim 0x46$	The total number of online paths $(1 \sim 2048)$ shown in the byte $0x40 \sim 0x43$		
0x47	Preparation (0)		
$0x48 \sim 0x4F$	PID1	Refer to the details of PID.	
$0x50 \sim 0x57$	PID2	Refer to the details of PID.	
$0x58 \sim 0x5F$	PID3	Refer to the details of PID.	
$0x60 \sim 0x67$	PID4	Refer to the details of PID.	
$0x68 \sim 0x6F$	PID5	Refer to the details of PID.	
$0x70 \sim 0x77$	PID6	Refer to the details of PID.	
$0x78 \sim 0x7F$	PID7	Refer to the details of PID.	

NOTE: When the total number of online paths > effective PIDs output, there is the information of the online path which is not output. Retry the command operation after making the path offline referring to Fig. 6.4.2-1.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL06-120

Internal Data 0 2 3 8 9 f 4 5 6 b d c 40 HDEV# *1 *2 *3 PID1 50 PID2 PID3 60 PID4 PID5

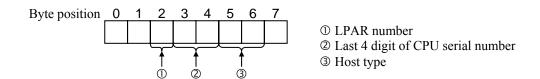
*1: The number of effective PIDs output in SSB concerned

PID6

- *2: The total number of online paths of the device shown in the byte $0x40 \sim 0x43$
- *3: Preparation (0)

70

Fig. 6.4.1-1 SSB=2084: Position of output information



NOTE: This does not show All digits of CPU serial number. Therefore, you might not be able to determine the host that has an online path. If this is the case, it is necessary to confirm online paths from all the hosts that have the same 4 digit of CPU serial number. If you use a volume from two or more hosts with the same last four digits of serial number and host type, it is recommended to use the volume from different LPAR number of the hosts.

Fig. 6.4.1-2 Details of PID

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

PID7

6.4.2 To Continue the Operation

When the volume of the operation target is online, acquire the online path information of the target volume according to the following procedure, and make it offline. After that, retry the command.

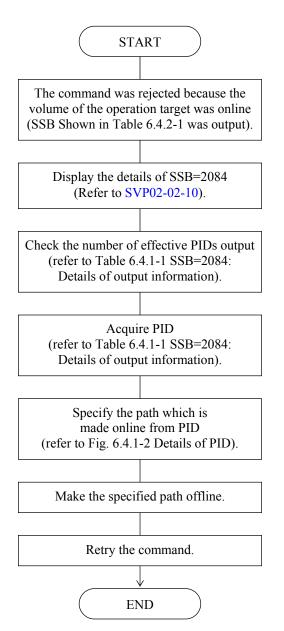


Table 6.4.2-1 SSB output by command operation

Output SSB	command	P.P.
	Pair create	ShadowImage
2312	Resync	ShadowImage
	Restore	for Mainframe
2352	Pair create	ShadowImage ShadowImage
231f	Pail create	for Mainframe
9655		FlashCopy (R) V2 FlashCopy (R) SE

NOTE: When the total number of online paths > effective PIDs output, SSB=2084 is output again (refer to Table 6.4.1-1 SSB=2084: Details of output information).

Fig. 6.4.2-1 Procedure for continuing the operation

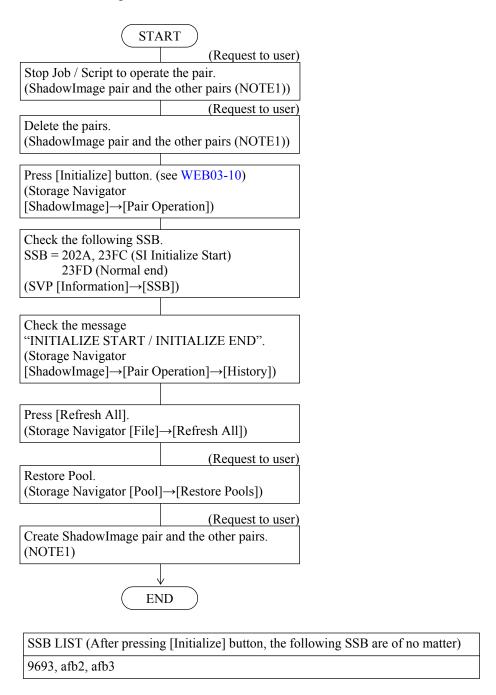
6.5 Initialization Procedure for ShadowImage

NOTE1: When the [Initialize] button is pressed, pairs formed by the following P.P. are also deleted. And VOLs of reserve attribute are also deleted.

 $[ShadowImage \ / \ ShadowImage \ z/OS\ (R)\ / \ Volume\ Migration\ / \ FlashCopy\ (R)\ V2\ / \ FlashCopy\ (R)\ SE\ / \ Thin\ Image]$

NOTE2: Perform the operation only when it is directed by the Technical Service Division.

NOTE3: For the password, refer to the Technical Service Division.



Rev.1 / Mar.2014, Jul.2014

TRBL07-10

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

7. Recovery from TrueCopy for Mainframe/TrueCopy Failure

7.1 Recovery Procedure for TrueCopy for Mainframe Failure

Hardware error sometimes causes TrueCopy for Mainframe error which is a pair suspend or a path disable.

This document explain the TrueCopy for Mainframe Error and how to recover it.

Following reports indicate TrueCopy for Mainframe error occurrence.

- SIM report of TC-MF path disable occurrence
- SIM report of TC-MF pair suspend occurrence
- SIM report of RCU Acute or Serious Level SIM detection
- SIM report of RCU Moderate Level SIM detection

Table 7.1-1 TrueCopy for Mainframe SIM REF.CODE

SIM REF. CODE	Meaning Remarks	
D4XY-YY	-YY TC-MF pair is suspended	
D4EY-YY	RCU Acute or Serious Level SIM reported	YYY: LDEV number
D4DY-YY	RCU Moderate Level SIM reported YYY: LDEV	
2180-XY	TC-MF path is disabled	X: CHA PCB # Y: Port# in PCB
2182-XY	MCU has received the notification of communication line error detection from extender.	X: CHA PCB # Y: Port# in PCB

Following pages explain each error type of TrueCopy for Mainframe Error and recovery flow chart for the TrueCopy for Mainframe Error is showed. Concerning to the Disaster Recovery Procedures, please refer to THEORY SECTION (THEORY03-08-360).

NOTE: Please check a fence Level Parameter for the suspended pair by SVP Pair Option. And if M-VOL Fence Level is 'R-VOL Data' or M-VOL Fence Level is 'R-VOL Status' and suspended SIM is 'D4FYYY', write I/O operations to the M-VOL will be rejected (THEORY03-08-230). So you must execute Delete Pair for the suspended pair, before execution of the recovery flow chart.

If you find out the $F/M = {}^{\circ}8F^{\circ}$ SSB log which have following error code (C870, C871, C872), it is not the original cause of the suspended pair. It means that the SSB log is created by the pair status change timing. So you have no need to execute a recovery action.

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

7.2 Recovery Procedure for TrueCopy Failure

A TrueCopy pair suspension or a TrueCopy pass blockade may occur owing to hardware errors. This section explains the recovery procedure against them.

Occurrences of TrueCopy errors can be known through the following.

- TrueCopy error message on the Syslog outputted by the RAID manager/TrueCopy (*1)
- Report of a TrueCopy pass blockade occurrence by the SIM
- Report of a TrueCopy pair suspension occurrence by the SIM

Table 7.2-1 TrueCopy SIM REF.CODE

SIM REF. CODE	Meaning	Remarks
D4XY-YY	TrueCopy pair suspend	X: 0 - 2, 4 - 5 or F YYY: LDEV number
2180-XY	TrueCopy pass blockade	X: CHA PCB # Y: Port# in PCB
2182-XY	MCU has received the notification of communication line error detection from extender.	X: CHA PCB # Y: Port# in PCB

SIM outputted when the TrueCopy is suspended or the TrueCopy pass is blocked has the same REF. CODE and meaning as those outputted when the TrueCopy for Mainframe pair is suspended or the TrueCopy for Mainframe pass is blocked.

Furthermore, the error recovery procedure is the same as that against an TrueCopy for Mainframe error. Therefore, follow the procedures shown in the flowcharts on page TRBL07-30 and succeeding pages to recover from a TrueCopy pair error.

When a message indicating that a TrueCopy pair error has occurred is displayed on the Syslog, check the SIM log of the connected DKC and confirm the conformance of the message on the Syslog with the SIM logged on the DKC side before starting the recovery using the above flow chart.

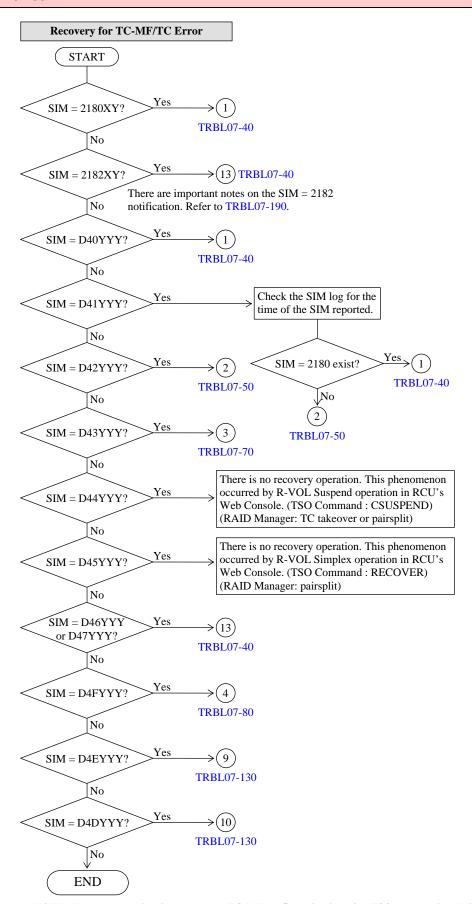
*1: When the TrueCopy pair is suspended, the RAID manager/TrueCopy displays the following message on the Syslog.

[HORCM_102] Detected a suspending status on this paired volume

(Volume: OOOO, code: XXXX).

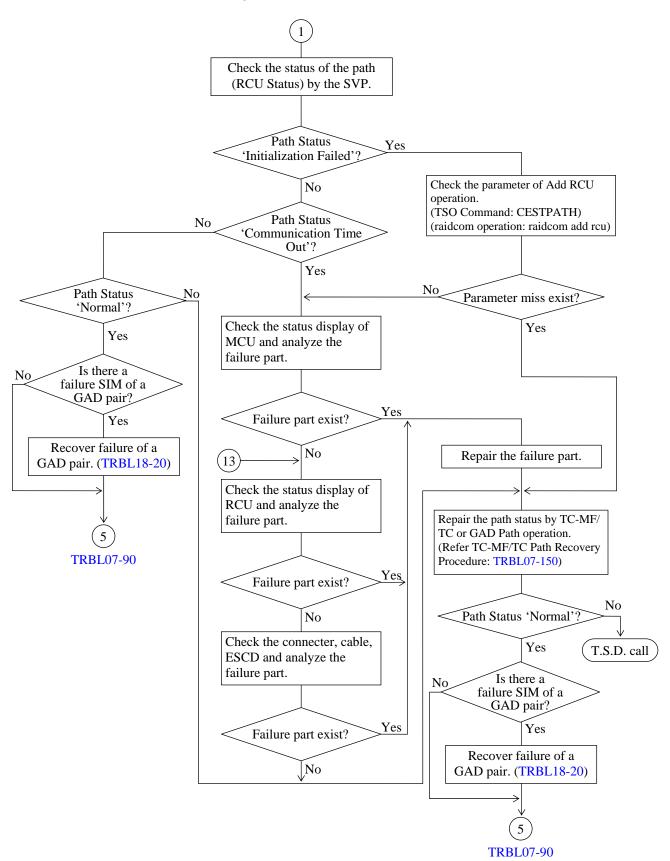
OOOO : Volume name XXXX : Factor code

TRBL07-30



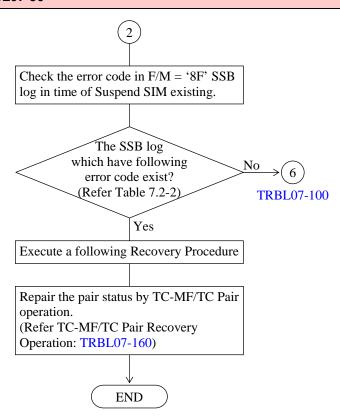
NOTE: You can control and manage your TC-MF configuration by using TSO commands or DSF commands for PPRC.

TC-MF/TC/GAD Path Recovery Section



Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL07-50



Rev.0 / Mar.2014

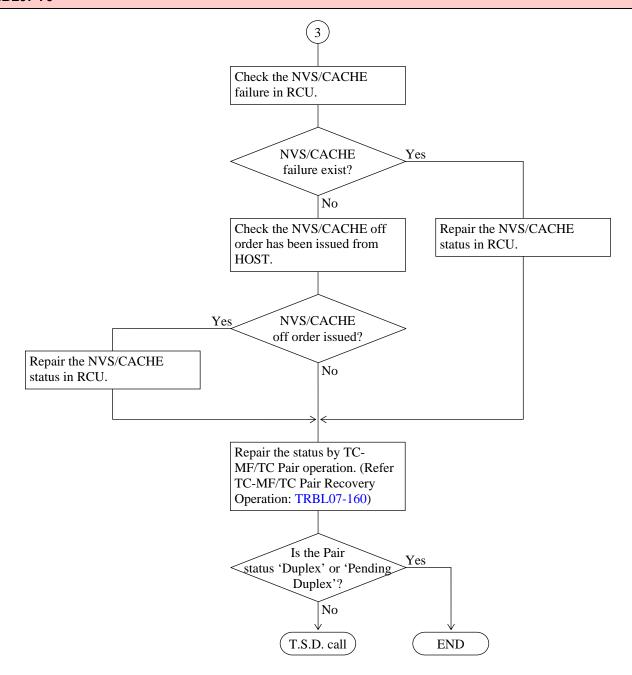
TRBL07-60

Table 7.2-2 TrueCopy for Mainframe Recovery Procedure for F/M = '8F'

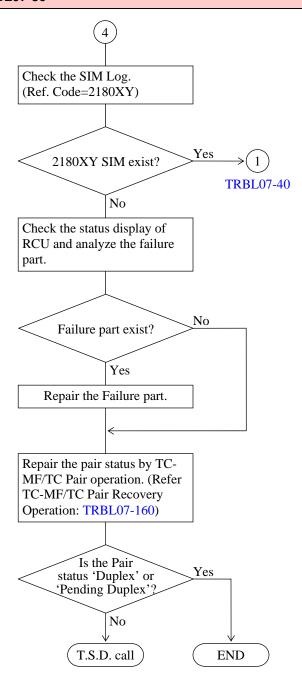
No.	F/M	error code	mean	Recovery Procedure
1	8F	C4CE	Detect a nonstandard R0 track	Change the track format to standard R0 track
			in M-VOL.	for the following track. CCHD is as follows.
			(TC-MF or PPRC operation)	(use DSF INSPECT NOPRESERVE)
				LDEV in the 'SSB log' window : M-VOL#
				SSB log byte44/45:CYL#
				byte46:HD#

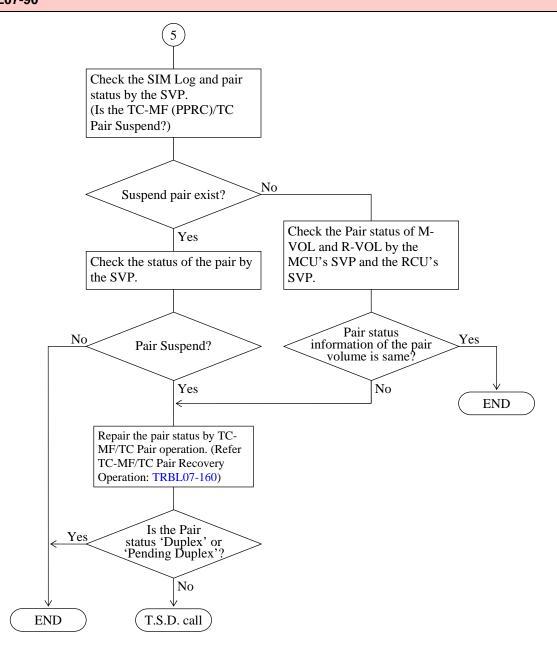
Rev.0 / Mar.2014

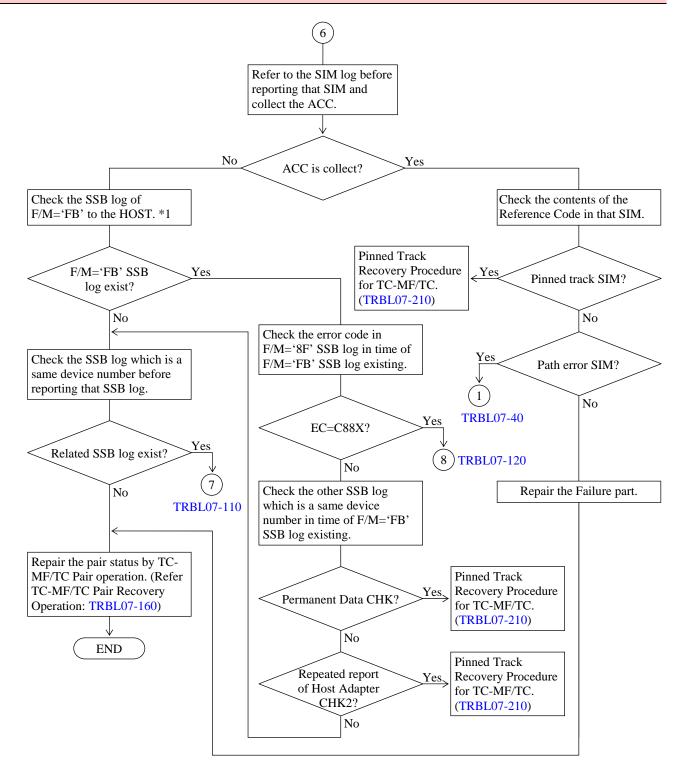
TRBL07-70



TRBL07-80



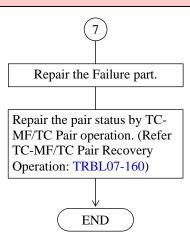




*1: In the case of the TrueCopy, confirm the SSB Log of F/M='FB' in the suspended volume concerned. When the log of 'FB' does not exist, confirm the SSB error code of F/M='FB' in the time zone for reporting a SIM concerned.

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

TRBL07-110



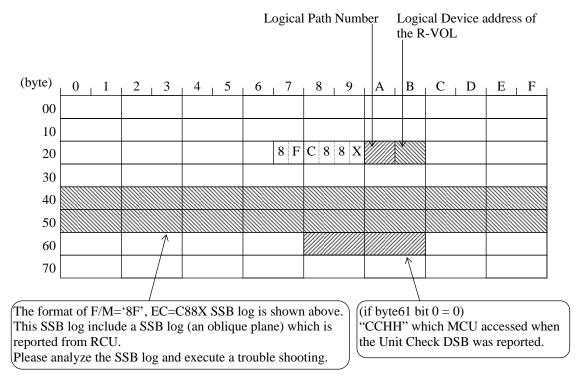
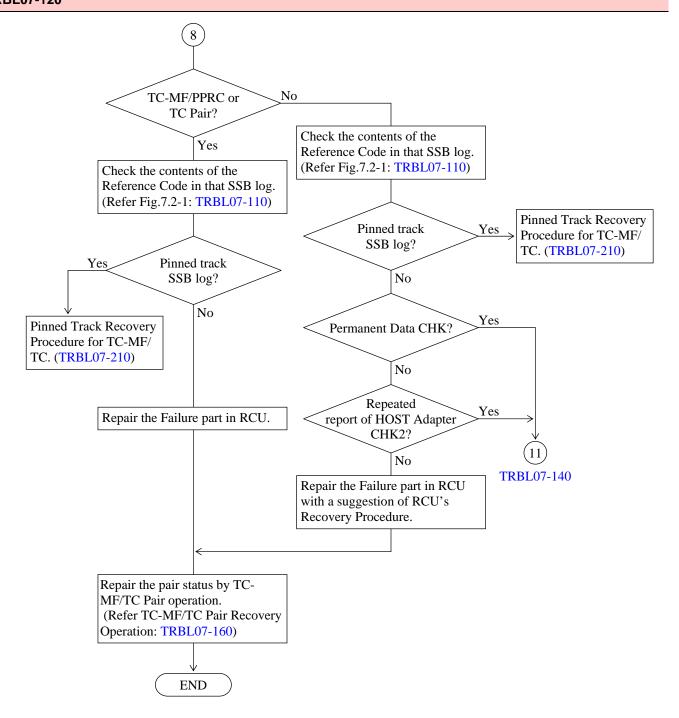
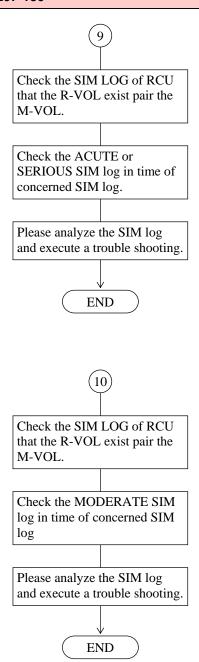
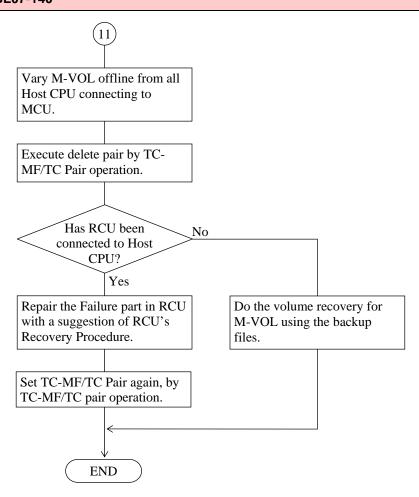


Fig.7.2-1 F/M='8F', EC=C88X SSB logformat

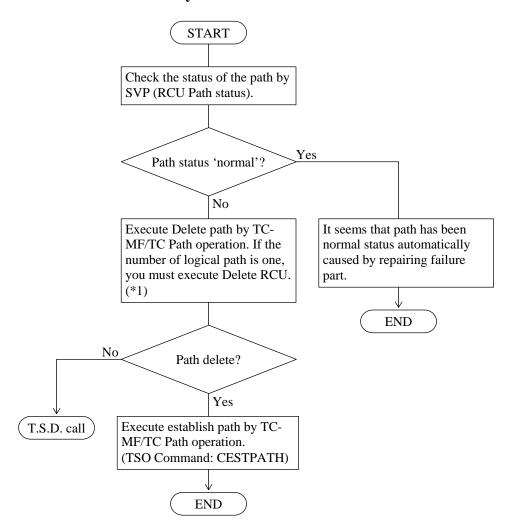


TRBL07-130



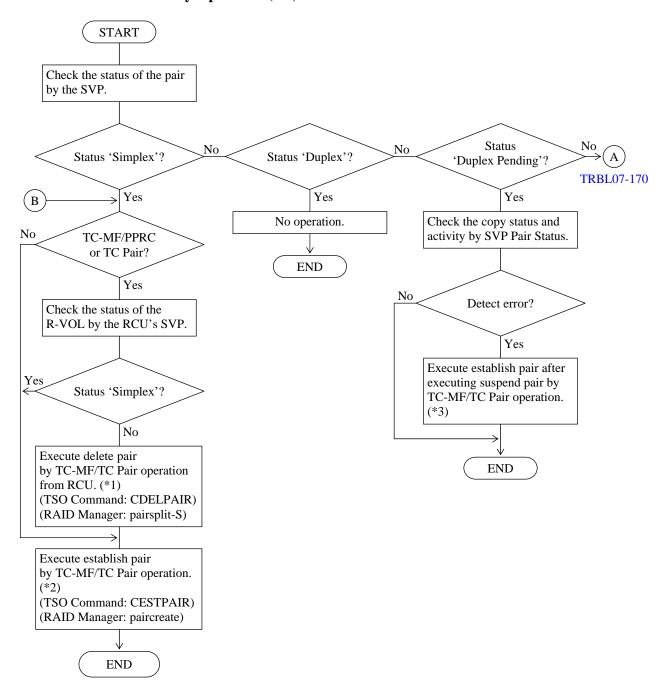


TC-MF/TC Path Recovery Procedure



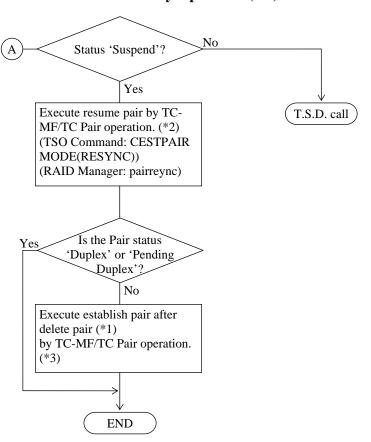
*1: For TSO Command operation, you issue CESTPATH Command, specified the path that established by the last CESTPATH Command issued except failed path. If the number of logical path is one, you must issue CDELPATH Command. (Refer IBM PPRCOPY Commands Manual)

TC-MF/TC Pair Recovery Operation (1/2)



- *2: If delete pair operation is executed according to *1, please establish pair operation to these TC-MF/TC pairs.
- *3: For TSO Command operation, you issue CESTPAIR Command after CSUSPEND Command issued In the case of the RAID Manager, issue the Pairresync command after the Pairsplit command is issued.

TC-MF/TC Pair Recovery Operation (2/2)



- *1: If delete pair operation does not complete, please try force delete pair operation.
- *2: If TrueCopy pair detail is 'SSWS (S-VOL Swapping)' on the RAID manager (pairdisplay-fc), please execute resync pair operation (pairresync-swaps).
- *3: For TSO Command operation, you issue CESTPAIR Command after CDELPAIR Command issued. In the case of the RAID Manager, issue the Paircreate command after the Pairsplit-S command is issued.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL07-180

Recovery Operation of the Suspended TrueCopy Pair

This document which is addition of the TrueCopy for Mainframe/TrueCopy Pair Recovery Operation (TRBL07-160) explain the recovery operation for the suspended TrueCopy pair in the extended LU.

After repairing the failure part, execute a resume (pair resync) operation for the suspended pair. TrueCopy resume operation can be executed from SVP, Web Console, and RAID Manager. A means, an object and a procedure of the resume operation are shown in a following table.

Table 7.2-3 TrueCopy Resume Operation Procedure in the extended LU

means	object	procedure
Web Console	Logical Unit	 (1) Check the volume number of the suspend pair from the F/M = "FB" SSB. (2) Check the LU pair status which comprises the suspended pair volume is a "PSUS", "PSUE", or "PDUB". (3) Execute a "Pairresync" operation to the LU pair. (4) Check the pair status is a "Pair" ("Duplex") or a "Copy" ("Pending Duplex").
RAID Manager	Logical Unit	 (1) Check the volume number of the suspend pair from the F/M = "FB" SSB. (2) Check the LU pair status which comprises the suspended pair volume is a "PSUS", "PSUE", or "PDUB". (3) A pairresync command issues to the suspended LU pair. (4) Check the pair status is a "Pair" ("Duplex") or a "Copy" ("Pending Duplex").

If pair status does not change "Pair" ("Duplex") or a "COPY" ("Pending Duplex") after executing a "Pairresync" operation (pairresync command for RAID Manager), please try "Pairsplit -S" operation (pairsplit -s command for RAID Manager), and execute "Paircreate" operation (paircreate command for RAID Manager) again.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL07-190

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

Procedure when the host hangs

If a host hangs up while it is writing data in TrueCopy P-VOLs, data difference between paird P-VOL and S-VOL may occur because of reasons as follows.

- 1. A write command didn't finish normally for some reason in DKC and it reported check condition to the host, but because of the hang-up, the host didn't retry the command.
- 2. During a process of a write command in DKC, a reset message was issued from the host and stopped the write command process, but because of the hang-up, the host didn't retry the command.

In this case, since write data of the last write command before hang-up was not written on the disk completely, please restart the job in order to complete the aborted command.

Recovery procedure when an error of TrueCopy pair operation occurs

When either MCU or RCU is in a highly loaded condition, a pair operation (a command for paircreate, pairsplit, or pairsplit-S) from a RAID Manager to one or multiple TrueCopy pair volume(s) may fail in (EX_CMDRJE or EX_CMDIOE). In this case, please check the pair status of the volumes that are objects of the operation. If the status is the same as before the pair operation, please retry the same pair operation.

Special mentions on SIM = 2182-XY

The SIM = 2182 host report is supported for the TrueCopy for Mainframe/TrueCopy activity with the CNT extender (Ultranet) between the MCU and RCU.

The SIM = 2182 indicates that the extender has detected a failure that occurred in a communication line and the failure has been reported to the MCU.

However, there are several special mentions on the SIM = 2182 report.

[Special mentions]

- ① When one extender has some alternative communication lines and a failure occurs on one line, the device will retry for another active line. Therefore, no line failure report is sent from the extender when the retrying succeeds.
- ② -The remote copy logical path that has received a line failure notification from the line extender is blocked (Path status: Communication Time Out).
 - -When recovering the logical path, please follow the TrueCopy for Mainframe/TrueCopy Path Recovery Procedure (TRBL07-150).

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL07-200

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

Special note of pair recovery procedure when SIM=D4FY-YY is generated The special note in the recovery procedure from Web Console when this SIM is generated when Paircreate or the Resume operation is executed, and the state of the pair enters the following states is shown below.

■ When this SIM is generated when pair create is operated

It ..state of the pair.. ..following.. explains the deletion of the object pair (make to Simplex(SMPL)) on the RCU side when becoming PVOL = Simplex(SMPL), SVOL = Duplex(PAIR) or Pending(COPY).

The recovery procedure:

Please execute the recovery work referring to this TROUBLE SHOOTING SECTION usually.

- (1) For TrueCopy/TrueCopy for Mainframe
 The Delete pair operation is executed to SVOL, and it wishes the execution of Pair create again.
- When this SIM is generated when Resume is operated

 The state of the pair is PVOL = Suspend(PSUx), SVOL = Duplex(PAIR) or Pending. (COPY)

The recovery procedure:

Please execute the recovery work referring to this TROUBLE SHOOTING SECTION usually.

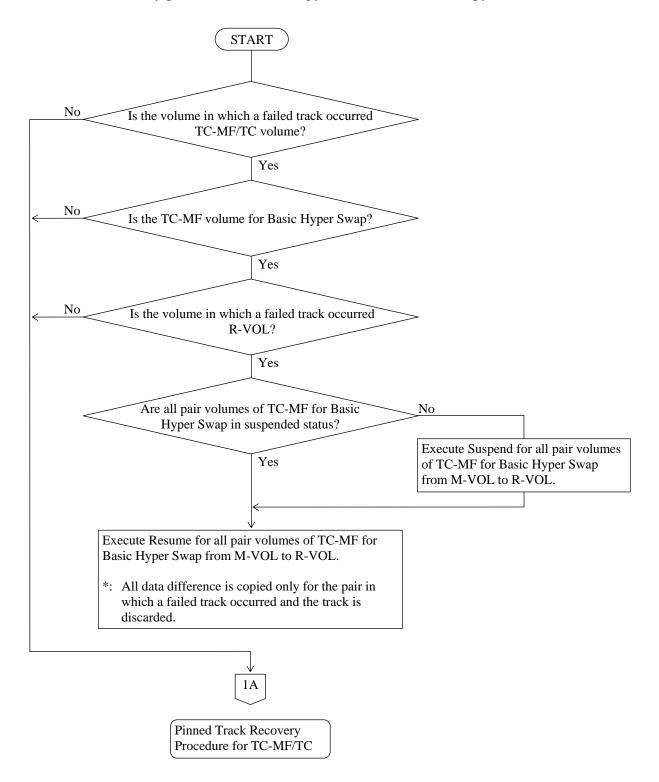
Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL07-210

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

7.3 Recovery Procedure for TrueCopy for Mainframe/TrueCopy Pinned Track

Pinned track recovery procedure for TrueCopy for Mainframe/TrueCopy is as follows.



NOTE: If the pinned track has occurred in both M-VOL and R-VOL, recover the volumes according to the following sequence.

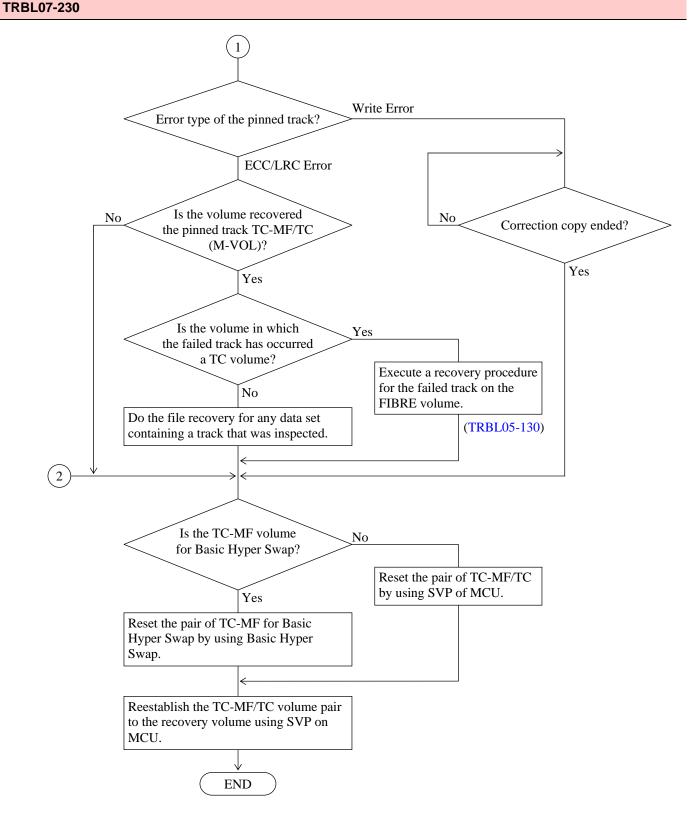
TrueCopy for Mainframe/TrueCopy : \bigcirc M-VOL \rightarrow \bigcirc R-VOL

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL07-220

Pinned Track Recovery Procedure for TC-MF/TC 1A Is the TC-MF volume for No Basic Hyper Swap? Delete the TC-MF/TC Yes volume pair in which Delete all pairs of TC-MF for Basic the pinned track has Hyper Swap by using Basic Hyper occurred using SVP on Swap. MCU. Is the volume in No which the pinned track has occurred a M-VOL? ECC/LRC Error Write Error Error type of Yes the pinned track? Check if there is a Execute the existing Write Error hardware error on the track recovery procedure. SIM/SSB/SVP Refer to "Recovery Procedure 'Maintenance' Window for Write Error Tracks" (TRBL04-40). But the data and solve the hardware problem. recovery is not included. Is the volume Yes in which the failed track has occurred a TC volume? No Execute a recovery Execute the existing pinned track procedure for the failed recovery procedure. Refer to track on the FIBRE "Recovery for Pinned tracks" volume. Note that a (TRBL03-42-10). But the data data recovery is not recovery is not included. included. *1 (TRBL05-130) *1: In the recovery from a failed track, only the LDEV formatting is executed except in the case of Solaris. For Solaris, only the correction of a failed track by means of the analyze command is executed. Data is recovered by resetting a TC

volume pair.



7.4 Recovery Action for Path Status Error

Path Status	Factor	Recovery Action
"Nothing"	Establishing path or deleting path	Delete the path with "Edit Path" or "Delete RCU", add a new path with "Edit Path" or "Add RCU".
"Initialization Failed"	Incorrect the physical connection between the MCU and RCU	Correct the physical path connection between the MCU, RCU and the path relay equipment.
	Incorrect the Port topology settings.(Fibre connection)	Setup the port topology of the both MCU and RCU correctly.
	Blockade of the MP or Port on the RCU.	Repair the MP status or Port status on the RCU.
	Broken the connection cable physically.	Replace the broken cable.
	Incorrect the path relay equipment settings or the path relay equipment doesn't work.	Correct the path relay equipment settings or repair it.
"Communication Time Out"	Blockade of the MP or Port on the MCU.	Repair the MP status or Port status on the MCU.
"Resource Shortage (MCU)"	MCU resource over. Too many path in the MCU Delete the paths and RCUs in use.	
"Resource Shortage (RCU)"	RCU resource over.	
"Serial Number Mismatch"	Incorrect the RCU S/N or Controller ID. (Fibre connection)	Delete the path with "Delete RCU", add a new path with the correct RCU S/N and Controller ID with "Add RCU" again.
	Incorrect the physical connection between the MCU and RCU.	Correct the physical path connection between the MCU, RCU and the path relay equipment.
	Incorrect the Port topology settings. (Fibre connection)	Setup the port topology of the both MCU and RCU correctly.
	Blockade of the MP or Port on the RCU.	Repair the MP status or Port status on the RCU.
	Broken the connection cable physically.	Replace the broken cable.
	Incorrect the path relay equipment settings or the path relay equipment doesn't work.	Correct the path relay equipment settings or repair it.

(To be continued)

(Continued from the preceding page)

Path Status	Path Status Factor Recovery Action		
"Invalid Port"	Specified port is not existence on the MCU.	Delete the path with "Edit Path" or "Delete RCU", add a new path with correct port on MCU again.	
	Incorrect specified port type "Serial/Fibre".	Delete the path with "Edit Path" or "Delete RCU", add a new path with correct port type "Serial/Fibre" again.	
	Specified MCU port type is not Initiator.	Change the channel type of the MCU port to Initiator.	
	Incorrect the specified CU of MCU. (Serial connection)	Delete the path with "Edit Path" or "Delete RCU", and add a new path with correct CU again.	
	Incorrect the specified link address. (Serial connection)	When MCU and RCU connects directly, set the link address to except "00". When MCU and RCU does not connect directly, set the link address to "00".	
	Exists the same path.	Confirm the MCU port, link address or RCU port, and logical address or CU#, and delete the path with "Edit Path".	
"RCU Port Number Mismatch"	Incorrect the specified RCU port.	Delete the path with "Edit Path" or "Delete RCU", and add a new path with correct RCU port again.	
	Incorrect the physical connection between the MCU and RCU.	Correct the physical path connection between the MCU, RCU and the path relay equipment.	
	Incorrect the Port topology settings. (Fibre connection)	Setup the port topology of the both MCU and RCU correctly.	
	Blockade of the MP or Port on the RCU.	Repair the MP status or Port status on the RCU.	
	Broken the connection cable physically.	Replace the broken cable.	
	Incorrect the path relay equipment settings or the path relay equipment doesn't work.	Correct the path relay equipment settings or repair it.	
"RCU Port type is not RCU Target"	Incorrect specified RCU port.	Delete the path with "Edit Path" or "Delete RCU", and add a new path with correct RCU port again.	
	Specified RCU port type is not RCU Target.	Change the channel type of the RCU port to RCU Target.	
"Communication Failed"	Blockade of the MP or Port on the RCU.	Repair the MP status or Port status on the RCU.	
	The path relay equipment doesn't work.	Repair the path relay equipment	

(To be continued)

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL07-260

(Continued from the preceding page)

Path Status	Path Status Factor Recovery Action	
"Logical Blockade"	MCU Port doesn't work.	Repair the port status on the MCU.
	RCU Port doesn't work.	Repair the port status on the RCU, and delete the path with "Edit path" or "Delete RCU" and add the path with "Edit path" or "Add RCU" again.
	The path relay equipment doesn't work.	Repair the path relay equipment, and delete the path with "Edit path" or "Delete RCU" and add the path with "Edit path" or "Add RCU" again.
	Broken the connection cable physically.	Replace the broken cable, and delete the path with "Edit path" or "Delete RCU" and add the path with "Edit path" or "Add RCU" again.
"Program Error"	Detected program error.	Delete the path with "Edit path" or "Delete RCU", and add the path with "Edit path" or "Add RCU" again.

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL07-270

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

7.5 Recovery Procedure for Related to BCM Operation Error

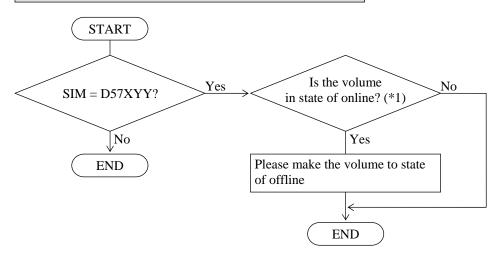
The following SIM may be reported by BCM operation. The meaning and the recovery procedure are described to the following.

Table 7.5-1 SIM related to BCM operation

SIM REF. CODE	Meaning	Remarks
D57XYY	Command device operation was executed in state of Command device was ONLINE	X: CU# YY: LDEV#

The flow chart of recovery procedure when the above-mentioned SIM was reported by the BCM operation is shown as follows.

Recovery Procedure for Related to BCM Operation Error



^{*1:} Please refer to "Error Location" of SIM for the volume number.

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

8. Forced Outage and Restart of DKC/DKU

A CAUTION

- This operation supposes a special case such as a recovery from a failure unlike the usual powering off operation. Do not perform this operation without a direction given by the T.S.D. because a system down may be caused if it is performed without due notice.
- The DKC processor failure / SVP failure SIM (73XXYY) may occur during this work. Just complete them, when the work is finished.
- Check VOJP switch of the CACHE is not on (VOJP jumper not inserted) before
 performing the operation. Performing the operation with VOJPs inserted will result in
 data loss of customer. Refer to the LOCATION SECTION (LOC06-170), and make sure
 the VOJP is not inserted in the PCB of all CM.

There are four ways of Forced Powering Off. Please refer to a way which is appropriate for your work.

No.	Section Title	Volatilizing data in SM/CM	Storing data in SM/CM in CFMs (*1)	Turning off DKU breakers	Page
1	8.1 Forced Outage and Restarting Procedure for Non-Volatile DKC/DKU (Procedure-A)	Non-volatilization (Data in SM/CM is held because of power supply to CM PCBs.)	No	No	TRBL08-20 (*4)
2	8.2 Forced Outage and Restarting Procedure for Non-Volatile DKC/DKU (Procedure-B)	Non-volatilization (Data in SM/CM is restored from CFMs.)	Yes	Yes	TRBL08-40 (*2)
3	8.3 Forced Outage and Restarting Procedure for Volatile DKC/DKU (Procedure-A)	Volatilization (All data in SM/CM is deleted.)	No	Yes	TRBL08-100
4	8.4 Forced Outage and Restarting Procedure for Volatile DKC/DKU (Procedure-B)	Volatilization (Only specific data (*3) in SM/CM is restored from CFMs.)	Yes	Yes	TRBL08-130 (*2)

- *1: When data in SM/CM is stored in CFMs, batteries are used. Therefore, energy in batteries is consumed.
- *2: If data in SM/CM cannot be stored in CFMs, No.2 and No.4 ways are not available. Confirm that Cache/Battery/CFM is normal in advance.
- *3: Only management information of both Quick Format and HDP is restored from CFMs. The other data in SM/CM is deleted.
- *4: Drive port and SAS port blockage is not cleared.

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

8.1 Forced Outage and Restarting Procedure for Non-Volatile DKC/DKU (Procedure-A)

When this operation is performed, the power of the DKC is forced to be turned off immediately. At this time, the power of DKC, DKU and FAN becomes the following conditions. When restarting the device after the power is forcibly turned off, turn the power on with reference to INST03-14-10, and make sure the READY lamp of the device is on.

DKC: After the power was forcibly turned off, the auxiliary power supplies the power to the FAN and some PCBs (MP, CM or the like) and the data in the CM is backed up because the AC input is supplied to the auxiliary power in the storage system. (The data is transferred in the cache flash memory with the battery when the AC input is turned off in this state, however do not perform it without direction by ITPD.)

DKU: The DKU is not turned off. When turning off the power of DKU, turn off the PDU breaker with reference to THEORY SECTION. (THEORY03-28-10)

A CAUTION

- This operation supposes a special case such as a recovery from a failure unlike the usual powering off operation. Do not perform this operation without a direction given by the T.S.D. because a system down may be caused if it is performed without due notice.
- The DKC processor failure / SVP failure SIM (73XXYY) may occur during this work. Just complete them, when the work is finished.
- Check VOJP switch of the CACHE is not on (VOJP jumper not inserted) before
 performing the operation. Performing the operation with VOJPs inserted will result in
 data loss of customer. Refer to the LOCATION SECTION (LOC06-170), and make sure
 the VOJP is not inserted in the PCB of all CM.
- a. Loosen the screw of the DKCPANEL, and remove the jumper cover.

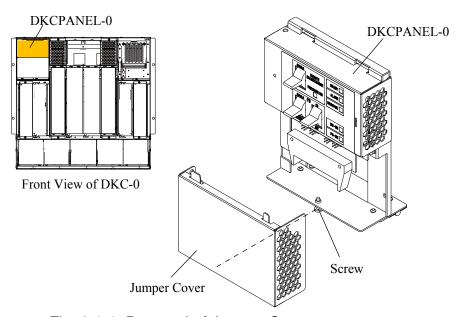


Fig. 8.1-1 Removal of Jumper Cover

TRBL08-30

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

- b. Insert the maintenance jumper into the FORCE MODE Jumper (JP5) on the DKCPANEL.
- c. After the insertion of the maintenance jumper, wait for five seconds or more, and check the FORCE MODE LED lights.
- d. Pull out the maintenance jumper within ten seconds after the FORCE MODE LED lights.
- e. Be sure the FORCE MODE LED lights. (It switches to the FORCE MODE. However, when the maintenance jumper is not pulled out within 10 seconds, the FORCE MODE LED is turned off, and it does not switch to the FORCE MODE.)
- f. Insert the maintenance jumper into the SYSFORCE OFF jumper (JP6) with the FORCE MODE LED lights. (The FORCE MODE is released automatically and the FORCE MODE LED is turned off, when a certain period of time passes without inserting the SYSFORCE OFF jumper. In this case, repeat the procedure from b.)
- g. Remove the maintenance jumper after the PS-ON LED is turned off.
- h. Install the jumper cover on the DKCPANEL, and secure it with the screw. (Refer to Fig. 8.1-1.)

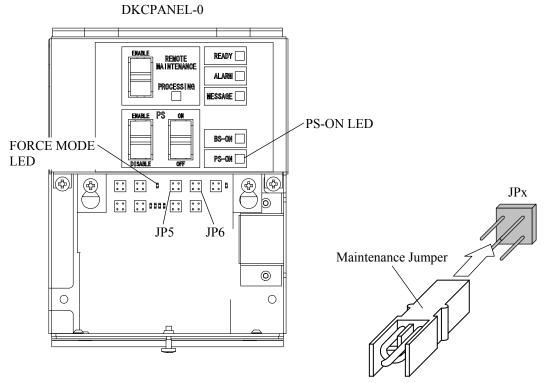


Fig. 8.1-2 Insertion of Maintenance Jumper

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL08-40

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

8.2 Forced Outage and Restarting Procedure for Non-Volatile DKC/DKU (Procedure-B)

When this procedure is executed, the AC input of the power supply of the DKC and the DKU is compulsorily cut off, and the power supply is turned off immediately. The data in the CM is stored to the CFM, and is restored to the cache memory after restart.

To restart system of SM/CM volatilizing, refer to "8.3 Forced Outage and Restarting Procedure for Volatile DKC/DKU (Procedure-A)" and "8.4 Forced Outage and Restarting Procedure for Volatile DKC/DKU (Procedure-B)".

A CAUTION

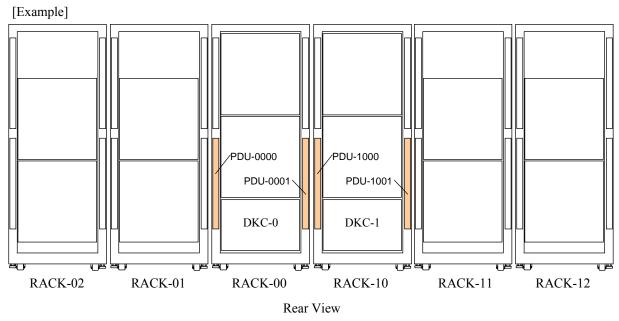
- This operation supposes a special case such as a recovery from a failure unlike the usual powering off operation. Do not perform this operation without a direction given by the T.S.D. because a system down may be caused if it is performed without due notice.
- The DKC processor failure / SVP failure SIM (73XXYY) may occur during this work. Just complete them, when the work is finished.
- Check VOJP switch of the CACHE is not on (VOJP jumper not inserted) before
 performing the operation. Performing the operation with VOJPs inserted will result in
 data loss of customer. Refer to the LOCATION SECTION (LOC06-170), and make sure
 the VOJP is not inserted in the PCB of all CM.
- a. Display the initial screen of SVP according to "1. How to Operate the SVP (PC)" (SVP01-10) of the SVP SECTION.
 - Refer to "3.1.5.3 Attachment / Removal Procedure of Maintenance PC" (INST03-01-130) for the procedure of attachment, removal, and connection of the Maintenance PC.
- b. Select (CL) [Maintenance Components]-[Maintenance Other Components] from the menu of the 'Action' Window to display 'Maintenance Other Components' Window.
- c. Select (CL) [Maintenance] button to display 'Maintenance' Window.
- d. Check whether there is blinking part in all CM PCBs and the batteries installed in the device.
 - <When there is a blinking part>
 - Try this procedure again after recovering the problem part, except when other instructions exist from T.S.D.
 - <When there is no blinking part or the recovery of all the problem parts is completed> Select (CL) [Exit], close 'Maintenance' Window, and go to the next section.
- e. Refer to the SVP SECTION (SVP01-170), and turn off the power supply of the SVP.

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

- f. Loosen the screw of the DKCPANEL, and remove the jumper cover.
 - \rightarrow Refer to Fig. 8.1-1 (TRBL08-20).
- g. Insert the maintenance jumper into the FORCE MODE Jumper (JP5) on the DKCPANEL.
 - \rightarrow Refer to Fig. 8.1-2 (TRBL08-30).
- h. After the insertion of the maintenance jumper, wait for five seconds or more, and check the FORCE MODE LED lights.
- i. Pull out the maintenance jumper within ten seconds after the FORCE MODE LED lights.
- j. Be sure the FORCE MODE LED lights. (It switches to the FORCE MODE. However, when the maintenance jumper is not pulled out within 10 seconds, the FORCE MODE LED is turned off, and it does not switch to the FORCE MODE.)
- k. Insert the maintenance jumper into the SYSFORCE OFF jumper (JP6) with the FORCE MODE LED lights. (The FORCE MODE is released automatically and the FORCE MODE LED is turned off, when a certain period of time passes without inserting the SYSFORCE OFF jumper. In this case, repeat the procedure from g.)
- 1. Remove the maintenance jumper after the PS-ON LED is turned off.
 - \rightarrow Refer to Fig. 8.1-2 (TRBL08-30).
- m. Install the jumper cover on the DKCPANEL, and secure it with the screw.
 - \rightarrow Refer to Fig. 8.1-1 (TRBL08-20).

n. Turn off the PDU breakers (PDU-0000, PDU-0001, PDU-1000 and PDU-1001) that are connected to the DKC.

Be sure to turn off all the PDU breakers that are connected to the DKC. If any PDUs are not turned off, DKC voltage alarm may be detected.



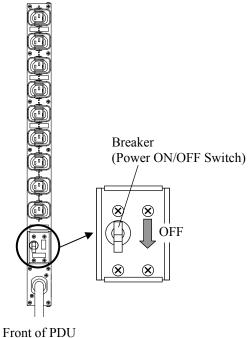
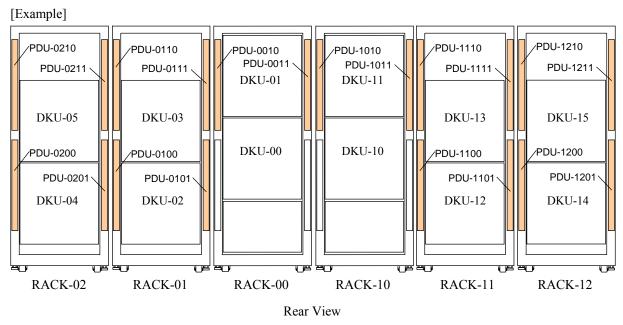


Fig. 8.2-1 Turning Off PDU Breaker

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

p. Turn off the PDU breakers (PDU-0010, PDU-0011, PDU-0100, PDU-0101, PDU-0110, PDU-0111, PDU-0200, PDU-0201, PDU-0210, PDU-0211, PDU-1010, PDU-1011, PDU-1100, PDU-1101, PDU-1110, PDU-1111, PDU-1200, PDU-1201, PDU-1210 and PDU-1211) that are connected to the DKU.



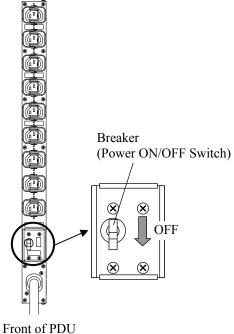
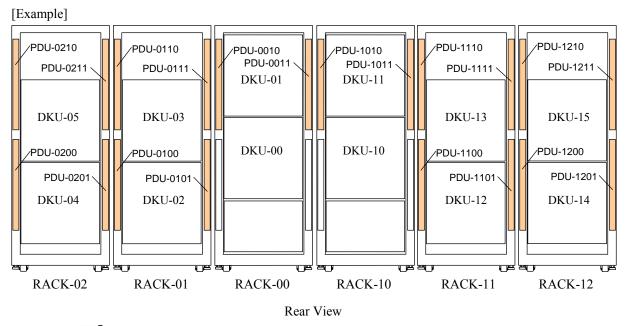


Fig. 8.2-2 Turning Off PDU Breaker

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd. TRBL08-80

- Take an interval of 10 seconds or more. q.
- Turn on the PDU breakers (PDU-0010, PDU-0011, PDU-0100, PDU-0101, PDU-0110, PDU-0100, PDU-01000, PDU-0100, PDU-0100, PDU-0100, PDU-01000, PDU-0 r. 0111, PDU-0200, PDU-0201, PDU-0210, PDU-0211, PDU-1010, PDU-1011, PDU-1100, PDU-1101, PDU-1110, PDU-1111, PDU-1200, PDU-1201, PDU-1210 and PDU-1211) that are connected to the DKU.



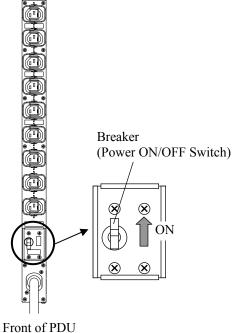
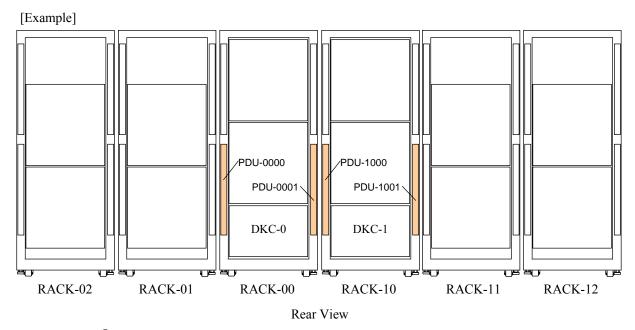


Fig. 8.2-3 Turning On PDU Breaker

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

s. Turn on the PDU breakers (PDU-0000, PDU-0001, PDU-1000 and PDU-1001) that are connected to the DKC.



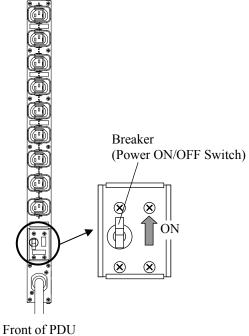


Fig. 8.2-4 Turning On PDU Breaker

t. Refer to "3.14.1 Power ON Procedure" (INST03-14-10), and turn on the POWER ON/OFF switch.

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

8.3 Forced Outage and Restarting Procedure for Volatile DKC/DKU (Procedure-A)

When this procedure is executed, the AC input of the power supply of the DKC and the DKU is compulsorily cut off, and the power supply is turned off immediately. Using this procedure, the data in the CM is not stored to the CFM. Therefore, when you restart the system the SM/CM is volatile. To restart system of SM/CM nonvolatilizing, please refer to "8.2 Forced Outage and Restarting Procedure for Non-Volatile DKC/DKU (Procedure-B)" (TRBL08-40).

A CAUTION

- This operation supposes a special case such as a recovery from a failure unlike the
 usual powering off operation. Do not perform this operation without a direction given by
 the T.S.D. because a system down may be caused if it is performed without due notice.
- The DKC processor failure / SVP failure SIM (73XXYY) may occur during this work. Just complete them, when the work is finished.
- The forced outage and restarting procedure of volatilize has 2 varieties. The range of volatilizing of SM are different between "Procedure-A" and "Procedure-B". Follow the instruction of T.S.D. to do "Procedure-A" shown here or to do "Procedure-B" shown in "8.4 Forced Outage and Restarting Procedure for Volatile DKC/DKU (Procedure-B)" (TRBL08-130).
- After this Operation was completed, please refer the MICRO-FC SECTION (MICRO07-10), and re-perform Config Version Up with the media of the version same as Config on the device by all means.
- Display the initial screen of SVP according to "1. How to Operate the SVP (PC)" (SVP01-10) of the SVP SECTION.
 Refer to "3.1.5.3 Attachment / Removal Procedure of Maintenance PC" (INST03-01-130) for the procedure of attachment, removal, and connection of the Maintenance PC.
- b. Select (CL) [Maintenance Components]-[Maintenance Other Components] from the menu of the 'Action' Window to display 'Maintenance Other Components' Window.
- c. Select (CL) [Maintenance] button to display 'Maintenance' Window.
- d. Check whether there is blinking part in all CM PCBs and the batteries installed in the device.
 - <When there is a blinking part>
 Try this procedure again after recovering the problem part, except when other instructions exist from T.S.D.
 - <When there is no blinking part or the recovery of all the problem parts is completed> Select (CL) [Exit], close 'Maintenance' Window, and go to the next section.
- e. Refer to the SVP SECTION (SVP01-170), and turn off the power supply of the SVP.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL08-110

- f Turn the cover of all CACHE, then turn on VOJP switch (insert VOJP jumper) to all CACHE referring to LOCATION SECTION (LOC06-170).
- Confirm the SHUT DOWN LED of all CACHE (LED 1-1 of Figure 3.2-1 of LOC03-30) is lit g. referring to LOCATION SECTION (LOC03-30).
 - → If any LED is not lit, stop the procedure and contact the T.S.D.
- Loosen the screw of the DKCPANEL, and remove the jumper cover. h.
 - \rightarrow Refer to Fig. 8.1-1 (TRBL08-20).
- Insert the maintenance jumper into the FORCE MODE Jumper (JP5) on the DKCPANEL. i.
 - \rightarrow Refer to Fig. 8.1-2 (TRBL08-30).
- After the insertion of the maintenance jumper, wait for five seconds or more, and check the j. FORCE MODE LED lights.
- Pull out the maintenance jumper within ten seconds after the FORCE MODE LED lights.
- 1. Be sure the FORCE MODE LED lights. (It switches to the FORCE MODE. However, when the maintenance jumper is not pulled out within 10 seconds, the FORCE MODE LED is turned off, and it does not switch to the FORCE MODE.)
- m. Insert the maintenance jumper into the SYSFORCE OFF jumper (JP6) with the FORCE MODE LED lights. (The FORCE MODE is released automatically and the FORCE MODE LED is turned off, when a certain period of time passes without inserting the SYSFORCE OFF jumper. In this case, repeat the procedure from i.)
- Remove the maintenance jumper after the PS-ON LED is turned off. n.
 - \rightarrow Refer to Fig. 8.1-2 (TRBL08-30).
- Install the jumper cover on the DKCPANEL, and secure it with the screw.
 - \rightarrow Refer to Fig. 8.1-1 (TRBL08-20).

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014 Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

TRBL08-120

q. Turn off the PDU breakers (PDU-0000, PDU-0001, PDU-1000 and PDU-1001) that are connected to the DKC.

 \rightarrow Refer to Fig. 8.2-1 (TRBL08-60).

Be sure to turn off all the PDU breakers that are connected to the DKC. If any PDUs are not turned off, DKC voltage alarm may be detected.

- r. Turn off the PDU breakers (PDU-0010, PDU-0011, PDU-0100, PDU-0101, PDU-0110, PDU-0111, PDU-0200, PDU-0201, PDU-0210, PDU-0211, PDU-1010, PDU-1011, PDU-1100, PDU-1101, PDU-1110, PDU-1111, PDU-1200, PDU-1201, PDU-1210 and PDU-1211) that are connected to the DKU.
 - \rightarrow Refer to Fig. 8.2-2 (TRBL08-70).
- s. Take an interval of 10 seconds or more.
- t. Confirm all LED of all CACHE were turned off referring to LOCATION SECTION (LOC03-30).
 - → If any LED is still lit, stop the procedure and contact the T.S.D.
- u. Turn off VOJP switch (remove VOJP jumper) of all CACHE referring to LOCATION SECTION (LOC06-170), then turn the cover back of all CACHE.
- v. Turn on the PDU breakers (PDU-0010, PDU-0011, PDU-0100, PDU-0101, PDU-0110, PDU-0111, PDU-0200, PDU-0201, PDU-0210, PDU-0211, PDU-1010, PDU-1011, PDU-1100, PDU-1101, PDU-1110, PDU-1111, PDU-1200, PDU-1201, PDU-1210 and PDU-1211) that are connected to the DKU.
 - \rightarrow Refer to Fig. 8.2-3 (TRBL08-80).
- w. Turn on the PDU breakers (PDU-0000, PDU-0001, PDU-1000 and PDU-1001) that are connected to the DKC.
 - \rightarrow Refer to Fig. 8.2-4 (TRBL08-90).
- x. Refer to "3.14.1 Power ON Procedure" (INST03-14-10), and turn on the POWER ON/OFF switch.

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

8.4 Forced Outage and Restarting Procedure for Volatile DKC/DKU (Procedure-B)

When this procedure is executed, the AC input of the power supply of the DKC and the DKU is compulsorily cut off, and the power supply is turned off immediately. Using this procedure, the data in the CM is not restored from the CFM. Therefore, when you restart the system the SM/CM is volatile.

To restart system of SM/CM nonvolatilizing, please refer to "8.2 Forced Outage and Restarting Procedure for Non-Volatile DKC/DKU (Procedure-B)" (TRBL08-40).

A CAUTION

- This operation supposes a special case such as a recovery from a failure unlike the usual powering off operation. Do not perform this operation without a direction given by the T.S.D. because a system down may be caused if it is performed without due notice.
- The DKC processor failure / SVP failure SIM (73XXYY) may occur during this work. Just complete them, when the work is finished.
- The forced outage and restarting procedure of volatilize has 2 varieties. The range of volatilizing of SM are different between "Procedure-A" and "Procedure-B". Follow the instruction of T.S.D. to do "Procedure-A" shown in "8.3 Forced Outage and Restarting Procedure for Volatile DKC/DKU (Procedure-A)" (TRBL08-100) or to do "Procedure-B" shown in here.
- Do not change the location of CACHE after breaker off, because the user data and the configuration information may be lost.
- After this Operation was completed, please refer the MICRO-FC SECTION (MICRO07-10), and re-perform Config Version Up with the media of the version same as Config on the device by all means.
- a. Display the initial screen of SVP according to "1. How to Operate the SVP (PC)" (SVP01-10) of the SVP SECTION.
 Refer to "3.1.5.3 Attachment / Removal Procedure of Maintenance PC" (INST03-01-130) for the procedure of attachment, removal, and connection of the Maintenance PC.
- b. Select (CL) [Maintenance Components]-[Maintenance Other Components] from the menu of the 'Action' Window to display 'Maintenance Other Components' Window.
- c. Select (CL) [Maintenance] button to display 'Maintenance' Window.
- d. Check whether there is blinking part in all CM PCBs and the batteries installed in the device.
 - <When there is a blinking part>
 - Try this procedure again after recovering the problem part, except when other instructions exist from T.S.D.
 - <When there is no blinking part or the recovery of all the problem parts is completed>Select (CL) [Exit], close 'Maintenance' Window, and go to the next section.

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

- e. Refer to the SVP SECTION (SVP01-170), and turn off the power supply of the SVP.
- f. Loosen the screw of the DKCPANEL, and remove the jumper cover.
 - \rightarrow Refer to Fig. 8.1-1 (TRBL08-20).
- g. Insert the maintenance jumper into the FORCE MODE Jumper (JP5) on the DKCPANEL.
 - \rightarrow Refer to Fig. 8.1-2 (TRBL08-30).
- h. After the insertion of the maintenance jumper, wait for five seconds or more, and check the FORCE MODE LED lights.
- i. Pull out the maintenance jumper within ten seconds after the FORCE MODE LED lights.
- j. Be sure the FORCE MODE LED lights. (It switches to the FORCE MODE. However, when the maintenance jumper is not pulled out within 10 seconds, the FORCE MODE LED is turned off, and it does not switch to the FORCE MODE.)
- k. Insert the maintenance jumper into the SYSFORCE OFF jumper (JP6) with the FORCE MODE LED lights. (The FORCE MODE is released automatically and the FORCE MODE LED is turned off, when a certain period of time passes without inserting the SYSFORCE OFF jumper. In this case, repeat the procedure from g.)
- 1. Remove the maintenance jumper after the PS-ON LED is turned off.
 - \rightarrow Refer to Fig. 8.1-2 (TRBL08-30).
- m. Install the jumper cover on the DKCPANEL, and secure it with the screw.
 - \rightarrow Refer to Fig. 8.1-1 (TRBL08-20).
- n. Turn off the PDU breakers (PDU-0000, PDU-0001, PDU-1000 and PDU-1001) that are connected to the DKC.
 - \rightarrow Refer to Fig. 8.2-1 (TRBL08-60).

Be sure to turn off all the PDU breakers that are connected to the DKC.

If any PDUs are not turned off, DKC voltage alarm may be detected.

- p. Turn off the PDU breakers (PDU-0010, PDU-0011, PDU-0100, PDU-0101, PDU-0110, PDU-0111, PDU-0200, PDU-0201, PDU-0210, PDU-0211, PDU-1010, PDU-1011, PDU-1100, PDU-1101, PDU-1110, PDU-1111, PDU-1200, PDU-1201, PDU-1210 and PDU-1211) that are connected to the DKU.
 - \rightarrow Refer to Fig. 8.2-2 (TRBL08-70).

DKC810I Hitachi Proprietary

Rev.0 / Mar.2014 Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

TRBL08-150

Confirm all LED of all CACHE were turned off, referring to LOCATION SECTION q. (LOC03-30). (It may take up to max 32 minutes to the LED to go out.) → If any LED is still lit, stop the procedure and contact the T.S.D.

- Turn the cover of all CACHE, then turn on VOJP switch (insert VOJP jumper) to all CACHE r. referring to LOCATION SECTION (LOC06-170).
- Turn on the PDU breakers (PDU-0010, PDU-0011, PDU-0100, PDU-0101, PDU-0110, PDU-0100, PDU-01000, PD 0111, PDU-0200, PDU-0201, PDU-0210, PDU-0211, PDU-1010, PDU-1011, PDU-1100, PDU-1101, PDU-1110, PDU-1111, PDU-1200, PDU-1201, PDU-1210 and PDU-1211) that are connected to the DKU.
 - \rightarrow Refer to Fig. 8.2-3 (TRBL08-80).
- Turn on the PDU breakers (PDU-0000, PDU-0001, PDU-1000 and PDU-1001) that are t. connected to the DKC.
 - \rightarrow Refer to Fig. 8.2-4 (TRBL08-90).
- Confirm the SHUT DOWN LED of all CACHE (LED 1-1 of Figure 3.2-1 of LOC03-30) is lit referring to LOCATION SECTION (LOC03-30).
 - → If any LED is not lit, stop the procedure and contact the T.S.D.
- Refer to "3.14.1 Power ON Procedure" (INST03-14-10), and turn on the POWER ON/OFF switch.
- w. After system is ready, turn off VOJP switch (remove VOJP jumper) of all CACHE and turn the cover back of all CACHE, referring to LOCATION SECTION (LOC06-170).
- Complete all SIM-RC = FFFE0X. X.
- When SIM-RC = FFCE0X, FFCFYX, either 610002 of, SIM were reported, you might lose у. user data, constitution information. Please carry out involved site limit reason with reference to TRBL03-35-10.

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

9. Recovery from UR Failure

9.1 Recovery Procedure for UR Failure

The UR pair suspension or UR path blockade may occur triggered by a hardware failure. This section contains explanation of the UR failure and procedures for recovery from the failure. Occurrence of the UR failure can be known through the following.

- SIM report on occurrence of path blockade
- SIM report on occurrence of pair suspension
- UR failure message in the Syslog output by RAID Manage/UR or RAID Manager/TT, in the case of the UR (Open)*1

SIM REF.CODE	Meaning	Remarks
2180-XY	Path blockade	X: CHA PCB #
		Y: Port# in PCB
DCXY-YY	UR pair suspension	X: 0 to 2, 4 to A, or F YY: LDEV number
DCEX-ZZ	JNL overflow warning	X: 0 to 3 ZZ: Journal group number
DCFX-ZZ	Read JNL interruption	X: 0 to 3 ZZ: Journal group number

The UR supports the Force Delete Pair function. When recovery from the failure using an ordinary procedure is unsuccessful, take a recovery action performing Force Delete Pair operation.

*1: When an UR pair is suspended, RAID Manager/UR or RAID Manager/TT displays the following message in the Syslog.

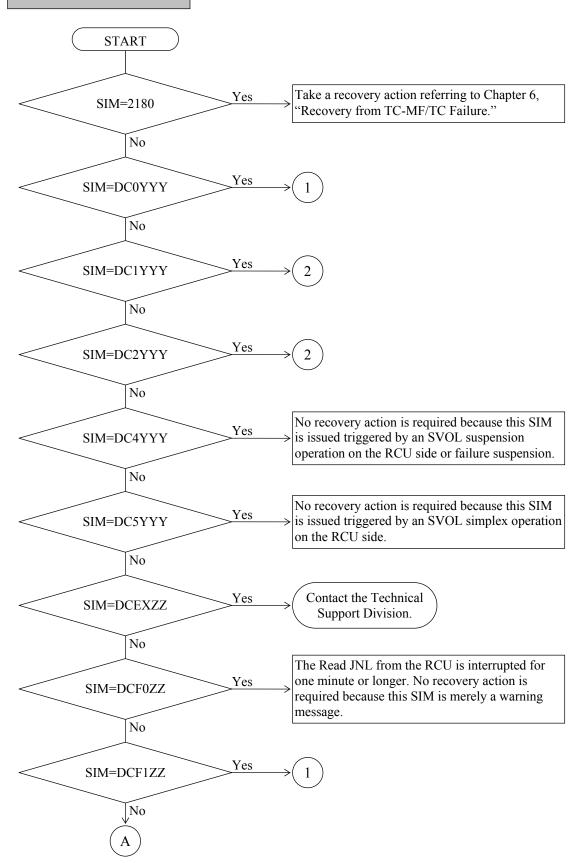
[HORCM_102] Deleted a suspending status on this paired volume (Volume:OOOO, code:XXXX).

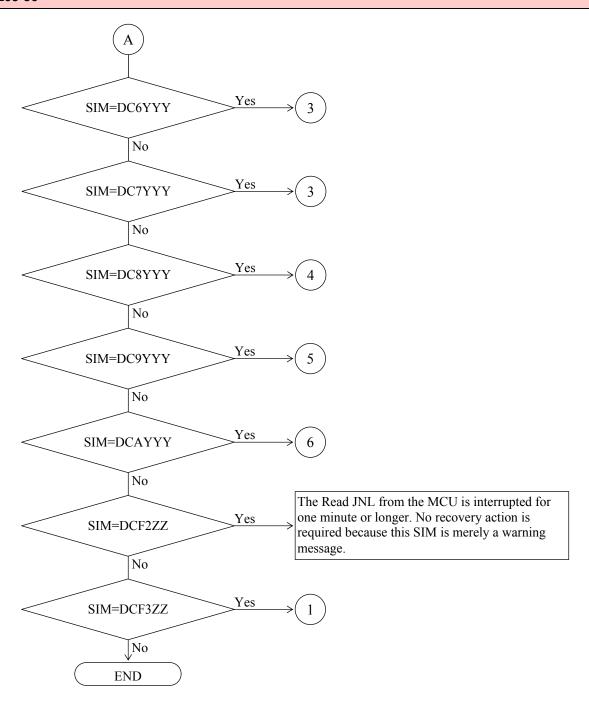
OOOO : Volume name XXXX : Factor code

When a message that informs of occurrence of an UR pair failure is displayed in the Syslog, it is required to check the SIM(s) of the connected DKC and understand correspondence of messages in the Syslog to SIMs logged on the DKC side before starting the recovery action.

TRBL09-20

Recovery from the UR failure

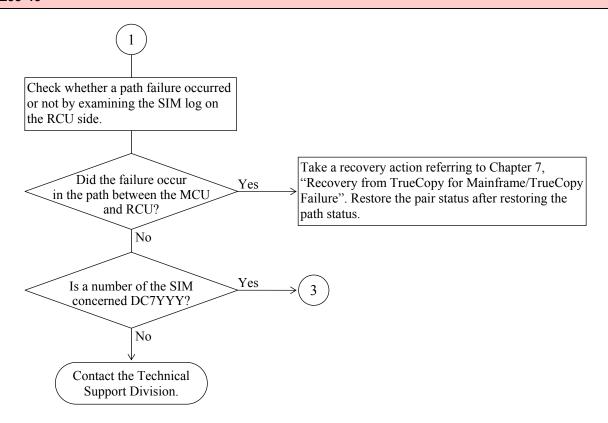


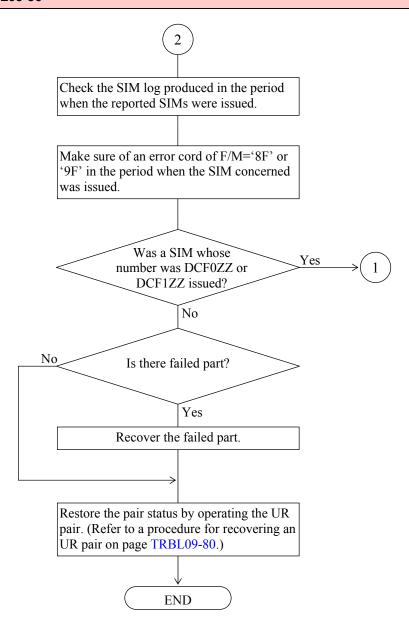


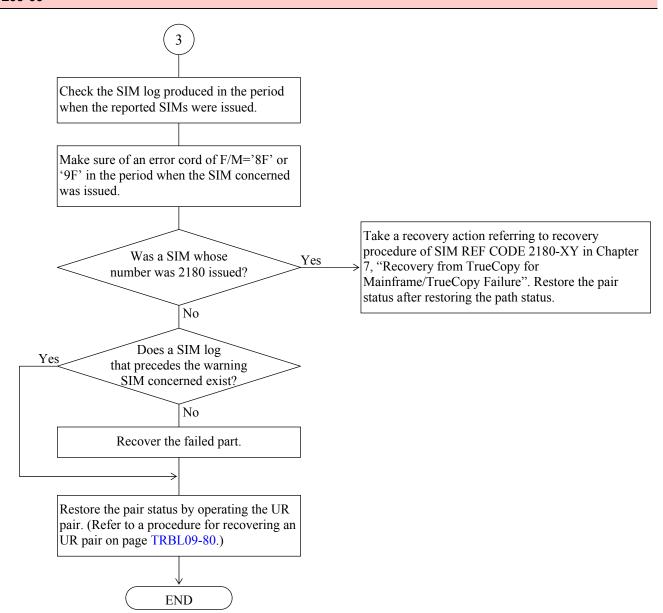
Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL09-40

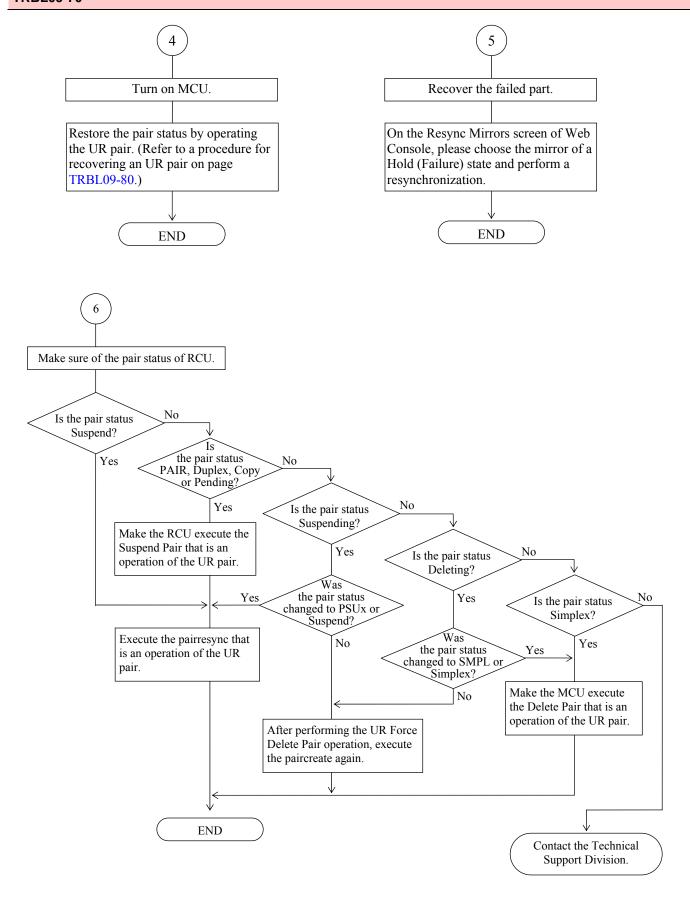
Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.



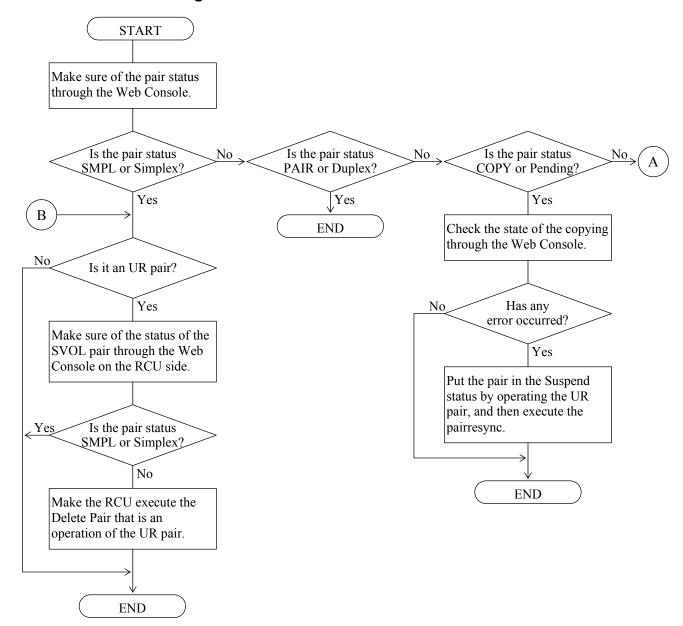




Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.



9.2 Procedure for Recovering UR Pair



Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL09-90

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

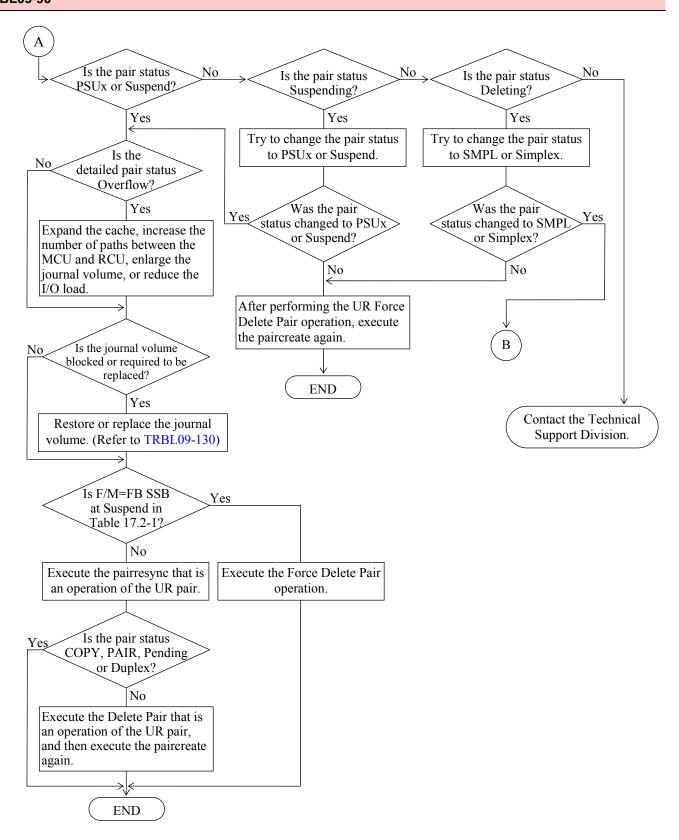


Table 9.2-1 Force Delete Pair Target F/M=FB SSB

No.	F/M	Error Code	Meaning
1	FB	EF60 to EF66	JNL-cache remains with the device of remote-side.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL09-100

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

9.3 Force Delete Pair Operation

The Force Delete Pair operation is a remedy function for the cases where an UR pair is put in the following abnormal states. Apply this function to both of the MCU and RCU.

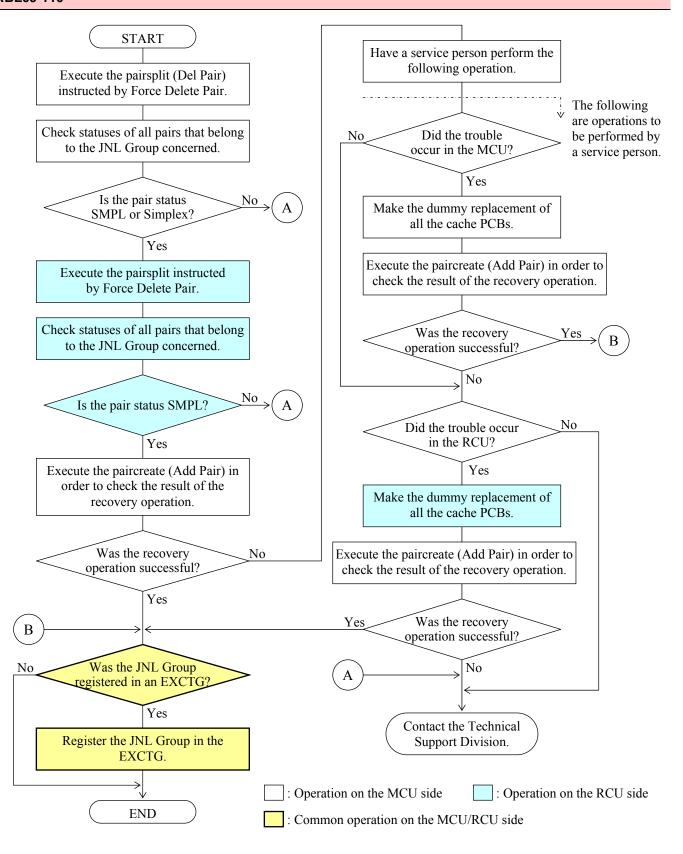
- The pair was suspended owing to a trouble such as a failure and the pair status did not change but remained as Suspend.
- Though the Delete Pair or Suspend Pair operation terminated normally, the pair status remained as Deleting or Suspend.
- Please do not execute the Force Delete operation when all pairs in JNL Group are the pair status of Duplex or DuplexPend.

A CAUTION

- All the data volumes that belong to the group (JNLG) concerned are placed in the Simplex status because Force Delete Pair operates in the Group mode.
- As a result of performance of Force Delete Pair operation on the MCU side, data that has not been transferred to the RCU is abandoned.
 As a result of performance of Force Delete Pair operation on the RCU side, data that
 - has not been authorized is abandoned.
- There is a possibility that host I/O to the pair concerned becomes time out when the pair status of Duplex/DuplexPend exists in JNL Group.

After the Force Delete Pair operations for the MCU and RCU are completed, perform the paircreate operation again in order to make sure that the pair has got out from the abnormal state. When doing that, specify the JNL Group number as the same value as former one.

If the pair status is not restored in spite of the Force Delete Pair operation, make dummy replacement of all the cache PCBs for the storage system concerned.



Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL09-120

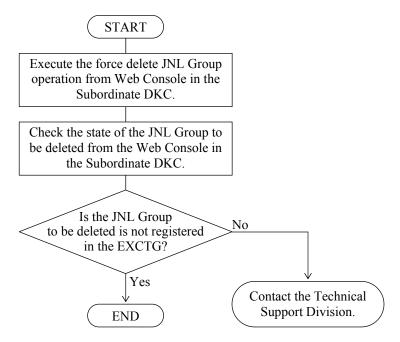
Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

9.4 Force Delete JNL Group Operation

In the UR 4x4, the registration or deletion to Extended Consistency Group (EXCTG) of JNL Group in Subordinate DKC are operated from Supervisor DKC. The Force Delete JNL Group operation is a remedy function to delete JNL Group from EXCTG forcibly when deleting JNL Group of Subordinate DKC from EXCTG cannot be executed.

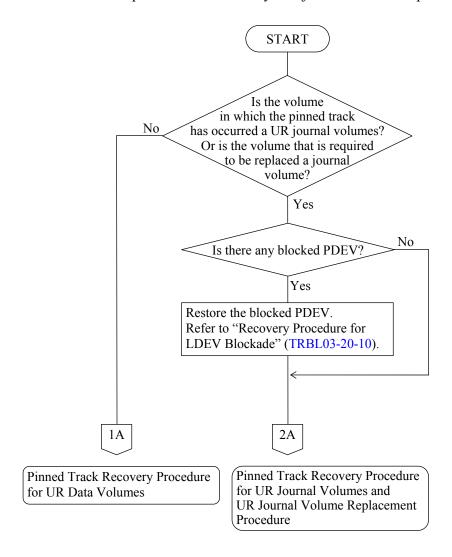
NOTE:

- The force Delete JNL Group operation can be executed regardless of the state of JNL Group.
- JNL Group deleted from the EXCTG forcibly continues operation as JNL Group that is unregistered to EXCTG. Therefore, a remote copy from MCU to RCU is continued.



9.5 Procedure for UR Pinned Track Recovery and Journal Volume Replacement

Procedure for UR pinned track recovery and journal volume replacement is as follows.



NOTE: If the pinned track has occurred in both P-VOL and S-VOL, recover the volumes according to the following sequence.

UR : ① P-VOL
$$\rightarrow$$
 ② S-VOL

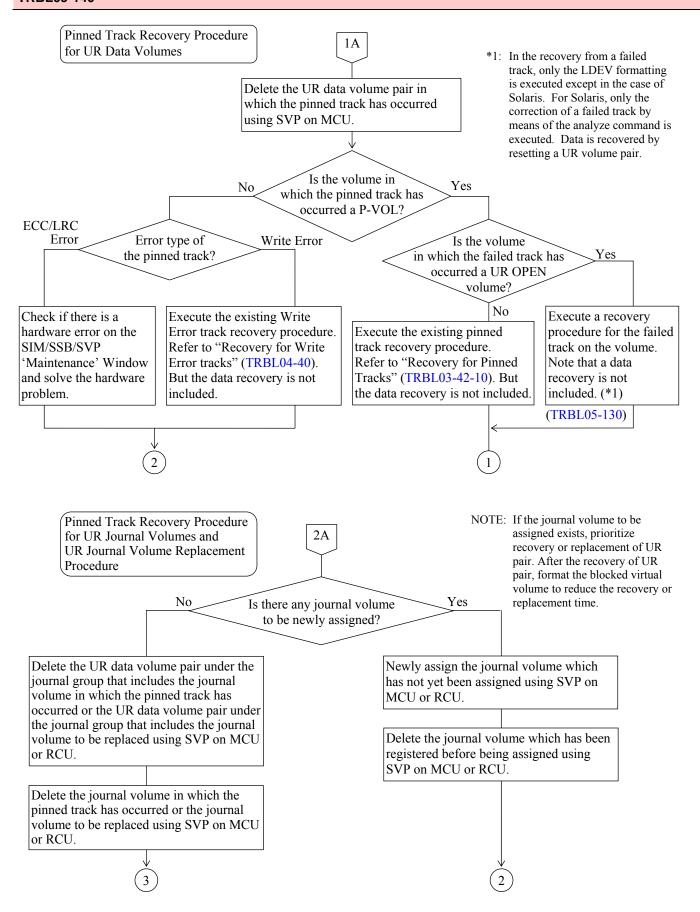
If the pinned track has occurred in both data volumes and journal volumes, recover the volumes according to the following sequence.

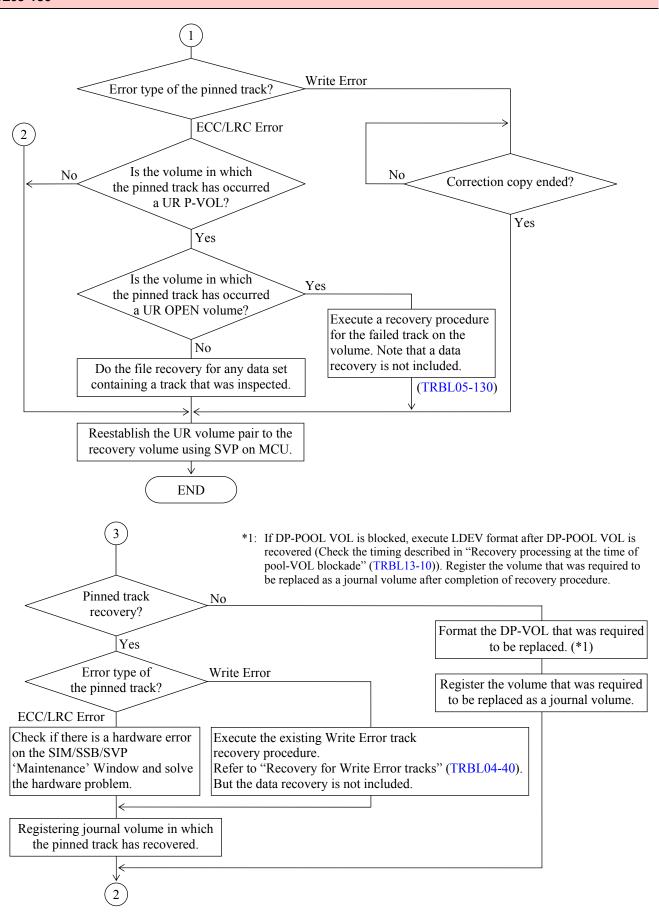
① data volumes \rightarrow ② journal volumes

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL09-140

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.





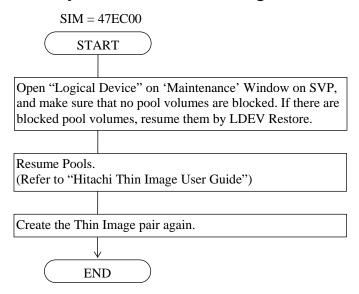
Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL10-10

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

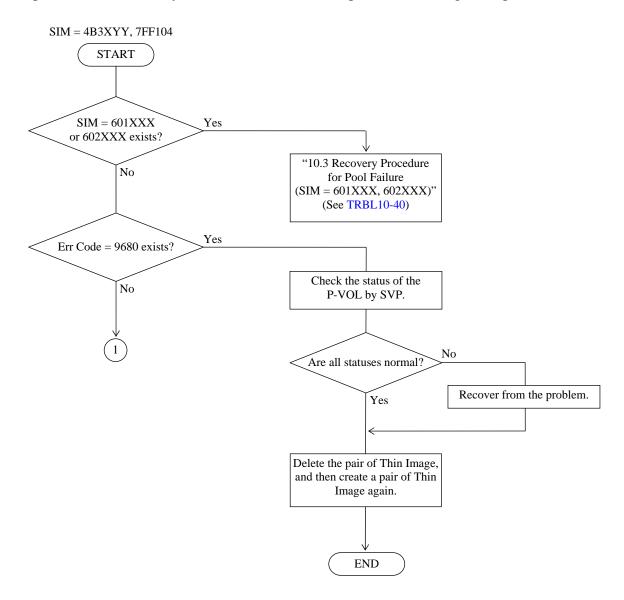
10. Recovery from Thin Image Failure

10.1 Recovery Procedure for Thin Image Failure due to SM Volatilization (SIM = 47EC00)

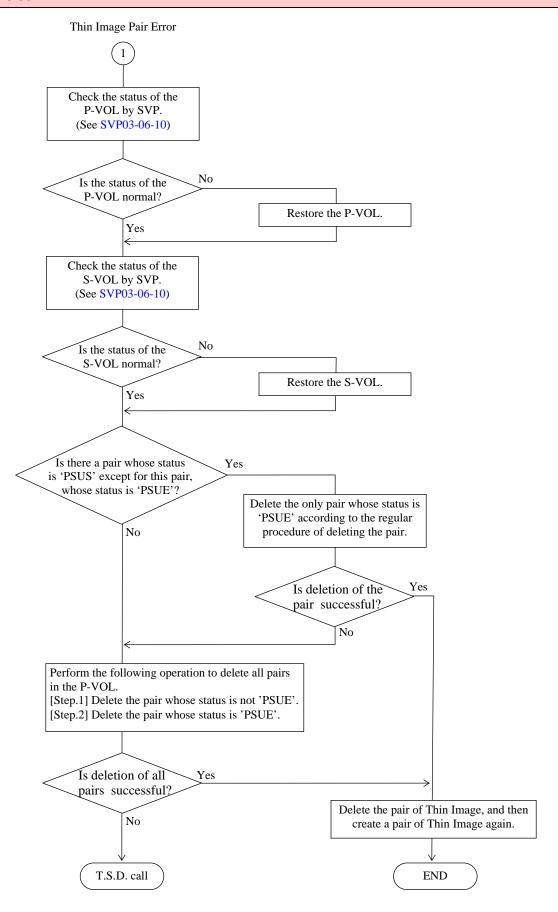


10.2 Recovery Procedure for Thin Image Failure (SIM = 4B3XYY, 7FF104)

The procedure for recovery from a failure occurs in a pair of Thin Image is explained below.

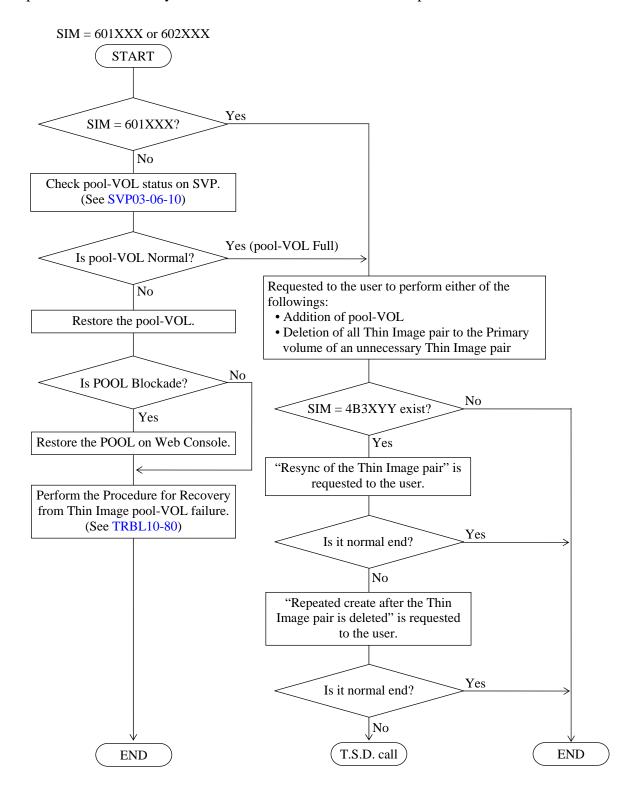


TRBL10-30



10.3 Recovery Procedure for Pool Failure (SIM = 601XXX, 602XXX)

The procedure for recovery from a failure occurs in the Pool is explained below.



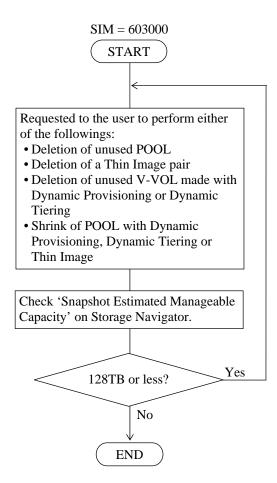
Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL10-50

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

10.4 Recovery Procedure for Pool Failure (SIM = 603000)

The procedure for recovery from a failure occurs in the Pool is explained below.



Rev.0 / Mar.2014

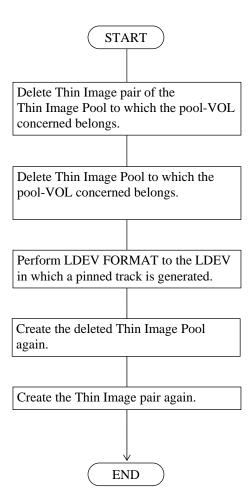
TRBL10-60

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

10.5 Recovery Procedure for Thin Image pool-VOL ECC/LRC Error

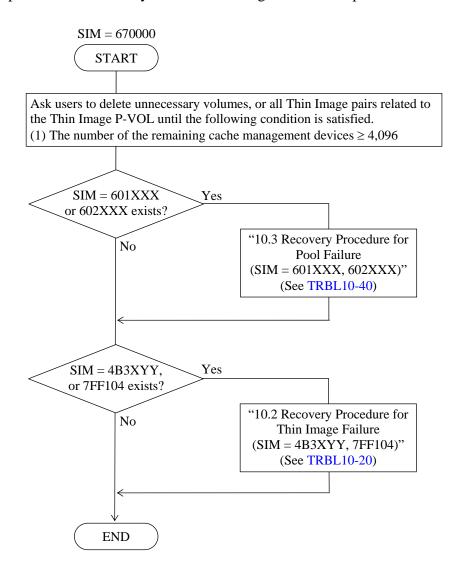
When an ECC/LRC Error occurs in a pool-VOL, perform the following recovery method because an I/O cannot be issued directly from the HOST for the track concerned.

- *1: In case of a Write Error, perform TRBL05-210 as well as the normal VOL and recover it.
- *2: The LDEV that a POOL ID is displayed on the logical device window of the Maintenance Window is a pool-VOL.



10.6 Recovery Procedure for Thin Image Failure (SIM = 670000)

The procedure to recovery from a Thin Image failure is explained below.



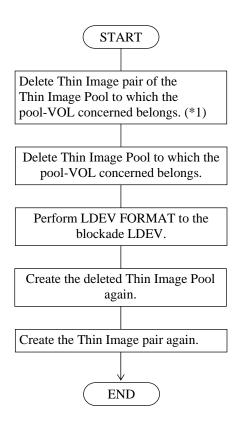
Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL10-80

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

10.7 Recovery Procedure for Thin Image pool-VOL Failure

The procedure for recovery from a failure occurs in a pool-VOL of Thin Image is explained below.



*1 When the deletion of Thin Image pair fails and the pair status is changed PSUE, Thin Image pair can be deleted by executing it again.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL11-10

11. Recovery from Volume Migration Failure

When it lapses into the state where a system does not expect, volume move processing of Volume Migration sometimes carries out an unusual end. In this case, the state of S-VOL and T-VOL which was during movement is not changing from the state before movement. So, there is no necessity of daring carry out recovery to resume VOL move processing. Please resume processing after checking states, such as a hard part, with reference to SSB/SIM.

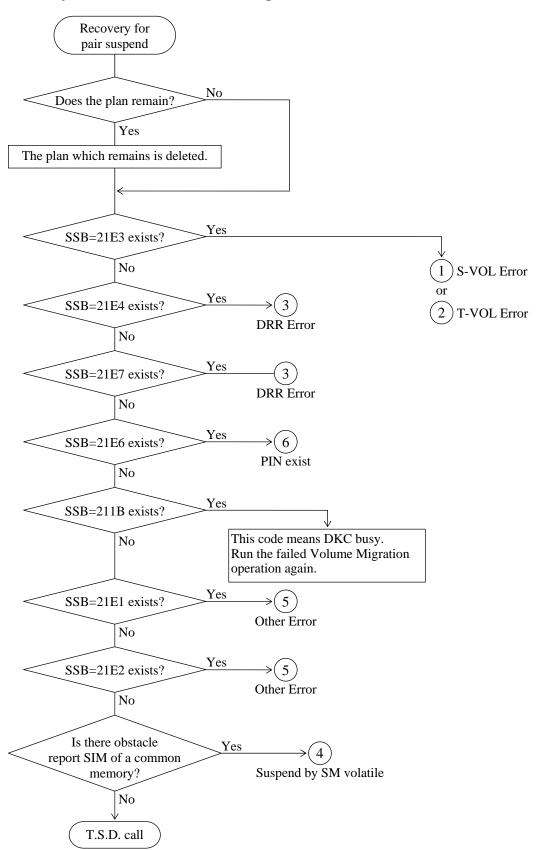
Please carry out recovery procedure with reference to the following flowchart.

Table 11.1-1 Volume Migration SIM REF.CODE

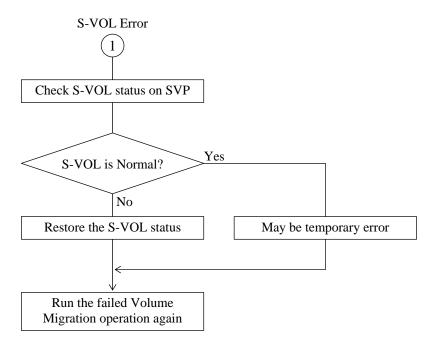
SIM REF. CODE	meaning	comment
47FYXX 7FF106	Volume Migration VOL Move unusual end	YXX: The lower 12 bits of Target Volume #. Y = The lower 4 bits of CU# XX = LDEV#

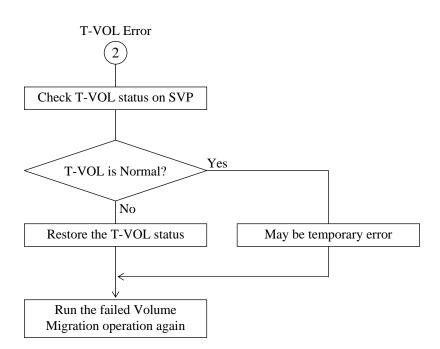
Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

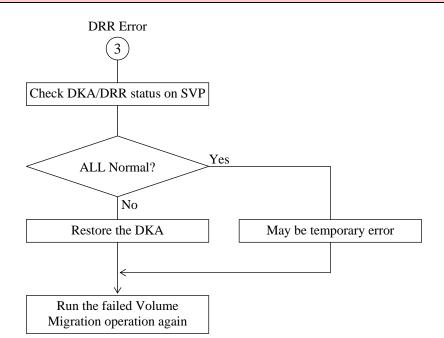
11.1 Recovery Procedure for Volume Migration Failure

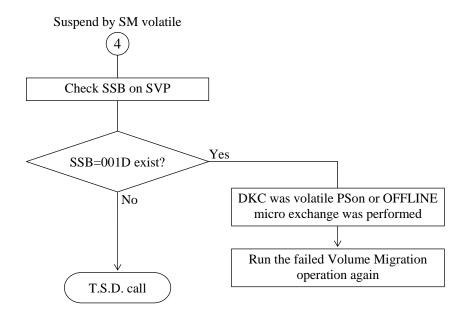


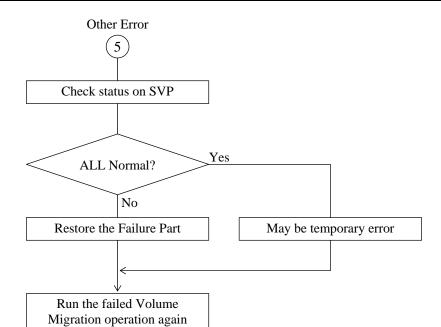
TRBL11-30

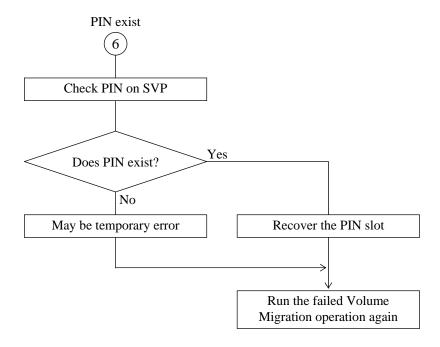












Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

11.2 Output of Online Path Information (SSB EC = 2084)

There is a case where volume migration operation becomes a command reject and cannot be executed because the target device is online.

When it becomes a command reject, specify the online path from the contents of SSB=2084, and make the target path offline.

NOTE: The number of SSB=2084 is limited by about 1 in ten seconds. Therefore, after taking paths offline by way of Fig. 11.2.2-1, P.P. command operation might fail with SSB=2084 again. If this happens, repeat steps of Fig. 11.2.2-1.

11.2.1 Output information

Display SSB=2084 from the SSB log referring to SVP02-02-10. The information shown below is output to Internal Data of SSB=2084.

- The maximum of seven PIDs are output with SSB=2084 to be output.
- The total number of online paths of the device shown in the byte $0x40 \sim 0x43$ is output.

Byte	Contents	Remarks
$0x40 \sim 0x43$	Device number (CU: LDEV number) of which the online path check was performed	
0x44	The number $(1 \sim 7)$ of effective PIDs output in SSB concerned	
$0x45 \sim 0x46$	The total number of online paths (1 ~ 2048) shown in the byte $0x40 \sim 0x43$	
0x47	Preparation (0)	
$0x48 \sim 0x4F$	PID1	Refer to the details of PID.
$0x50 \sim 0x57$	PID2	Refer to the details of PID.
$0x58 \sim 0x5F$	PID3	Refer to the details of PID.
$0x60 \sim 0x67$	PID4	Refer to the details of PID.
$0x68 \sim 0x6F$	PID5	Refer to the details of PID.
$0x70 \sim 0x77$	PID6	Refer to the details of PID.
$0x78 \sim 0x7F$	PID7	Refer to the details of PID.

Table 11.2.1-1 SSB=2084: Details of output information

NOTE: When the total number of online paths > effective PIDs output, there is the information of the online path which is not output. Retry the command operation after making the path offline referring to Fig. 11.2.2-1.

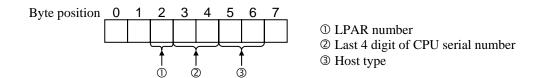
Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL11-70

Internal Data		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	a	b	c	d	e	f
	40		HDEV# *1 *2 *3				PID1										
	50		PID2					PID3									
	60		PID4				PID5										
	70		PID6			PID7											

- *1: The number of effective PIDs output in SSB concerned
- *2: The total number of online paths of the device shown in the byte $0x40 \sim 0x43$
- *3: Preparation (0)

Fig. 11.2.1-1 SSB=2084: Position of output information



NOTE: This does not show All digits of CPU serial number. Therefore, you might not be able to determine the host that has an online path. If this is the case, it is necessary to confirm online paths from all the hosts that have the same 4 digit of CPU serial number. If you use a volume from two or more hosts with the same last four digits of serial number and host type, it is recommended to use the volume from different LPAR number of the hosts.

Fig. 11.2.1-2 Details of PID

NOTICE: If the command that is tried again after the online path with the LPAR number is placed offline is still rejected due to the same online path, check the item "LGCL" in Logical Path Information (See SVP03-08-30) in the SVP screen to identify the path.

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL11-80

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

11.2.2 To Continue the Operation

When the volume of the operation target is online, acquire the online path information of the target volume according to the following procedure, and make it offline. After that, retry the command.

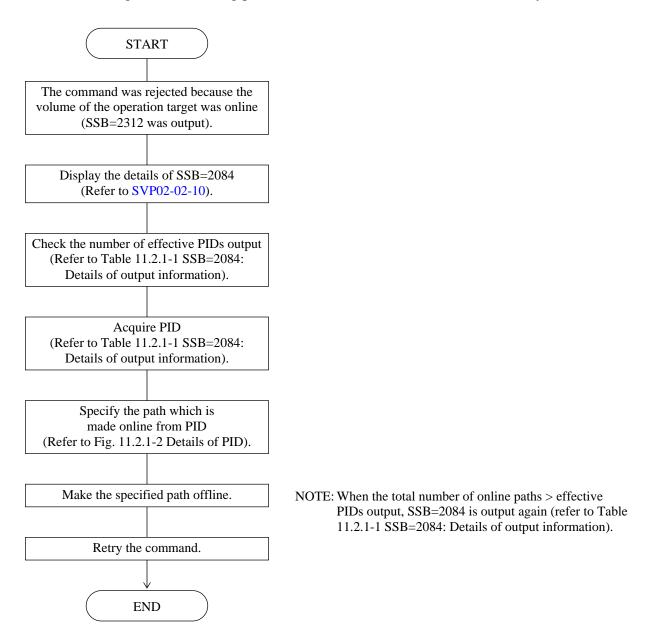


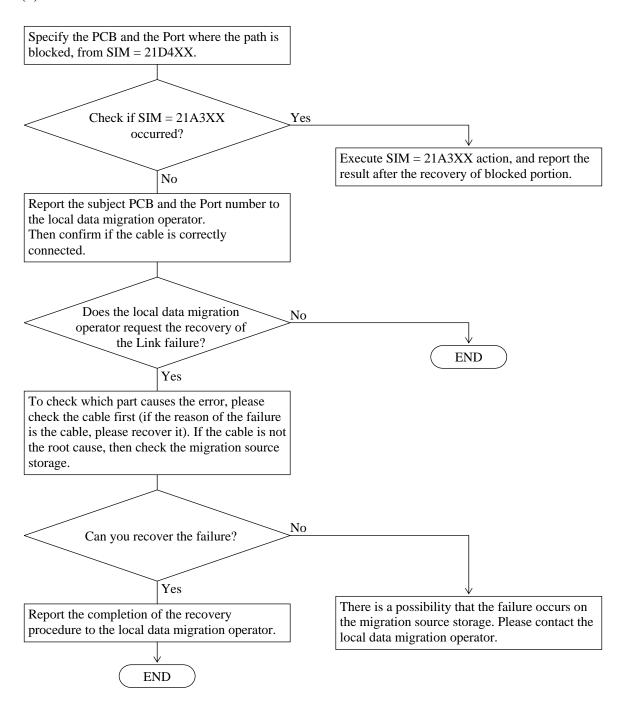
Fig. 11.2.2-1 Procedure for continuing the operation

Rev.0 / Mar.2014 Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd. TRBL12-10

12. Recovery from Mainframe Fibre Data Migration Failure (SIM = 21D4XX, EFD400, 47DXYY, 47E700)

On the failure of the Mainframe Fibre Data Migration, the following shows the recovery procedures for the each of factors: SIM = 21D4XX (Mainframe Fibre DM Path blocked, SIM = EFD400 (Mainframe Fibre DM Source Device blocked), and SIM = 47DXYY/47E700 (ShadowImage pair of Mainframe Fibre DM is suspended).

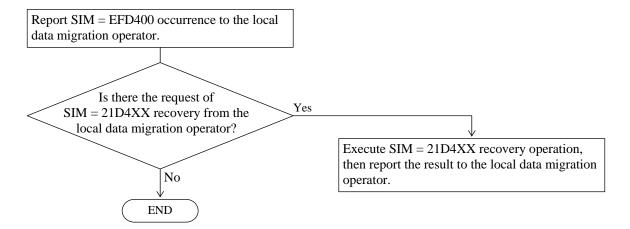
(1) SIM = 21D4XX



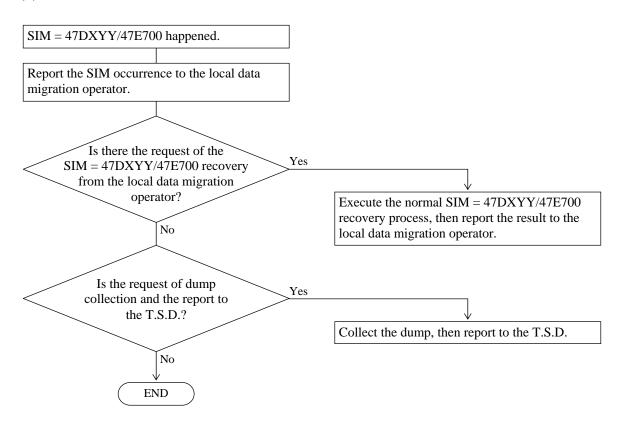
Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL12-20

(2) SIM = EFD400



(3) SIM = 47DXYY/47E700



Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

Rev.1 / Mar.2014, Jul.2014

TRBL13-10

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

13. Recovery from Dynamic Provisioning or Dynamic Tiering Failure

13.1 Recovery Procedure for pool-VOL Blockade (When Two (Three in RAID6) or More Are Blocked in the RAID Gr the pool-VOL Belongs)

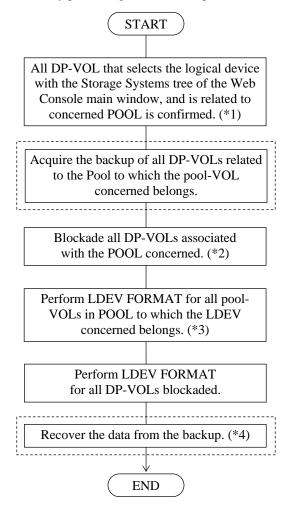
Dynamic Provisioning or Dynamic Tiering become as follows. In this case, data cannot be recovered.

Item	Status			
DP-VOL status	Normal			
POOL status	Warning			
pool-VOL status	Normal + Blocked (only LDEV is blocked in RAID Gr where two or more (three or more in case of RAID6) are blocked)			
IO access	Partially possible (Access to normal pool-VOL is possible.)			
Association with DP-VOL and POOL	Yes			

Recovery method

Perform the recovery by the following flow.

Recovery processing at the time of pool-VOL blockade



- *1: Please specify the following two conditions for the filter to display all DP-VOL related to concerned POOL.
 - Please input the concerned pool name (ID) specifying the pool name (ID) for conditional expression.
 - Please select 'DP' specifying the provisioning type for conditional expression.

Please see "Hitachi Command Suite User Guide" or "Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform G1000 Mainframe System Administrator Guide" about the operating instruction of the filter.

Rev.1 / Mar.2014, Jul.2014

DKC810I Hitachi Proprietary

TRBL13-20

*2: Delete all [TrueCopy / Universal Replicator / ShadowImage / Volume Migration / Thin Image / XRC / FlashCopy (R) V2 / FlashCopy (R) SE] pairs that use the DP-VOLs before

blockade the DP-VOLs. If you delete FlashCopy (R) V2 / FlashCopy (R) SE / globalactive device] pairs in blockaded DP-VOLs, please execute following procedure.

If a DP-VOL to be blockaded has both source and target extents of relationships with other LDEVs not to be maintained, please perform following procedure (1), (2) and (3).

- (1) Perform forcible Withdraw by specifying SDEVN, TDEVN, and DDSW(NO) options. Please specify a DP-VOL to be blockaded as TDEVN. In addition, please don't specify extent option such as XTNTLST.
- (2) Perform forcible Withdraw by specifying SDEVN, TDEVN, and DDSW(NO) options. Please don't specify extent option such as XTNTLST.
- (3) Perform forcible Withdraw by specifying TDEVN, and DDSW(NO) options. Please don't specify SDEVN option and extent option such as XTNTLST.

The other cases, please perform following procedure (1) and (2).

- (1) Perform forcible Withdraw by specifying SDEVN, TDEVN, and DDSW(NO) options. Please don't specify extent option such as XTNTLST.
- (2) Perform forcible Withdraw by specifying TDEVN, and DDSW(NO) options. Please don't specify SDEVN option and extent option such as XTNTLST.

If the DP-VOLs are designated as a journal volume of Universal Replicator, cancel the designation (TRBL09-130).

After the recovery flow completes, create [TrueCopy / Universal Replicator / ShadowImage / Volume Migration / Thin Image / XRC / FlashCopy (R) V2 / FlashCopy (R) SE / global-active device] pairs again.

- *3: Please specify the following two conditions for the filter to display pool-VOL in POOL that has been blockaded.
 - Please input the concerned pool name (ID) specifying the pool name (ID) for conditional expression.
 - Please select pool-VOL specifying the attribute for conditional expression. Please see "Hitachi Command Suite User Guide" or "Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform G1000 Mainframe System Administrator Guide" about the operating instruction of the filter.
- *4: Please be careful when restoring data from a backup.

If data is backed up per volume (DP-VOL), unallocated areas in the volume are also backed up. Therefore when the data is restored, a write operation is performed also for the unallocated areas, and the areas become allocated (though with zero data), resulting in an increase in the used pool capacity. If many DP-VOLs are restored at a time, the pool may become full.

To restore DP-VOLs, perform the following procedure for each of all DP-VOLs.

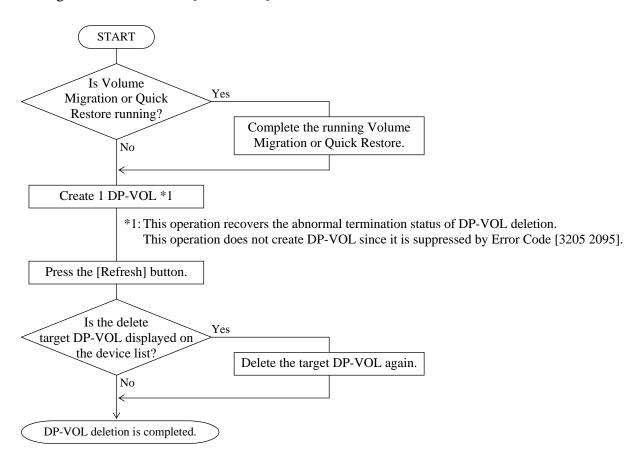
- (1) Restore the data from the backup
- (2) Perform the Reclaim Zero Pages processing

NOTE: When data is restored per file from the backup, only the consumed (allocated) areas are restored from the backup, so you do not have to perform the Reclaim Zero Pages processing.

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

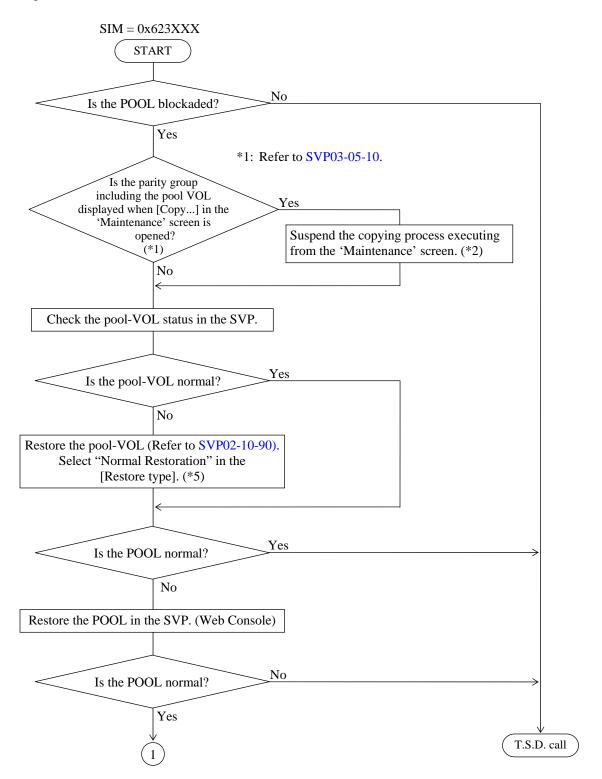
13.2 Recovery Procedure When DP-VOL Deletion of Dynamic Provisioning or Dynamic Tiering Failed (Storage Navigator Error Code = 3205 8966)

The recovery procedure when DP-VOL deletion processing of Dynamic Provisioning or Dynamic Tiering fails in Error Code [3205 8966] is shown below.

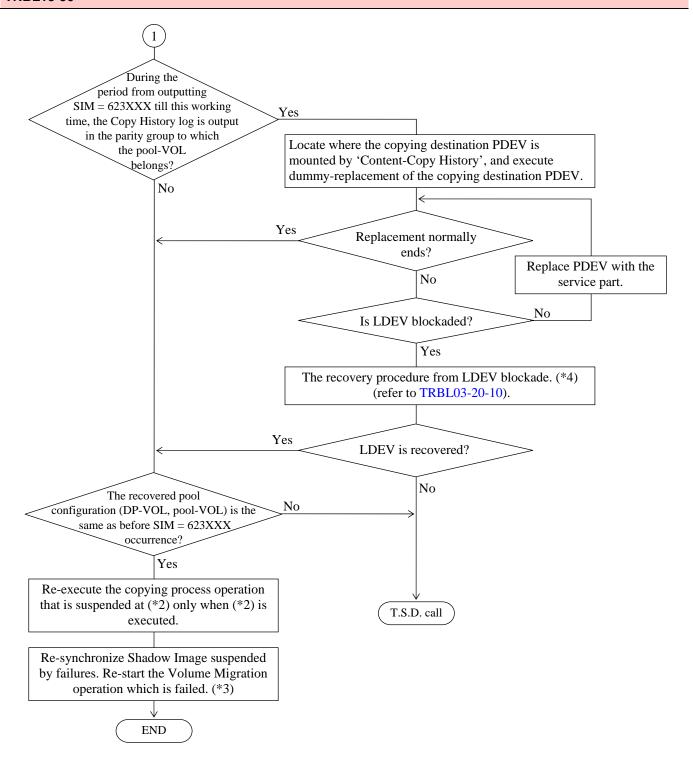


13.3 Recovery Procedure for Pool Failure (SIM = 623XXX)

The recovery procedure for the failure of the pool used in the Dynamic Provisioning or Dynamic Tiering is shown here.



TRBL13-50



Rev.0 / Jul.2014

TRBL13-51

NOTE: Procedure to recover DP-VOL:

Please recover the pool of Dynamic Provisioning or Dynamic Tiering referring to "Provisioning Guide for Open Systems" or "Provisioning Guide for Mainframe Systems". DP-VOL recovers by recovering the pool of Dynamic Provisioning or Dynamic Tiering. Please confirm all the pool of Dynamic Provisioning or Dynamic Tiering has recovered when DP-VOL is not recovered.

Please execute LDEV format or execute force LDEV recovery from SVP after all the pool of Dynamic Provisioning or Dynamic Tiering has recovered.

- *2: Set SVP to [Modify Mode], and suspend the copying process that is executing by [Other] -> [Drive Interrupt].
- *3: When the pool is blockaded, the Shadow Image pair using DP-VOL related with the blockaded pool may be suspended by failures, and VOL migration process of Volume Migration may end abnormally.
- *4: Be sure to choose "B" for "the action to be taken" in the flowchart of the recovery procedure from LDEV blockade. When "A" is mistakenly chosen, data recovery will fail.
- *5: When the status of the pool-VOL is not changed into "Normal", collect the Auto dump and ask the Technical Supports Division (T.S.D.) for what action should be taken.

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

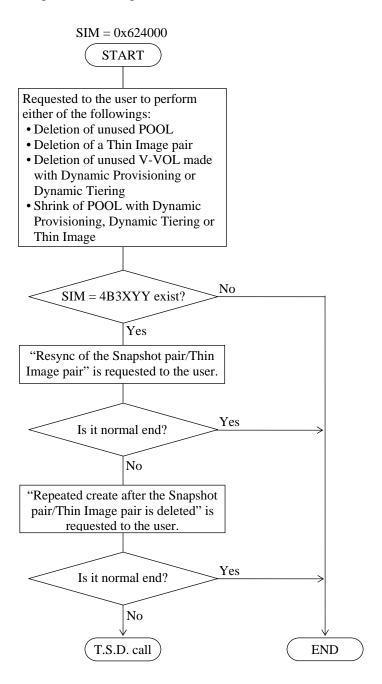
Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL13-60

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

13.4 Recovery Procedure for Pool Failure (SIM = 624000)

The recovery procedure for the failure of the pool used in the Dynamic Provisioning or Dynamic Tiering or Thin Image is shown here.



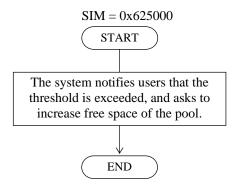
Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL13-70

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

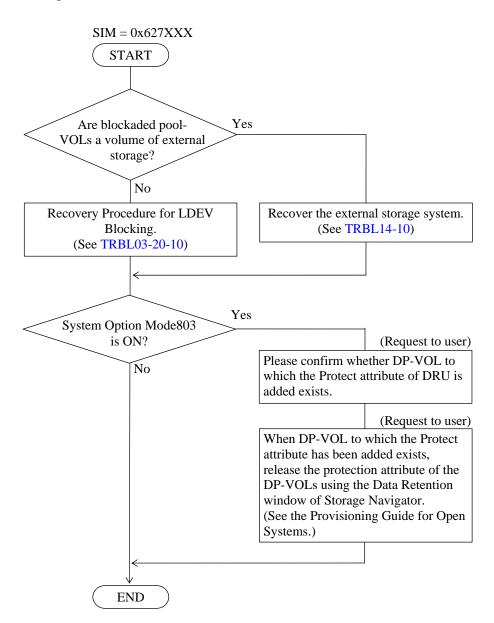
13.5 Recovery Procedure for Pool Failure (SIM = 625000)

The recovery procedure for the failure of the pool used in the Dynamic Provisioning or Dynamic Tiering is shown here.



13.6 Recovery Procedure for pool-VOL Blockade (SIM = 627XXX)

The recovery procedure for the pool-VOL blockaded used in the Dynamic Provisioning or Dynamic Tiering is shown here.



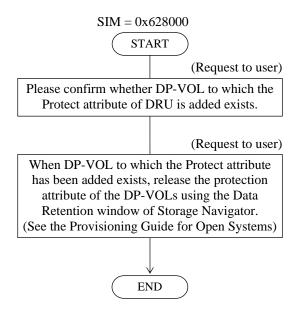
Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL13-90

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

13.7 The release procedure for the Protection attribute of Data Retention Utility (SIM = 628000)

The release procedure for the Protection attribute of Data Retention Utility set to the Dynamic Provisioning or Dynamic Tiering is shown here.



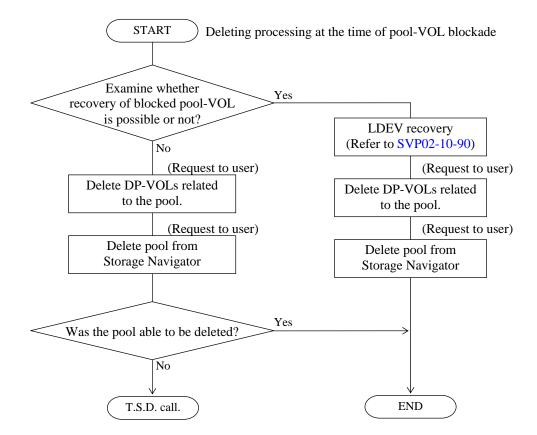
13.8 Deleting Procedure for Pool at the time of pool-VOL Blockade (When External Volume the pool-VOL Belongs Is Removed)

Dynamic Provisioning or Dynamic Tiering become as follows. In this case, data cannot be recovered.

Item	Status			
DP-VOL status	None			
POOL status	Normal (usage rate > 0%)			
pool-VOL status	Blocked			
IO access	Impropriety			
Association with DP-VOL and POOL	None (Note that the association is being released and exists internally)			

Recovery method

Perform the recovery by the following flow.



Rev.1 / Mar.2014, Jul.2014

TRBL13-110

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

13.9 Initialization Procedure for Pool

NOTE1: When Initialize Pools executed, the pool of all Dynamic Provisioning / Dynamic Tiering / Thin Image is blockaded.

NOTE2: In the case [TrueCopy / Universal Replicator / ShadowImage / Volume Migration / XRC / FlashCopy (R) V2 / FlashCopy (R) SE / global-active device] use virtual volumes of Dynamic Provisioning or Dynamic Tiering, delete all [TrueCopy / Universal Replicator / ShadowImage / Volume Migration / XRC / FlashCopy (R) V2 / FlashCopy (R) SE / global-active device] pairs that use the virtual volumes before performing Initialize Pools. In addition, delete all the journal volumes of Universal Replicator that use the virtual volumes.

After Initialize Pools completes, create [TrueCopy / Universal Replicator / ShadowImage / Volume Migration / XRC / FlashCopy (R) V2 / FlashCopy (R) SE / global-active device] pairs again.

During Initialize Pools, don't create [TrueCopy / Universal Replicator / ShadowImage / Volume Migration / XRC / FlashCopy (R) V2 / FlashCopy (R) SE / global-active device] pairs with virtual volumes of Dynamic Provisioning or Dynamic Tiering. In the case create those pairs, initialize and paircreate operation may fail.

NOTE3: Delete all Thin Image pairs before performing Initialize Pools.

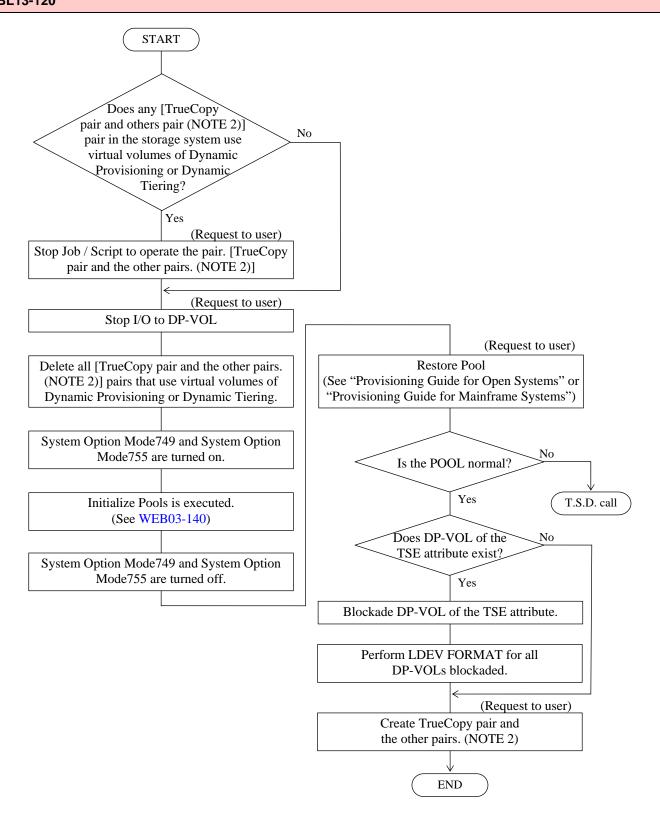
After Initialize Pools completes, create Thin Image pairs again.

During Initialize Pools, don't create Thin Image pairs. In the case create Thin Image pairs, initialize and paircreate operation may fail.

NOTE4: Do not execute the maintenance of Dynamic Provisioning until the pool restores normally after executing Initialize Pools

NOTE5: Perform the operation only when it is directed by the Technical Support Division.

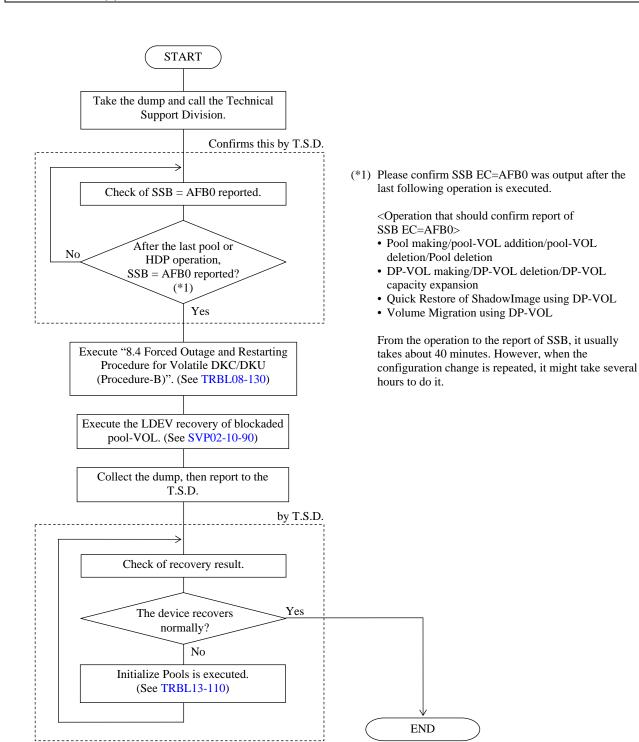
NOTE6: For the password, refer to the Technical Support Division.



13.10 Recovery Procedure for Dynamic Provisioning or Dynamic Tiering by Turning Off the Power and Volatilizing PS ON

A CAUTION

This operation supposes a special case such as a recovery from a failure unlike the usual powering off operation. Do not perform this operation without a direction given by the Technical Support Division.



Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

14. External Storage Maintenance

14.1 Maintenance of External Storage

The following is a collection of matters to be given considerations when doing maintenance works or failure recovery actions for the external storage connected by means of the Universal Volume Manager function.

14.1.1 Considerations When Performing Maintenance Work on External Storage

NOTICE: Before you change settings of the external storage, you must delete the external volume mapping after executing [Disconnect external volumes]. After you change settings of the external storage, you must remap the external volume. If you do not remap the volume, the external volume cannot be used in the DKC810I storage system.

The examples of external storage settings which require the re-mapping of external volume are as follows:

- (a) Changing WWNs of every target ports which connect to the DKC810I storage system
- (b) Changing the serial number of the external storage
- (c) Changing LUNs of volumes of the external storage
- (d) Reducing the volume capacity of the external storage so that the volume capacity is smaller than when volume mapping was performed

Besides, re-mapping is required for Universal Volume Manager after you change external storage settings that require modification on the host side when hosts are connected directly to a external storage.

In the above case (a), if you do NOT change WWNs of EVERY target ports, you do not have to delete the external volumes.

The following procedure is the way to change settings of the external storage without deleting the external volumes:

- Changing WWNs of part of target ports which connect to the DKC810I storage system. After the process, external paths using the target ports are blocked.
- 2. Adding new external paths using the target ports.
- 3. Deleting the blocked external paths.

Before you delete the external volume mapping, make sure that the volume has no LU paths, and that the volume is not a component of any pairs (such as TrueCopy pairs).

For detailed information on deleting the external volume mapping, refer to the chapter on the external volume in "Hitachi Universal Volume Manager User Guide".

For detailed information on mapping external volume, refer to the chapter on the external volume in "Hitachi Universal Volume Manager User Guide".

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL14-20

When a maintenance work is done for the external storage, an SIM report (Assist report) may be issued by the Storage system during the maintenance work.

When doing a maintenance work for the external storage, therefore, set the REMOTE MAINTENANCE switch on the Storage system side to DISABLE before starting the work. Check the SIM and its contents after the maintenance work is completed to judge whether the SIM is one of those that are to be issued during maintenance works shown in "14.6 Appendix." If the SIM is the one described above, execute the SIM completion and reset the switch to ENABLE. If not, take actions according to the customer's conditions (urgency).

Do the maintenance works for the external storage following guidelines explained below.

When doing a maintenance work for the external storage

- (1) Make sure that an alternative path (in the Normal status) exists between the Storage system and the external storage. (Refer to "15.1.3 Procedure for Operating Storage Navigator" Procedure 1.)
- (2) When an alternative path exists correctly between the clusters of the Storage system, leave it as it is and do the maintenance work following procedures for the external storage.
- (3) If no alternative path exists, have the customer stop access to the server concerned and perform the operation (Disconnect External Volume) to disconnect the external storage concerned on the Storage system side. (Refer to "14.1.3 Procedure for Operating Storage Navigator" Procedure 2.)
- (4) Do the maintenance work following the procedure for the external storage.
- (5) After the maintenance work for the external storage is completed, perform the operation (Reconnect External Volumes) to reconnect the external storage concerned on the Storage system side. (Refer to "14.1.3 Procedure for Operating Storage Navigator" Procedure 3.)

NOTE

- (1) Even if the alternative path exists, the SIM (21D0) informing of the path blockade is reported via the Storage system when the path is switched to the alternative path. In this case, the path status on the Storage system side is recovered from the blockade automatically when a factor, which caused the blockade, on the external storage side is removed.
- (2) Because the external storage is in the Single Path mode when it is the SANRISE 9500V series device, a path with a high priority is switched back automatically as the path to be used when it is restored. In the maintenance work, make sure that the path has been switched back after the maintenance work for the external storage (Hitachi storage only) is completed. (Refer to "14.1.3 Procedure for Operating Storage Navigator" Procedure 4.)
- (3) Because the external storage is in the Multiple Path mode when it is the SANRISE 2000 Series or SANRISE 9900V series or AMS2000 series or HUS / SANRISE USP, NSC / USP V, USP VM / VSP G1000 / HUS-VM device, make sure that the path is recovered from the blockade (the path status is changed to Normal). Further, check the SIM and its contents after all the maintenance works are completed to judge whether the SIM is one of those that are to be issued during maintenance works shown in "14.6 Appendix". If the SIM is the one described above, execute the SIM completion and turn on the Assist report.

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

14.1.2 Maintenance (Isolation) Procedure for a Failure on External Storage (SIM = 21D0XY, 21D2XY, EFD000, EF5XXX, FF5XXX)

The following SIMs may be reported by the Storage system when a failure occurs in the external storage or during a maintenance work. In such a case, specify the maintenance work following the procedure shown below.

- (1) In the case of the Hitachi external storage (SANRISE series device), check if an Assist report has been sent from both of the Storage system and the external storage.

 When only a SIM (21D0XY, 21D2XY, EFD000, EF5XXX or FF5XXX) informing of a failure in the external storage is issued by the Storage system and a failure is also reported by the external storage, it is highly possible that the SIM (21D0XY, 21D2XY, EFD000, EF5XXX or FF5XXX) is issued by the Storage system according to the failure that has occurred in the external storage.
 - In this case, specify a cause of the failure according to the failure information of the external storage.
- (2) Basically, take actions following instructions given in the TROUBLE SHOOTING SECTION according to the contents of the SIM reported to the Storage system.
- (3) If you fail to specify the cause or solve the trouble finally, contact the Technical Supports Division (T.S.D.). In such a case, send dumps / traces of both the Storage system and the external storage (Hitachi external storage only) to the T.S.D. Procedure for a dump from the Storage system: Refer to Subsection 2.9 in the SVP SECTION, "Dump/Auto Dump."
- (4) When the external storage is not Hitachi-manufactured, send only the dump from the Storage system to the T.S.D. Besides, request the customer to make the external storage recover from the failure.

Table 14.1.2-1

SIM code	SSB code	Host report	Detailed description	Page bearing trouble shooting instructions
EFD0	AD10	Issued	Blockade of the external device	TRBL14-50
21D0	AD11	Issued	Blockade of the path connecting the external device	TRBL14-50 TRBL14-70
21D1	AD12	Not issued	Recovery of the path connecting the external device	
21D2	AD60	Issued	Response time-out of external device	TRBL14-90
EF5X	89CB	Not issued	Abnormal end of Write in External storage system	TRBL03-42-10
FF5X	89CC	Not issued	Abnormal end of Read in External storage system	TRBL03-42-10

Rev.1 / Mar.2014, Jul.2014

TRBL14-40

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

14.1.3 Procedure for Operating Storage Navigator

Procedure 0:

Procedure for starting Storage Navigator through the SVP Refer to Section 2.2 in WEB CONSOLE SECTION.

Procedure 1:

Procedure to make sure of existence of an alternative path between the Storage system and the external storage

Refer to the chapter on the external volume in "Hitachi Universal Volume Manager User Guide".

In the path setting window, make sure that a path in the "Normal" status exists in the "Configured path" besides the path to be maintained.

Procedure 2:

Procedure for disconnecting the external storage (Disconnect External Volume operation)

Refer to the chapter on the external volume in "Hitachi Universal Volume Manager User Guide".

Procedure 3:

Procedure for reconnecting the external storage (Reconnect External Volumes Operation)

Refer to the chapter on the external volume in "Hitachi Universal Volume Manager User Guide".

Procedure 4:

Procedure for making sure that the alternative path has been switched back

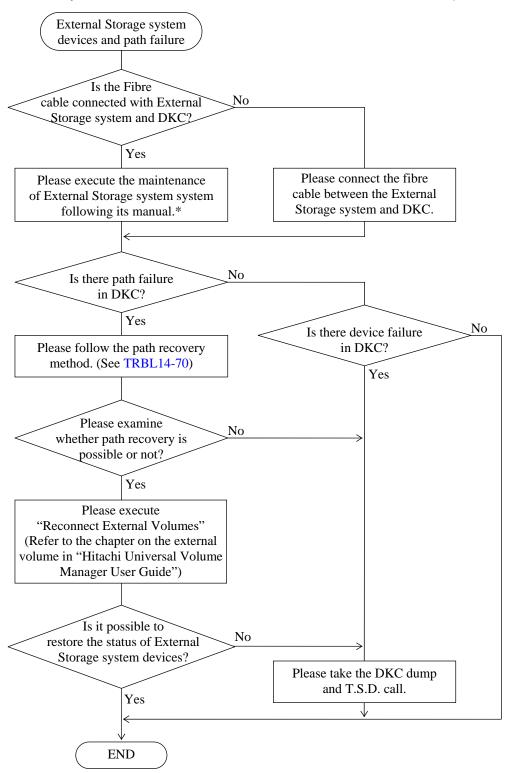
Refer to the chapter on the external volume in "Hitachi Universal Volume Manager User Guide".

In the path setting window, make sure that the status of the path to be maintained in the "Configured path" is "Normal." If the status is not "Normal," close the path setting window once. Display the path setting window again after waiting for a while (about five minutes).

14.2 Recovery Procedure for External Device Failure

The following is the recovery procedure when the External Devices Error (SIM = 21D0-XY, EFD000) is occurred.

14.2.1 Recovery Procedure for Path Failure While Device is Blocked (SIM = 21D0-XY, EFD000)



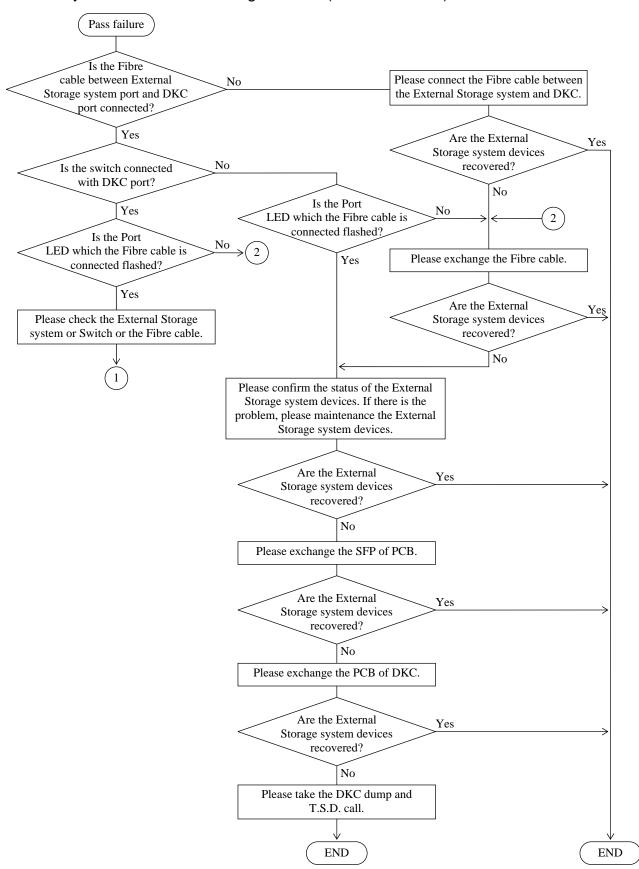
Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL14-60

*: If the data of the blocked device is unnecessary, you can format the device at the external storage system to recover it. But when the emulation type of the device is set for mainframe system, be sure to perform "Write to Control Blocks" operation from Virtual LVI function at the DKC.

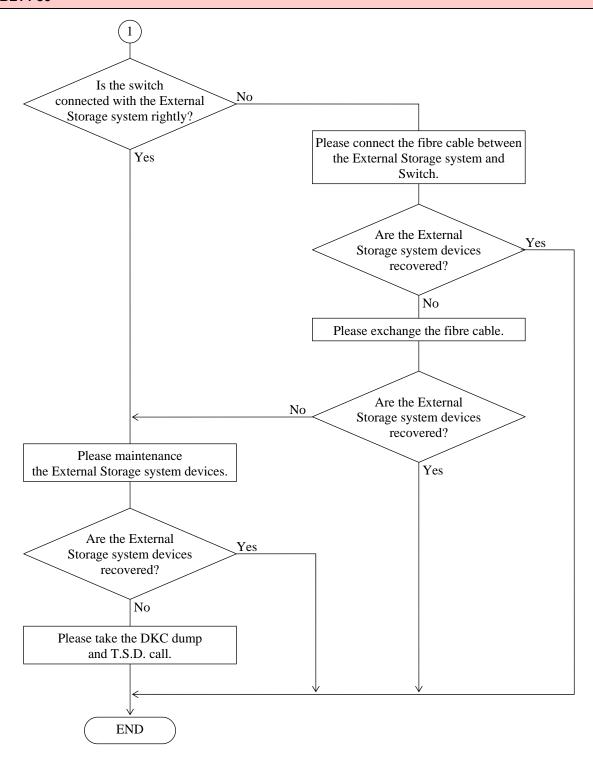
Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

14.2.2 Recovery Procedure for Path Single Failure (SIM = 21D0-XY)

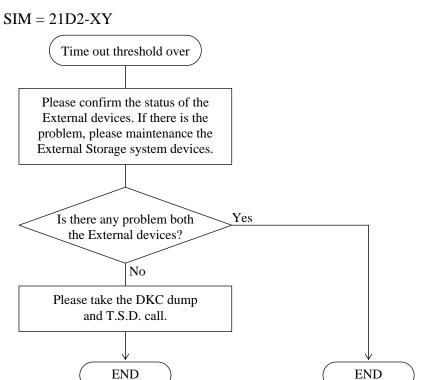


Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

TRBL14-80



14.2.3 Recovery Procedure for External Storage system Path Response Time Out Threshold Over (SIM = 21D2-XY)



14.2.4 Action When External Device and External Volume Are Not Recognized

Check the detailed data of EC=ACF0 (the result of discovery is an unsupported device), and perform the coping method shown in the table below.

However, since it is deterred for five minutes in units of MP, EC=ACF0 is reported only once, even if there are two or more factors. When there are two or more factors, remove the factors and execute it again five minutes later from the previous execution.

Detailed format of SSB EC=ACF0

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	В	С	D	Е	F
0																
10																
20								9 F	A C	F 0		Facto	r code			
30	LUN	(*)														
40											W	/WN c	of exter	nal sto	rage (^k)
50	WWN															
	(conti	nued)														
60																
70																

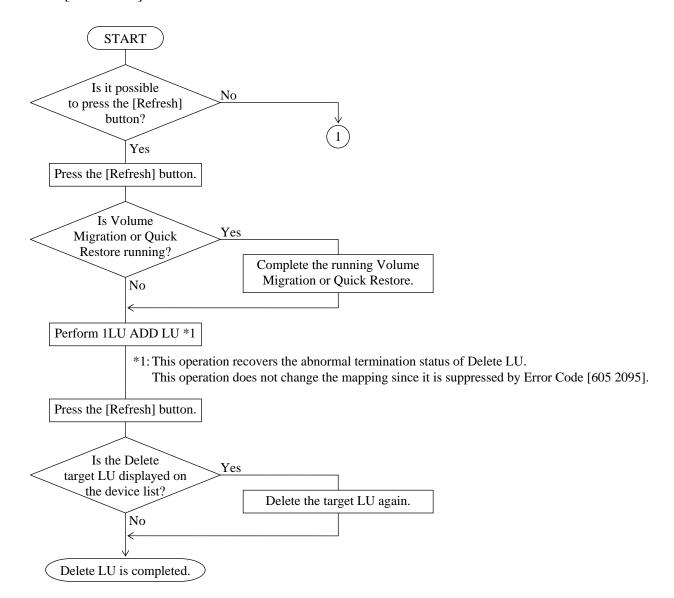
^{*:} The information may not be stored depending on the factor.

Factor code	Content	Coping Method
0x00000000	 The information of the external storage acquired by the Port (WWN) discovery is not in the profile information. The external device is the LU for storage management. 	 Connect the storage supported by UVM. Apply the micro version of RAID which supported the storage concerned. Install the profile tool supporting the storage concerned. When the LU for storage management (Universal Xport, etc.) exists, define the LU for data of LU number smaller than the LU number or delete the LU for storage management from the port concerned.
0x00000003	The remote command device of the external storage was discovered by the cascade connection.	 Do not perform the cascade connection of the remote command device. Make the remote command device invisible from DKC810I.

Factor code	Content	Coping Method
0x0000006	 The information of the external device acquired by the LDEV (LU) discovery is not in the profile information. The external device is the LU for storage management. 	 Connect the storage supported by UVM. Apply the micro version of RAID which supported the storage concerned. Install the profile tool supporting the storage concerned. Set the LU for storage management invisible from RAID.
0x00000007	• The device concerned is other than the direct access device.	• Check the status of the external storage and the external device, and make it normal.
0x00000008	• The capacity of the external device is less than the supported capacity of UVM.	 Make the capacity of the external device more than or equal to the capacity supported by UVM. Define the device concerned so that it is invisible from DKC810I.
0x00000009	 The Report LUN information cannot be acquired. The LU definition is not performed to the connection port of the external storage. 	 Check the status of the external storage and the external device, and make it normal. Perform the LU definition to the connection port of the external storage.
0x0000000A	Login for the external storage failed.	 Check the status of the port on the external storage side, and make it normal. Perform the WWN registration, etc. on the external storage side, and make the login from DKC810I possible.
0x0000000B	The external device returned RESERVATION CONFLICT.	Cancel Reserve of the external device.
0x0000000C	An error response was returned when sending the command to the external device.	• Check the status of the external storage and the external device, and make it normal.
0x0000000E	The abnormal command response occurred a total of eight times or more for one device.	• Check the status of the external storage and the external device, and make it normal.
0x0000000F	Emulation type of the external device is not supported.	 Define the device concerned so that it is invisible from DKC810I. Change host mode to any mode except "4C UVM" at the port of external storage. Change emulation type to any type, which is supported, at the external device.
0x00000010	 There is no information about valid LUN at "Report LUN". The LU definition is not performed to the connection port of the external storage. 	 Check the status of the external storage and the external device, and make it normal. Perform the LU definition to the connection port of the external storage.
Others	The acquisition of the information of the external storage and the external device failed.	Check the status of the external storage and the external device, and make it normal.

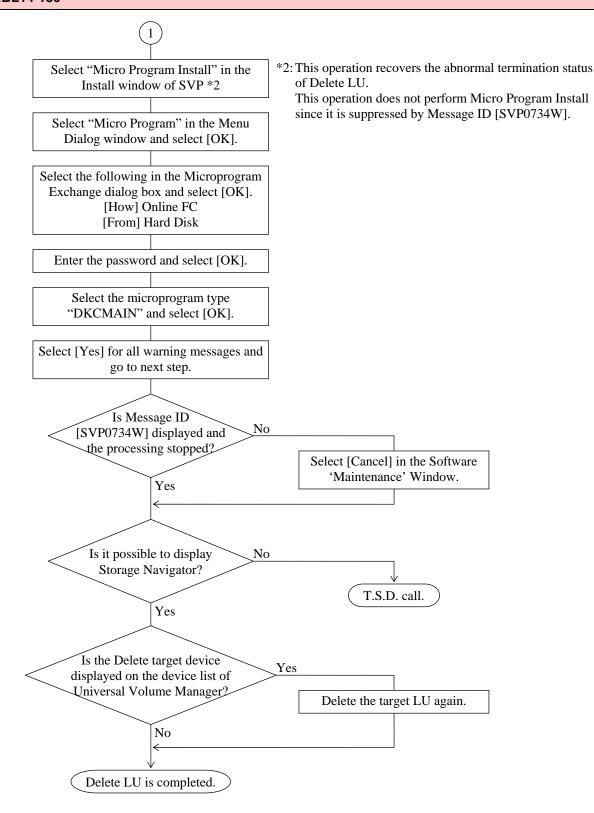
14.2.5 Recovery Procedure When Delete LU of Universal Volume Manager Failed (Storage Navigator Error Code = 0605 8966)

The recovery procedure when Delete LU processing of Universal Volume Manager fails in Error Code [0605 8966] is shown below.



Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL14-130

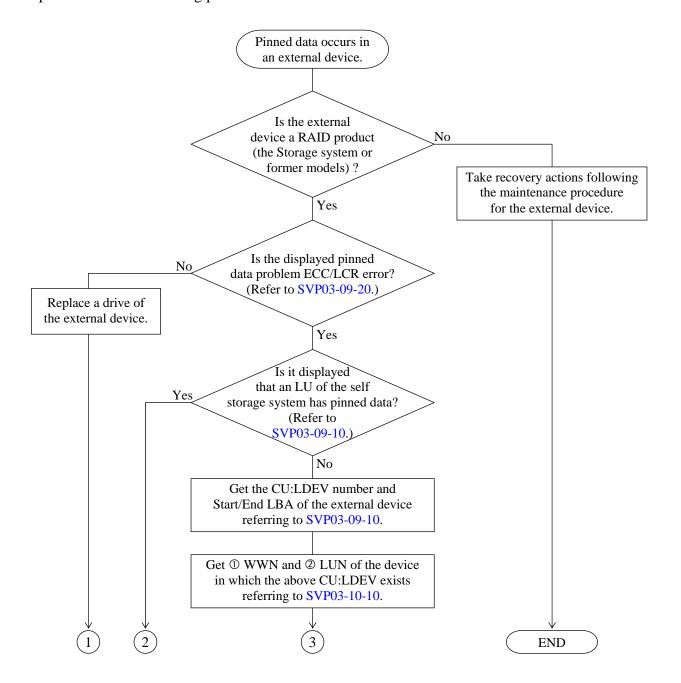


Rev.0 / Mar.2014

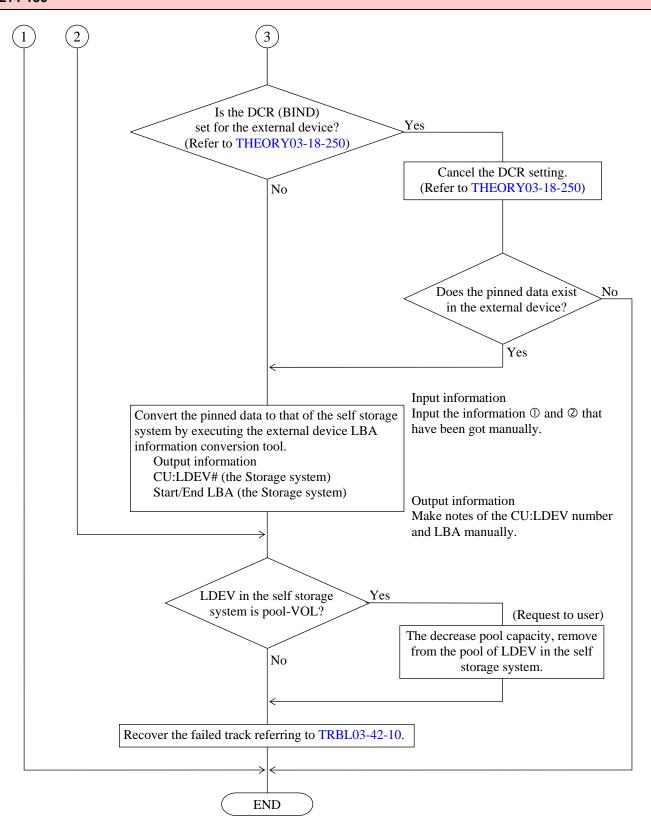
TRBL14-140

A procedure for eliminating pinned data when it occurs in an external device is shown below.

14.3 Elimination Procedure for Pinned Data on External Storage



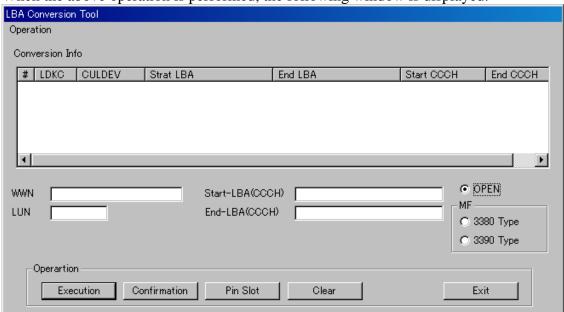
TRBL14-150



14.4 Procedure for Operating External Device LBA Conversion Tool

1. <Procedure for starting the tool> Select (CL) [Run...] from the [Start] menu. Enter "C:\DKC200\mp\pc\LbaCon.exe" and select (CL) the [OK] button.

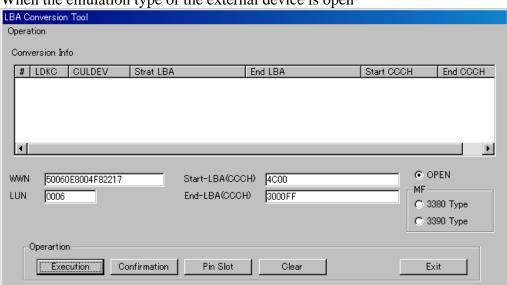
When the above operation is performed, the following window is displayed.



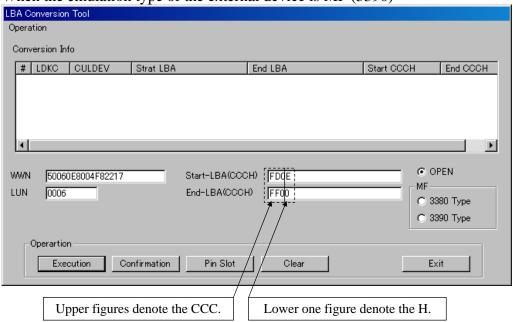
2. <Entering the information to be converted>

Enter the WWN, LUN, and Start and End LBA (CCCH, in the case of the MF type device) of the external device and select (CL) the emulation type (open, 3380, or 3390) of the device whose LBA you want to convert using the radio button.

When the emulation type of the external device is open



When the emulation type of the external device is MF (3390)



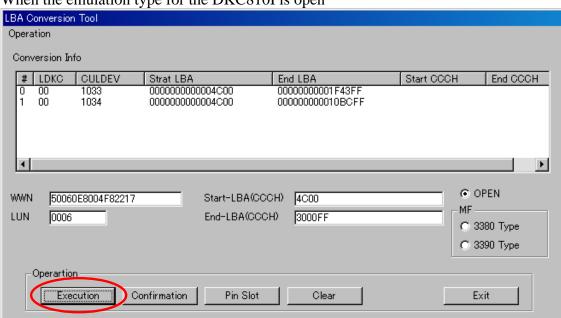
NOTE: (1) The maximum number of figures of the Start/End LBA is 16.

- (2) As to the Start/End CCCH, enter H as the lower one figure and CCC as the upper figures.
- (3) If you make a wrong selection of the emulation type (open, 3398, or 3390), you cannot get correct information.

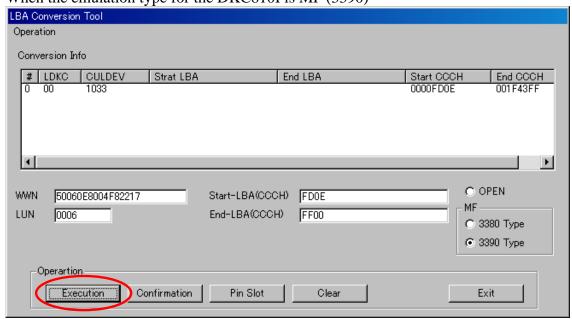
3. <Executing the conversion>

When you press the [Execution] button after making sure that the information you have entered is correct, the converted LDKC#, CULDEV#, start LBA (CCCH), and end LBA (CCCH) for the DKC810I is displayed in the Conversion Info list.

When the emulation type for the DKC810I is open



When the emulation type for the DKC810I is MF (3390)

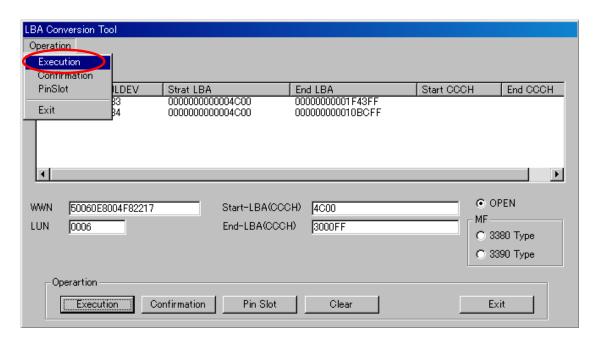


NOTE: When two or more LDEVs extend over the range of the specified LBA (CCCH), information on all the LDEVs concerned is displayed.

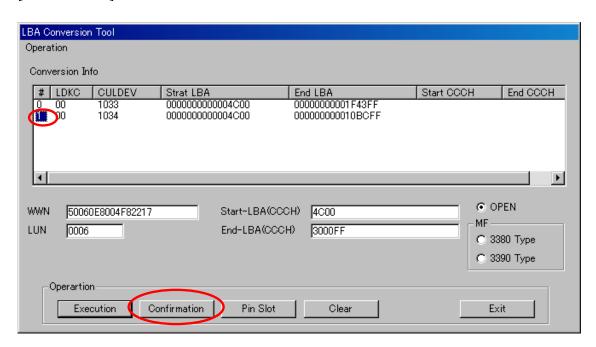
Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL14-190

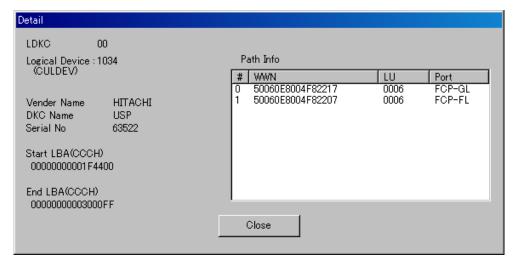
You can also execute the conversion by selecting the [Execution] button from the [Operation] menu bar.



4. <Verifying the converted information>
Select (CL) an item number of the converted information (in the "#" column) and press the [Confirmation] button.



When the process is completed, the LDKC number and the CULDEV number for the DKC810I, the Start and End LBA (CCCH, in the case of the MF type) for the external device, and the Vender Name, DKC Name, Serial No, and path information of the external device are displayed.

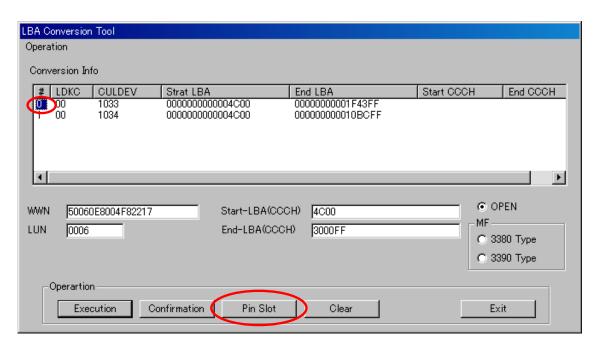


NOTE: Up to eight (the maximum number of paths) pieces of path information are displayed.

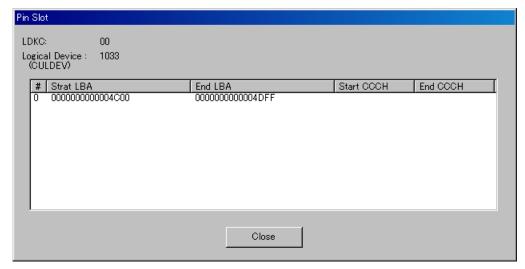
You can also execute this process by selecting the [Confirmation] button from the [Operation] menu bar besides pressing the [Execution] button.

5. < Displaying the Pin Slot>

Select (CL) an item number of the converted information (in the "#" column) and press the [Pin Slot] button.



When the process is completed, the Start and End LBA (CCCH) of the slot concerning the converted LBA are displayed. (Display of the Start/End LBA (CCCH) in the case where the Pin Erasure Tool is used: The display is done for each slot.)



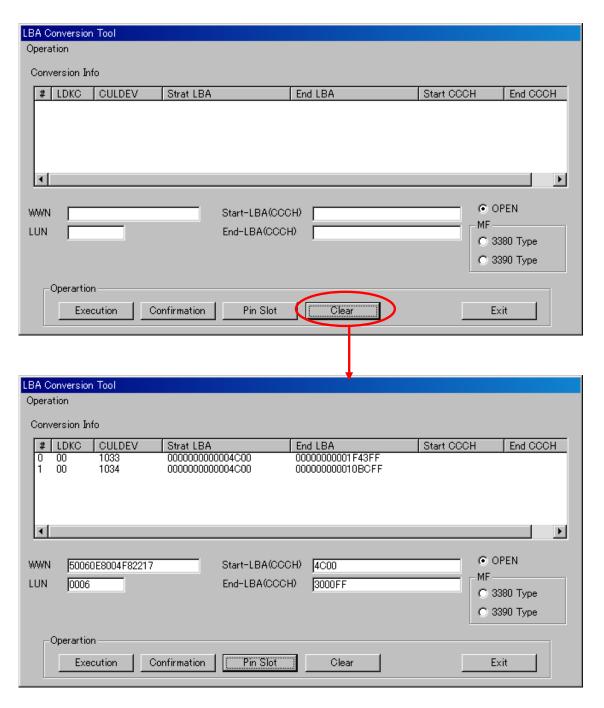
NOTE: • Up to 128 pieces of information can be displayed.

• When the terminal slot is displayed, it may be displayed as smaller than one slot size.

You can also execute this process by selecting the [Pin Slot] button from the [Operation] menu bar besides pressing the [Execution] button.

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

6. <Procedure for erasing information displayed in the main window> When you press the [Clear] button in the main window, information displayed in the window is erased.

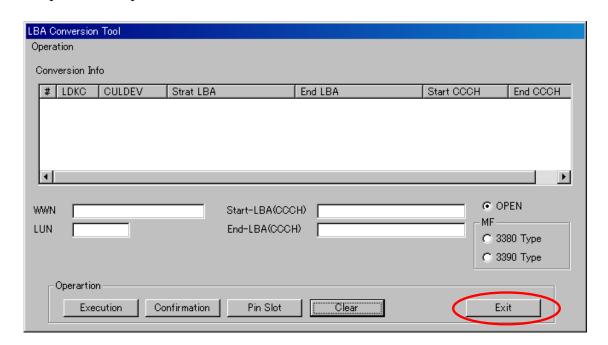


Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL14-230

7. <Procedure for quitting the tool>

To quit the tool, press the [Exit] button in the main window.



You can also execute this process by selecting the [Exit] button from the [Operation] menu bar besides pressing the [Execution] button.

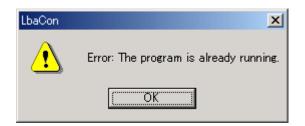
Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL14-240

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

<Warning and error dialog boxes> Warning and error dialog boxes are shown below.

(1) Warning about start of the tool
When the following dialog box is displayed,
the tool has already been started.



(2) Input error

When the following dialog box is displayed, the data that has been entered is incorrect.

Check the data that you entered.



(3) WWN error

When the following dialog box is displayed, the WWN that has been entered does not exist. Check the WWN that you entered.



(4) External device error

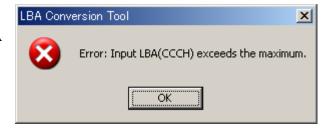
When the following dialog box is displayed, the external device corresponding to the WWN and LUN that have been specified does not exist. Check the WWN and LUN that you entered.



(5) LBA specification error

When the following dialog box is displayed, the value of the specified LBA (CCCH) exceeds the maximum LBA value of the device.

Check the LBA value that you entered.



Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL14-250

(6) Memory reservation error
When the following dialog box is displayed, the memory failed to be reserved.



Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

(7) Config error

When the following dialog box is displayed, the configuration information could not be got correctly.



(8) Device error

When the following dialog box is displayed, the LDEV corresponding to the specified LBA does not exist.



(9) Item specification error

When the following dialog box is displayed, the item was not specified at the times of the verification and the Pin Slot display.



(10) Internal logical error

When the following dialog box is displayed, an error occurred in the internal logic.

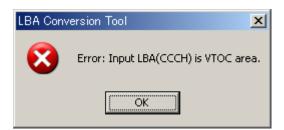


Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL14-260

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

(11) VTOC area specification error The specified LBA (CCCH) is the VTOC area.



(12) Control area specification error The specified LBA (CCCH) is a control area.



(13) Error of maximum number of displayed items
The number of displayed items in the
PINSLOT window exceeded the
allowable maximum value.



Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL14-270

9. <Restriction>

Restriction on this tool is shown below.

(1) Display of a converted LBA at the time when the LBA is verified An LBA that is displayed when it is verified may be different from that which was entered in the case where the information on an external device whose emulation type is open is converted to that on a device that is mapped onto the MF (intermediate) type.

NOTE: When information on an external device whose emulation type is open is converted to that on a device that is mapped onto the MF (intermediate) type, the LBA is converted to the CCCH. When the converted information is verified, on the other hand, the converted CCCH is returned to the LBA. Therefore, the inconsistency is resulted. (The information displayed is edited for each slot.)

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL14-280

14.5 Considerations When Performing Data Recovery on External Volume

Because write data to an external LDEV is stored in the cache of the Storage system once and then written to an LU of the external device by means of the asynchronous destaging operation, it is possible that Write Pending Data remains in the cache of the Storage system when a failure occurs in the external device.

Therefore, it is required to make data restoration being conscious of the Write Pending Data.

- (1) When making restoration using backup data of a host
 - (a) Restore an LU of the external device.
 - (b) Restore a virtual LDEV of the Storage system.
 - (c) Restore the data using backup data of a host.
- (2) When making restoration using backup data of the Storage system function
 - (a) Restore an LU of the external device.
 - (b) Restore a virtual LDEV of the Storage system.
 - (c) Restore the data using the Storage system function.
- (3) When making restoration using backup data of the external device
 - (a) Restore an LU of the external device.
 - (b) Restore a virtual LDEV of the Storage system.
 - (c) Make the Storage system execute the "Disconnect External Volumes" for the LU concerned. (The Write Pending Data is written to the external device.)
 - (d) Make the external device restore the LU data of the external device using the backup data.
 - (e) Restore the virtual LDEV by making the Storage system execute the "Reconnect External Volumes" for the virtual LDEV.

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

14.6 Appendix

SIMs Possible to Be Detected in the DKC810I Side during a Maintenance or Recovery Work Being Done for SANRISE AMS/9500V when SANRISE AMS/9500V Series Device Is Used as External Storage

				by	eported the system
No	Maintenance operation for AMS/9500V	Effect on the Storage system	Operation of the Storage system	①	2
1	CTL replacement	Link Down	Switching to alternative path or path blockade *1	0	0
2	Reboot (storage system)	Link Down	Switching to alternative path or path blockade *1	0	0

No	Failure occurs in AMS/9500V	Effect on the Storage system	Operation of the Storage system	①	2
1	Power stoppage	Link Down	Path detachment → Virtual volume blockade	0	0
2	CTL detachment	Link Down	Switching to alternative path or path blockade *1	0	0
3	CTL automatic reboot	Link down for two minutes	Switching to alternative path or path blockade *1	0	0
4	FC path failure	CRC error, frequent occurrence of Lip, etc.	Path blockade depending on frequency of failures *1	0	0

No	Field maintenance operation for AMS/9500V	Effect on the Storage system	Operation of the Storage system	①	2
1	Microprogram replacement (with storage system power on or off)	Link Down	Switching to alternative path or path blockade *1	0	0
2	Deliberate shutdown	Link Down	Switching to alternative path or path blockade *1	0	0

- *1: LDEV is blockaded when no alternative path exists.
- ① 21D0XY Blockade of an external storage path
- ② EFD000 Blockade of an external storage device
- 3 21D2XY Excess of threshold value of path response time

As to ③, it may occur when a process is delayed because of a failure occurs in the AMS/9500V series or FC path and the time limit is exceeded.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

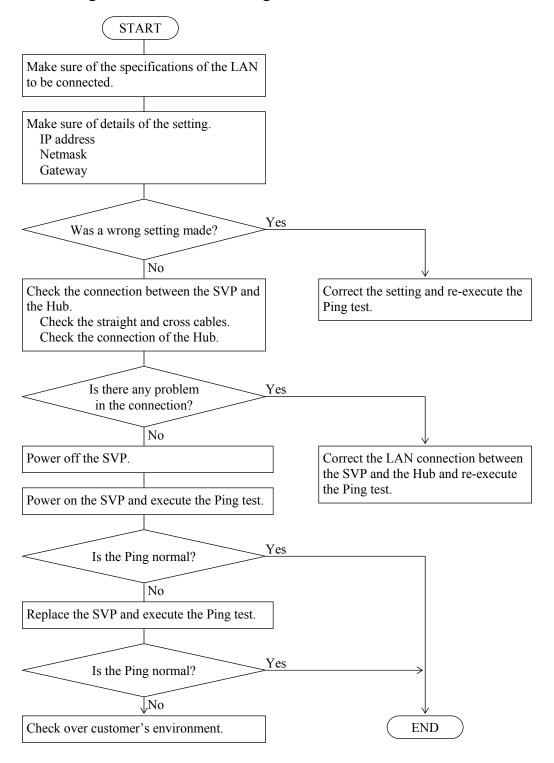
TRBL15-10

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

15. Recovery from SNMP Failure

A procedure for coping with a trouble occurs during a check to be done after installation of a P.P. of the SNMP is shown below.

15.1 SNMP Ping Test Trouble Shooting



Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL15-20

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

15.2 When Trap Cannot Be Received While Ping Reaches Manager PC Prepared by Customer

- 1. Check the setting of the SNMP Agent. (Check it in the SNMP setting window on Web Console.)
 - (1) Make sure that the "Extension SNMP" has been chosen.
 - \rightarrow If not, it choose.
 - (2) Check if the Community name has been added.
 - \rightarrow If not, add it.
 - (3) Check if the setting of the SNMP Agent is that in which the Manager PC concerned is specified as a receiver of the trap.
 - → If it is wrongly specified, make the trap receiver to be added with or changed to the IP address of the Manager PC.
 - (4) In the case of the cold start trap at the time when the SVP is rebooted Check if the setting on the Manager side is that in which the trap of the cold start can be received
 - → Check if the setting is not the one in which only the failure trap is received by means of a masking.
- 2. When the Firewall/Gateway exists in the network between the SVP and the PC prepared by a customer, check if the UDPs of the Ports #161 and #162 allow the passing.
 - → Ask the customer to change the setting to allow the passing.
- 3. Check the customer's Manager for the setting of the trap reception.
 - → Ask the customer to check if the setting is correct.

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

15.3 SNMP Trap Information

Failure information supported by the SNMP is shown below.

(1) Specifications of the extended trap

Item	Specification	Remarks
SNMP Community	Community name that is set	
PDU Type	Trap PDU	
Enterprise ID	Agent identifier	
Agent IP Address	Agent IP address	
Generic Trap Code	Enterprise Specific	
Specific Trap Code	See the following Table (2).	
Extended Trap PDU	See the following Table (3).	

(2) Specific trap codes

Each of these codes is shown as the Kind in a trace file.

Code	Name	Meaning
1	RaidEventAcute	Report on failure occurrence: Storage system shut off completely.
2	RaidEventUserSerious	Report on failure occurrence: Operation of a failed part shut off.
3	RaidEventUserModerate	Report on failure occurrence: A partial failure occurred.
4	RaidEventUserService	Report on failure occurrence: A slight failure occurred.
100	RaidCommandFinished	Report on completion of execution of a requested command

(3) Extended trap PDU

The following is information notified to the Manager as the trap.

Name	Type	Description
EventTrapSerialNumber	Integer	Serial number of the DKC in which a failure occurred.
EventTrapNickname		Nickname of the storage system in which a failure occurred.
EventTrapREFCODE	DisplayString	Reference code of a failure: See the following Table (4).
EventTrapPartsID	Object IDENTIFIER	Part in which a failure occurred.

(4) Reference codes

Detail of failure	Reference code		
Processor failure	30XXXX, CFXXXX		
Shared memory failure	FFFXXX		
Cache failure	FFEXXX		
Drive failure	43XXXX, 45XXXX, 46XXXX, DFXXXX, EFXXXX		
Power system failure	ACXXXX, BF2XXX, BF4XXX, BF6XXX		
Battery failure	FE0XXX		
Fan failure	BF7XXX		
Other environmental failure	BF8XXX, BFAXXX		

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL16-10

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

16. MP Blockade Reset Function

(1) Usage Guideline

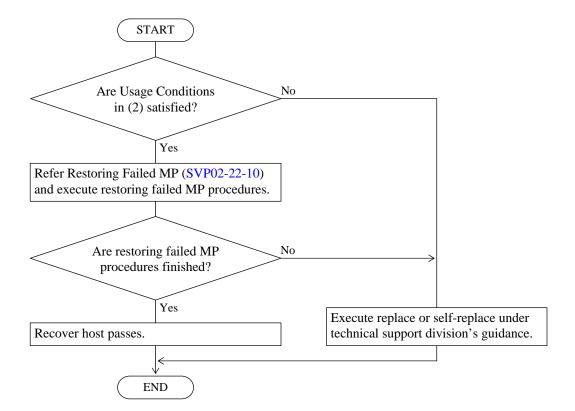
- This is a special function to recover a MP blockade operation without the need to self-replace the card under certain conditions specified below.
- To use this function, please open a case with your Technical Support Division and proceed under their guidance.

(2) Usage Conditions

- To recover a MP in which WCHK1 occurred due to a microprogram problem. Eg.) Cache of WCHK1 is EC = 1644.
- Requested as a recovery procedure for an issue notified by an Early Notice/Alert.
- Requested by following the procedure described in Maintenance Manual.

Not to be used to recover hardware failures.

(3) MP Reset Procedure Flowchart



Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL17-10

17. Failure recovery of Encryption License Key

17.1 Recovery procedure when acquisition failure from key management server (SIM = 661000)

Key acquisition from key management server at the time of DKC start is failed. Encryption volume can't access. Communication with the key management server, transferring keys to DKC and dummy-replacement of all blocked HDDs are necessary for restoration.

Please restore the acquisition and the encryption volume of the key than the following procedures.

- (1) Connection with the key management server
 Key acquisition from key management server at the time of DKC start is failed. Please confirm
 that SVP and the connection with the key management server are established from [Sever
 Configuration Test: Check] of Edit Encryption Environmental Settings of Storage Navigator.
- (2) Key acquisition from key management server
 If the connection with the key management server is confirmed, please carry out Retry Key
 Encryption Key Acquisition than Encryption Key screen of Storage Navigator, and, please
 perform the reacquisition of key.
- (3) Recovery of the device Please dummy-replace all encryption DKA sequentially, and then please dummy-replace all blocked HDDs. Please confirm that the encryption volume is restored.

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL17-20

17.2 Recovery procedure for Encryption key threshold warning and depletion (SIM = 660100, 660200)

The rest of Encryption Keys are less than threshold warning level or zero. If there is no free encryption key, drive installation, drive replacement and DKA replacement fails. Please give notice to customer and ask them to create encryption keys.

The following SIMs are reported:

SIM = 660100: This SIM is reported when there is no free encryption key.

SIM = 660200: This SIM is reported when the rest of free encryption key reaches warning threshold level. The threshold level is variable number that depends on the number of installed spare drives and the number of installed DKA.

The recovery procedure is as follows. (*1)

- (1) Give notice to customer
 - If there is no free encryption key, drive installation, drive replacement and DKA replacement fails. Please give notice to customer and ask them to create encryption keys. The creation of the maximum number of keys is recommended.
 - A user who have Security Administrator (View & Modify) role can create encryption keys.
 - The following number of keys are needed

Drive installation, drive replacement : 1 encryption key per drive DKA replacement : 6 encryption keys per DKA

*1: When this SIM occurs at the time of Initialize Encryption Environmental Settings, this recovery procedure is not necessary

Rev.0 / Mar.2014

TRBL17-30

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

17.3 Recovery procedure of DKA failure when restoring Encryption Keys

If the latest Encryption Keys have not been restored for the reason that Certificate Encryption Keys have been rekeyed after the backup, encryption DKA may be blocked.

Please execute not the dummy replacement but the replacement all encryption DKAs under technical support division's guidance, even if not all encryption DKAs are blocked.

Rev.0 / Jul.2014

TRBL18-10

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

18. Recovery from global-active device functions Failure

18.1 Recovery Procedure for global-active device functions Failure

Failure suspension of a GAD pair, path block between a GAD pair, and Quorum Disk block may occur triggered by hardware failure and so on. This chapter shows explanation and recovery procedures of failure in GAD functions.

Failure occurrence in GAD functions can be detected by the following.

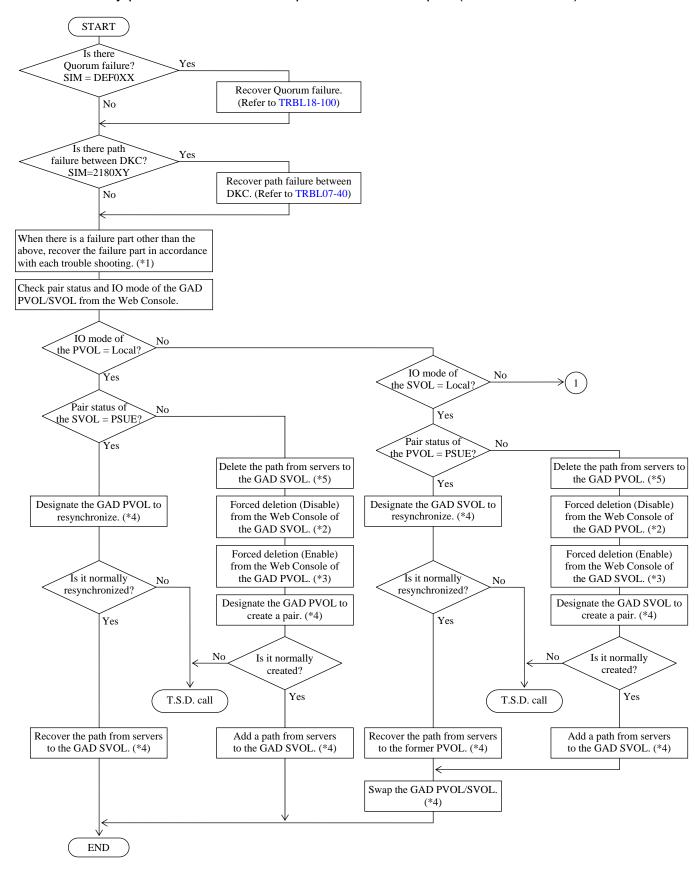
- SIM report of failure suspension of a GAD pair
- SIM report of path block between a GAD pair
- SIM report of Quorum Disk block

Table 18.1-1 GAD SIM REF.CODE

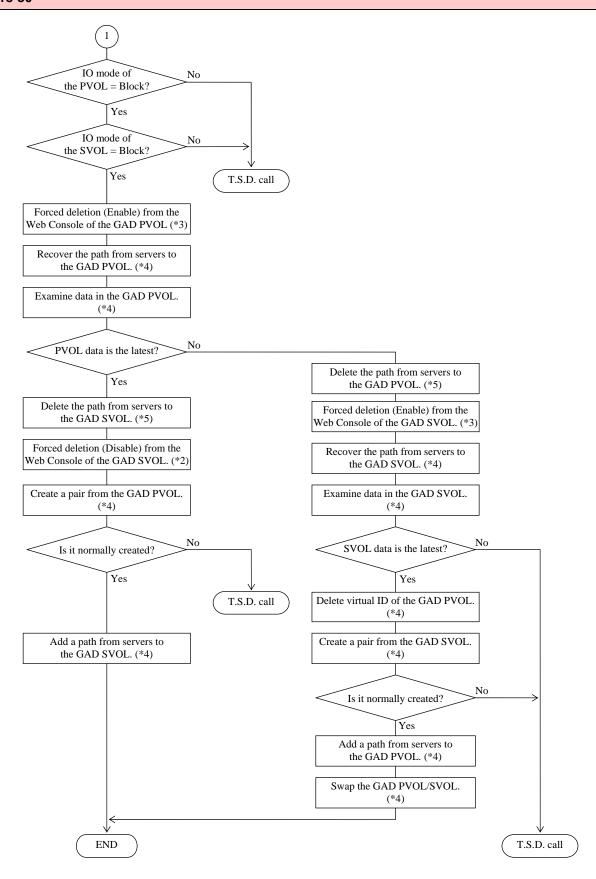
SIM REF.CODE	Meaning	Remarks
DDXYZZ	Failure suspension of a GAD pair	X: Failure suspension type (0~3) Y: The lowest digit of CU number ZZ: LDEV number
2180-XY	Path block between a GAD pair	X: CHA PCB # Y: Port# in PCB
DEE0XX	Quorum Disk recovery	XX: Quorum Disk ID
DEF0XX	Quorum Disk block	XX: Quorum Disk ID

The following flow charts describe recovery procedures for each type of failure in GAD. Additionally, the failure recovery procedure at path block occurrence between a GAD pair is identical with the failure recovery procedure in TrueCopy function, and the procedure is described in TRBL07-40.

18.1.1 Recovery procedure at failure suspension of a GAD pair (SIM = DDXYZZ)



TRBL18-30



Rev.0 / Jul.2014

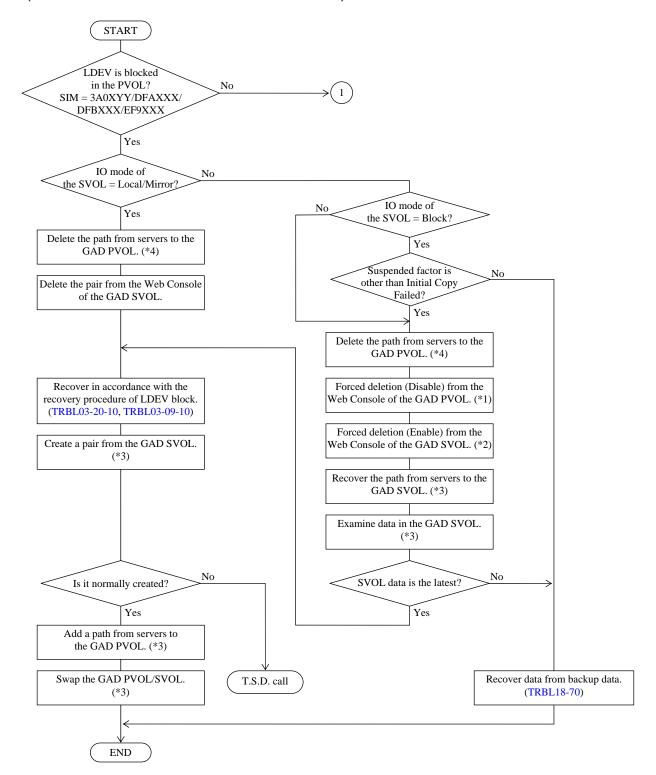
TRBL18-40

*1: When an LDEV is blocked in a GAD pair, recover in accordance with the recover procedure at LDEV block occurrence (TRBL18-50).

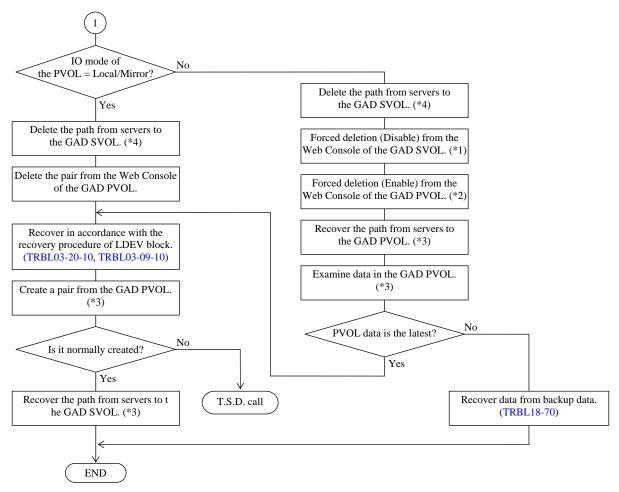
- *2: When pair status of the GAD pair is released and it is the status of the GAD reserved volume, forced deletion (Disable) is unnecessary.
- *3: When pair status of the GAD pair is released and it is the status of the GAD reserved volume, ask the customer to configure virtual LDEV ID instead of forced deletion (Enable).
- *4: Ask the customer to perform operation.
- *5: Ask the customer to perform operation. When the path cannot be deleted, perform the next step.

TRBL18-50

18.1.2 Recovery procedure at LDEV block in the GAD pair (SIM = 3A0XYY/DFAXXX/DFBXXX/EF9XXX)

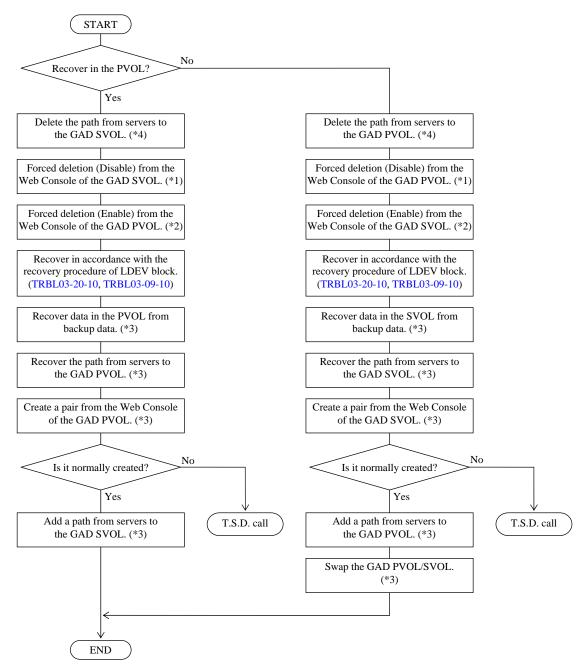


TRBL18-60



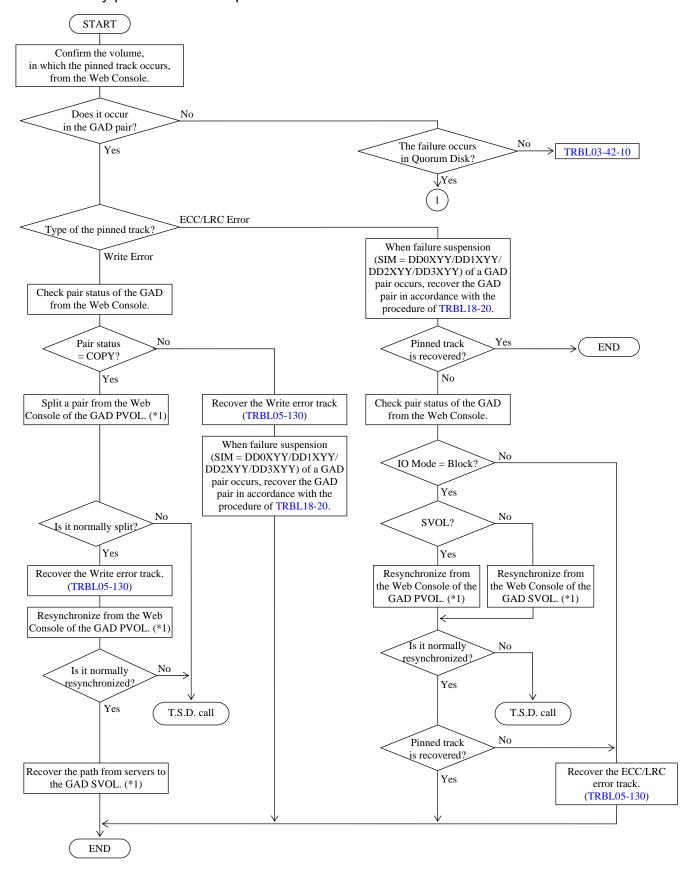
- *1: When pair status of the GAD pair is released and it is the status of the GAD reserved volume, forced deletion (Disable) is unnecessary.
- *2: When pair status of the GAD pair is released and it is the status of the GAD reserved volume, ask the customer to configure virtual LDEV ID instead of forced deletion (Enable).
- *3: Ask the customer to perform operation.
- *4: Ask the customer to perform operation. When the path cannot be deleted, perform the next step.

18.1.3 Procedure to recover data from backup data at LDEV failure in the GAD environment

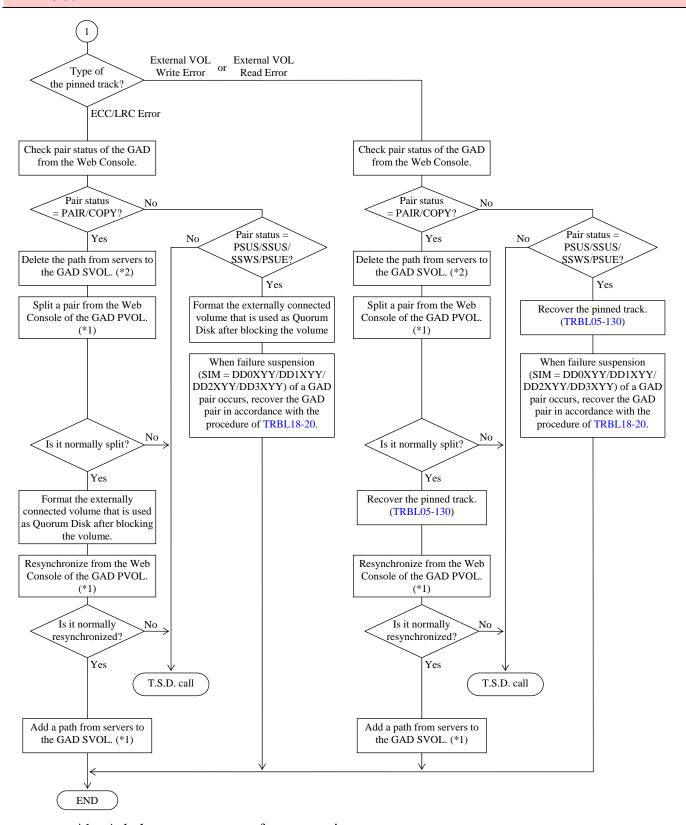


- *1: When pair status of the GAD pair is released and it is the status of the GAD reserved volume, forced deletion (Disable) is unnecessary.
- *2: When pair status of the GAD pair is released and it is the status of the GAD reserved volume, ask the customer to configure virtual LDEV ID instead of forced deletion (Enable).
- *3: Ask the customer to perform operation.
- *4: Ask the customer to perform operation. When the path cannot be deleted, perform the next step.

18.1.4 Recovery procedure of the pinned track in the GAD environment

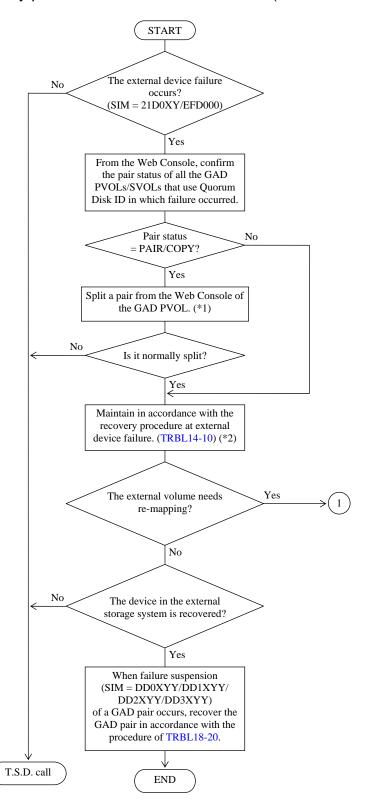


TRBL18-90

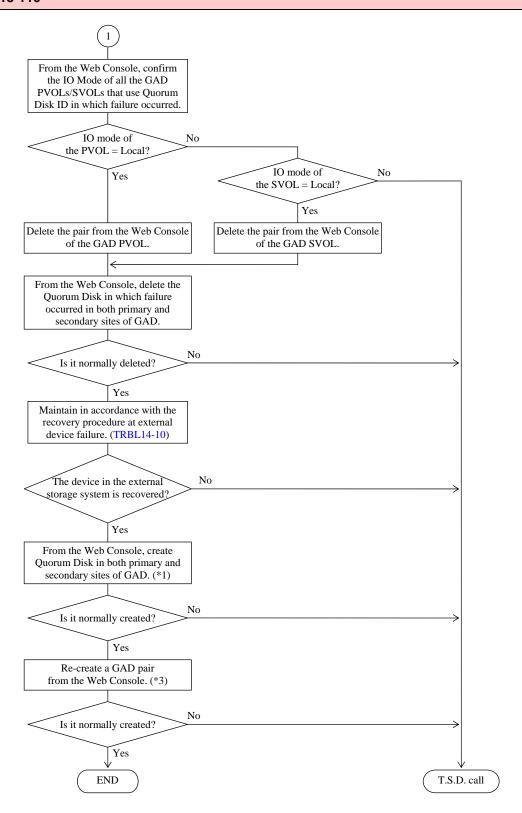


- *1: Ask the customer to perform operation.
- *2: Ask the customer to perform operation. When the path cannot be deleted, perform the next step.

18.1.5 Recovery procedure at Quorum Disk failure (SIM = DEF0XX)



TRBL18-110



Rev.0 / Jul.2014

TRBL18-120

*1: Ask the customer to perform operation.

- *2: When the recovery procedure at external device failure (TRBL14-10) requires re-mapping operation of the external volume, after deleting all the GAD pairs that use Quorum Disk in which failure occurred, delete the Quorum Disk in which failure occurred and then recover the external volume.
- *3: Ask the customer to perform operation.

 If the GAD pairs are deleted from Web Console of the GAD PVOL, be sure to re-create the GAD pairs from the Web Console of the GAD PVOL.

 If the GAD pairs are deleted from Web Console of the GAD SVOL, be sure to re-create the GAD pairs from the Web Console of the GAD SVOL.

18.1.6 Recover path failure between a GAD pair in the GAD environment

Path Status	Factor	Recovery Action
"Nothing"	Establishing path or deleting path	Delete the path with "Edit Path" or "Delete RCU", add a new path with "Edit Path" or "Add RCU".
"Initialization Failed"	Incorrect the physical connection between the MCU and RCU	Correct the physical path connection between the MCU, RCU and the path relay equipment.
	Incorrect the Port topology settings.(Fibre connection)	Setup the port topology of the both MCU and RCU correctly.
	Blockade of the MP or Port on the RCU.	Repair the MP status or Port status on the RCU.
	Broken the connection cable physically.	Replace the broken cable.
	Incorrect the path relay equipment settings or the path relay equipment doesn't work.	Correct the path relay equipment settings or repair it.
"Communication Time Out"	Blockade of the MP or Port on the MCU.	Repair the MP status or Port status on the MCU.
"Resource Shortage (MCU)"	MCU resource over.	Too many path in the MCU or the RCU. Delete the paths and RCUs not currently in use.
"Resource Shortage (RCU)"	RCU resource over.	
"Serial Number Mismatch"	Incorrect the RCU S/N or Controller ID. (Fibre connection)	Delete the path with "Delete RCU", add a new path with the correct RCU S/N and Controller ID with "Add RCU" again.
	Incorrect the physical connection between the MCU and RCU.	Correct the physical path connection between the MCU, RCU and the path relay equipment.
	Incorrect the Port topology settings. (Fibre connection)	Setup the port topology of the both MCU and RCU correctly.
	Blockade of the MP or Port on the RCU.	Repair the MP status or Port status on the RCU.
	Broken the connection cable physically.	Replace the broken cable.
	Incorrect the path relay equipment settings or the path relay equipment doesn't work.	Correct the path relay equipment settings or repair it.

(To be continued)

(Continued from the preceding page)

Path Status	Factor	Recovery Action
"Invalid Port"	Specified port is not existence on the MCU.	Delete the path with "Edit Path" or "Delete RCU", add a new path with correct port on MCU again.
	Incorrect specified port type "Serial/Fibre".	Delete the path with "Edit Path" or "Delete RCU", add a new path with correct port type "Serial/Fibre" again.
	Specified MCU port type is not Initiator.	Change the channel type of the MCU port to Initiator.
	Incorrect the specified CU of MCU. (Serial connection)	Delete the path with "Edit Path" or "Delete RCU", and add a new path with correct CU again.
	Incorrect the specified link address. (Serial connection)	When MCU and RCU connects directly, set the link address to except "00". When MCU and RCU does not connect directly, set the link address to "00".
	Exists the same path.	Confirm the MCU port, link address or RCU port, and logical address or CU#, and delete the path with "Edit Path".
"RCU Port Number Mismatch"	Incorrect the specified RCU port.	Delete the path with "Edit Path" or "Delete RCU", and add a new path with correct RCU port again.
	Incorrect the physical connection between the MCU and RCU.	Correct the physical path connection between the MCU, RCU and the path relay equipment.
	Incorrect the Port topology settings. (Fibre connection)	Setup the port topology of the both MCU and RCU correctly.
	Blockade of the MP or Port on the RCU.	Repair the MP status or Port status on the RCU.
	Broken the connection cable physically.	Replace the broken cable.
	Incorrect the path relay equipment settings or the path relay equipment doesn't work.	Correct the path relay equipment settings or repair it.
"RCU Port type is not RCU Target"	Incorrect specified RCU port.	Delete the path with "Edit Path" or "Delete RCU", and add a new path with correct RCU port again.
	Specified RCU port type is not RCU Target.	Change the channel type of the RCU port to RCU Target.
"Communication Failed"	Blockade of the MP or Port on the RCU.	Repair the MP status or Port status on the RCU.
	The path relay equipment doesn't work.	Repair the path relay equipment

(To be continued)

Rev.0 / Jul.2014

TRBL18-150

(Continued from the preceding page)

Path Status	Factor	Recovery Action
"Logical Blockade"	MCU Port doesn't work.	Repair the port status on the MCU.
	RCU Port doesn't work.	Repair the port status on the RCU, and delete the path with "Edit path" or "Delete RCU" and add the path with "Edit path" or "Add RCU" again.
	The path relay equipment doesn't work.	Repair the path relay equipment, and delete the path with "Edit path" or "Delete RCU" and add the path with "Edit path" or "Add RCU" again.
	Broken the connection cable physically.	Replace the broken cable, and delete the path with "Edit path" or "Delete RCU" and add the path with "Edit path" or "Add RCU" again.
"Program Error"	Detected program error.	Delete the path with "Edit path" or "Delete RCU", and add the path with "Edit path" or "Add RCU" again.

Rev.0 / Jul.2014

TRBL18-160

Copyright © 2014, Hitachi, Ltd.

18.2 Recovery procedure when a failure occurred while creating/resynchronizing a GAD pair

The following are recovery procedures from the web console when an operation fails due to occurrence of a failure etc. while creating or resynchronizing a GAD pair and the pair status of the P-VOL and S-VOL is the following status.

■ When a GAD pair creation operation fails

The recovery procedure is as follows when the pair status is P-VOL = SMPL, S-VOL = COPY.

From the web console, perform the forced disable operation to the S-VOL and create a GAD pair again.

■ When a resynchronization operation fails

The recovery procedure is as follows when the pair status is P-VOL = PSUx, S-VOL = COPY.

Perform resynchronization again.